

teach
yourself

beginner's hindi

goal
everyday communication

category
language

content

- cover all the basics
- go at a steady pace
- build your confidence to speak

be where you want to be with **teach yourself**



teach
yourself®

**teach[®]
yourself**

beginner's hindi
rupert snell

For over 60 years, more than 50 million people have learnt over 750 subjects the **teach yourself** way, with impressive results.

be where you want to be
with **teach yourself**

For UK order enquiries: please contact Bookpoint Ltd, 130 Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon, OX14 4SB. Telephone: +44 (0) 1235 827720. Fax: +44 (0) 1235 400454. Lines are open 09.00–17.00, Monday to Saturday, with a 24-hour message answering service. Details about our titles and how to order are available at www.teachyourself.co.uk

For USA order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Customer Services, PO Box 545, Blacklick, OH 43004-0545, USA. Telephone: 1-800-722-4726. Fax: 1-614-755-5645.

For Canada order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Ryerson Ltd, 300 Water St, Whitby, Ontario, L1N 9B6, Canada. Telephone: 905 430 5000. Fax: 905 430 5020.

Long renowned as the authoritative source for self-guided learning – with more than 40 million copies sold worldwide – the **teach yourself** series includes over 500 titles in the fields of languages, crafts, hobbies, business, computing and education.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data: a catalogue record for this title is available from the British Library.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: on file.

First published in UK 2003 by Hodder Education, 338 Euston Road, London, NW1 3BH.

First published in US 2003 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc.

This edition published 2003.

The **teach yourself** name is a registered trade mark of Hodder Headline.

Copyright © 2003 Rupert Snell

In UK: All rights reserved. Apart from any permitted use under UK copyright law, no part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information, storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher or under licence from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited. Further details of such licences (for reprographic reproduction) may be obtained from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited, of Saffron House, 6–10 Kirby Street, London, EC1N 8TS.

In US: All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Printed in Great Britain for Hodder Education, a division of Hodder Headline, an Hachette Livre UK Company, 338 Euston Road, London, NW1 3BH, by Cox & Wyman Ltd, Reading, Berkshire.

The publisher has used its best endeavours to ensure that the URLs for external websites referred to in this book are correct and active at the time of going to press. However, the publisher and the author have no responsibility for the websites and can make no guarantee that a site will remain live or that the content will remain relevant, decent or appropriate.

Hodder Headline's policy is to use papers that are natural, renewable and recyclable products and made from wood grown in sustainable forests. The logging and manufacturing processes are expected to conform to the environmental regulations of the country of origin.

Impression number 15 14 13 12 11
Year 2010 2009 2008 2007

	introduction	vi
	the Hindi script and sounds	viii
01	नमस्ते <i>namaste greetings</i>	1
	1 saying hello	2
	2 who and how people are	2
	3 this and that; he, she and it	5
	4 more questions	6
	Raju meets his neighbour, Javed	10
02	हमारा परिवार <i>hamārā parivār our family</i>	14
	1 gender matters	15
	2 number	18
	3 getting familiar	23
	4 getting formal	25
	Javed asks Raju about his family	26
03	कमरे में <i>kamre mē in the room</i>	30
	1 some more questions	31
	2 where? on the table	33
	3 case	37
	at school	42
	at home	43

04	चाय पीजिए <i>chāy pījie</i> have some tea	47
	1 giving orders and making requests	48
	2 telling, saying, speaking, asking	51
	3 routine events	53
	Javed and Raju get to know each other	57
05	आपको क्या चाहिए ? <i>āpko kyā chāhie?</i> what do you want?	61
	1 obliques again	62
	2 what do you like, what do you want?	64
	Pratap goes shopping	66
	3 availability — 'to get, to find'	67
	4 revision!	69
	Raju visits a hotel	69
06	आप क्या काम करते हैं ? <i>āp kyā kām karte hai?</i> what work do you do?	77
	1 possession and 'to have'	78
	2 the Sharma family	80
	Manoj introduces Pratap to his father	83
	3 you can go	84
	there's nobody in the house	85
	4 let me go!	87
07	भूत-काल <i>bhūt-kāl</i> the past	92
	1 in the past	93
	2 getting specific	97
	3 a shortcut	98
	4 adding emphasis	102
08	क्या हो रहा है ? <i>kyā ho rahā hai?</i> what's happening?	106
	1 comparisons: bigger and smaller	107
	2 continuous tense: '-ing' verbs	109
	Geeta phones home	110
	3 Raju is reading 'his own' newspaper	113
	revising with Gopal and Jagdish	114
	4 these days, in and out, up and down	118

09	भविष्य में <i>bhaviṣya mē</i> in the future	124
	1 the future tense	125
	what will you do tomorrow?	125
	the days ahead	128
	2 ifs and maybes	131
	Javed calls on Raju	131
	3 so that, in order that	133
	4 how long does it take?	134
10	क्या हुआ ? <i>kyā huā?</i> what happened?	138
	1 the past tense	139
	2 transitivity	141
	3 other perfective tenses	145
	4 sit and rest — linking two actions	150
11	कहा जाता है कि ... <i>kahā jātā hai ki...</i> It is said that...	156
	1 a verb with many meanings	157
	2 finding the way in Vilaspur	158
	3 it is said that... the passive is easy	161
	4 you should read this — obligations	166
	5 you <i>must</i> read this — stronger obligations	168
12	तबियत और शैली <i>tabiyat aur śailī</i> health and style	173
	1 'j-words' and relative clauses	174
	2 getting things done — causatives	180
	a visit to the doctor	182
	3 parts of the body	184
	4 shades of meaning	186
	5 style in Hindi	188
	6 numbers	190
	7 time	192
	key to the exercises	198
	Hindi-English vocabulary	230
	English-Hindi vocabulary	244
	glossary of grammatical terms	262
	index	264

Welcome to *Beginner's Hindi* !

Is this the right course for you?

This course is designed for people who want a structured but user-friendly introduction to Hindi, whether studying alone or in a class. It aims to get you into the world of real Hindi as quickly as possible. Each of the twelve units prepares you for some new social or practical situations while also introducing the grammar gradually and simply. We begin with simple statements and questions using the verb 'to be'; then the various tenses and other structures are explained, steadily increasing the range of contexts that you can deal with. There are plentiful examples and exercises; all *numbered* questions are provided with answers, either immediately after the questions, or at the back of the book. The book often addresses you directly, asking questions about you and encouraging you to *use* the language as you learn it. The carefully graded vocabulary for each unit comes at the end, with full Hindi–English and English–Hindi glossaries bringing it all together at the back of the book.

The Sharma family

Most of the dialogues are based on the various members of the Sharma family, who live in Agra: Geeta (a doctor) and her husband Raju (a teacher), their children Manoj, Ram and Meena — and a dog, Moti. Because we're dealing with a set of known characters, it's easy to see the different levels of formality that are an important feature of Hindi: for example, we hear the children being addressed less formally than adults and strangers. One or two subsidiary characters, such as Pratap (a student visiting England), also appear in the book *Teach Yourself Hindi*, which gives a more detailed introduction to the language.

Script and pronunciation

The Hindi script, called 'Devanagari', is an extremely systematic writing system: each character represents a particular sound, making it the perfect guide to pronunciation. Although a 'roman' transliteration is given throughout the book, the small effort required to learn Devanagari is very well worthwhile!

Listen out for two important contrasts in pronunciation. The first is between 'retroflex' consonants (pronounced with the tongue touching the roof of the mouth, giving a 'hard' sound of the kind associated with Indian pronunciations of words like 'doctor') and 'dental' consonants (pronounced with the tongue touching the upper teeth, giving a 'soft' sound as in an Italian pronunciation of 'Italia'). The second contrast is between 'unaspirated' and 'aspirated' consonants, such as the pair क *ka* and ख *kha* — the first is much less 'breathy' than the second. Vowel sounds are very 'clean': the vowel ए *e* is more like the vowels in French 'été' than in English 'mayday'.

The recordings

This book is accompanied by recordings which will help bring the language alive for you. They introduce the sounds of Hindi, present the dialogues and other features from the book, and go beyond the book with several further listening and speaking exercises that will build your confidence in using Hindi in real conversations. Pause the recording whenever you need time to think, and practise imitating the Hindi voices as closely as possible, *speaking out loud*.

Where does this book lead?

After finishing this book, you may like to look at *Teach Yourself Hindi*, by Rupert Snell with Simon Weightman: this gives more detail on the grammar, and plenty of reading practice. The web-based course *A Door into Hindi* (www.ncsu.edu/project/hindi_lessons) has an interactive approach to the learning process; and Hindi films also offer a brilliant way of getting to know the language and the culture it expresses. Most importantly of all, you will find some 400 million Hindi-speakers waiting to talk to you: start speaking Hindi today!

Dictionaries: Rupert Snell's *Beginner's Hindi Dictionary* is designed for learners and gives a lot of help with sentence formation, while the *Oxford Hindi–English Dictionary* by R.S. McGregor is what you need if you want to start reading Hindi newspapers and magazines, many of which are available on the internet.

The Hindi script and sounds

Although a roman transliteration is provided for all the Hindi in this book, learning to read and write the Devanagari script is extremely worthwhile. Its phonetic basis makes it really easy to learn; and if you're in India, being able to read the Hindi all around you in signs and posters will bring its own reward, even before you start reading more ambitiously. As you begin to learn Devanagari, there's a very useful web-based 'Hindi script tutor' to help you learn the characters and their sounds: <http://www.avashy.com/hindiscripttutor.htm>; this website, devised by Richard Woodward, teaches and tests the script inter-actively, and demonstrates the sounds of Hindi. And for a detailed introduction to Devanagari, see Rupert Snell, *Beginner's Hindi Script* (Hodder & Stoughton, 2000).

The best way to learn the script is to copy out each character several times, pronouncing its sound as you do so. Start with the consonants. Each basic consonant is actually a complete syllable: for example the sign क stands for not just the consonant 'k' but the whole syllable 'ka'; it will sound similar to the first syllable of the word 'cup'. The 'a' vowel is always there unless replaced by some other vowel indicated by a special vowel sign. More on this later: for now, concentrate on copying and learning the consonants.

Write on lined paper, with the top line of the character falling on the printed line, and the rest of the character hanging below.

Aspiration

In the descriptions of the Hindi sounds you'll see many references to 'aspiration' — the amount of breath that escapes from the mouth when a sound is spoken. In English, the initial 'k' of 'kick' is strongly aspirated, the closing 'ck' much less so. In Hindi, such differences are represented by pairs of consonants such as क *ka* (unaspirated) and ख *kha* (aspirated). English consonants fall halfway between the two, so you'll have to make a special effort to cut back your aspiration for the one, and increase it for the other! All these things are best dealt with by listening to the recordings, and/or by asking a Hindi-speaker to demonstrate them for you.

On the facing page you'll find all the main characters of the script set out in a table; then each character is set out separately with its handwritten equivalent, and a note on pronunciation. The consonants are dealt with first (as is the tradition), though in dictionary order the vowels precede the consonants.

Devanagari: the basic characters

Independent vowel forms ('vowel characters')

अ <i>a</i>	आ <i>ā</i>	इ <i>i</i>	ई <i>ī</i>
उ <i>u</i>	ऊ <i>ū</i>	ऋ <i>r</i>	
ए <i>e</i>	ऐ <i>ai</i>	ओ <i>o</i>	औ <i>au</i>

Consonants

क <i>ka</i>	ख <i>kha</i>	ग <i>ga</i>	घ <i>gha</i>	
च <i>ca</i>	छ <i>cha</i>	ज <i>ja</i>	झ <i>jha</i>	
ट <i>ṭa</i>	ठ <i>ṭha</i>	ड <i>ḍa</i>	ढ <i>ḍha</i>	ण <i>ṇa</i>
त <i>ta</i>	थ <i>tha</i>	द <i>da</i>	ध <i>dha</i>	न <i>na</i>
प <i>pa</i>	फ <i>pha</i>	ब <i>ba</i>	भ <i>bha</i>	म <i>ma</i>
य <i>ya</i>	र <i>ra</i>	ल <i>la</i>	व <i>va</i>	
श <i>śa</i>	ष <i>ṣa</i>	स <i>sa</i>	ह <i>ha</i>	

Dependent vowel forms ('vowel signs', based on क as an example)

क <i>ka</i>	का <i>kā</i>	कि <i>ki</i>	की <i>kī</i>
कु <i>ku</i>	कू <i>kū</i>	कृ <i>kr</i>	
के <i>ke</i>	कै <i>kai</i>	को <i>ko</i>	कौ <i>kau</i>

▶ The consonants

क	<i>ka</i>	As in 'skin'; minimum aspiration.
क़	<i>qa</i>	Further back in the throat than undotted क (many speakers say 'ka' for both).
ख	<i>kha</i>	Aspirated version of क <i>ka</i> .
ख़	<i>kha</i>	Like the 'ch' in Scottish 'loch'.
ग	<i>ga</i>	As in 'gift'.
ग़	<i>ga</i>	A more guttural version of the above.
घ	<i>gha</i>	Aspirated version of ग; like the 'g h' in 'dog-house'. A <i>single</i> sound.
च	<i>ca</i>	As in 'cheap', but with the tongue positioned as for the 'ty' sound in 'tube'.
छ	<i>cha</i>	Aspirated form of the above.
ज	<i>ja</i>	As in 'jeep'.
ज़	<i>za</i>	As in 'zip'.
झ	<i>jha</i>	Aspirated form of ज <i>ja</i> .

The next seven consonants are 'retroflex': the tongue curls back to the palate (front part of the roof of the mouth), making a hard sound.

ट	<i>ṭa</i>	As in 'try', but harder.
ठ	<i>ṭha</i>	Aspirated version of the above.
ड	<i>ḍa</i>	As in 'dry', but harder.
Ḍ	<i>ḍa</i>	The tongue flicks past (rather than resting on) the retroflex position.
ढ	<i>ḍha</i>	Aspirated version of ड <i>ḍa</i> .

ढ़	<i>ṛha</i>	Aspirated version of ड़ <i>ṛa</i> .
ण	<i>ṇa</i>	An 'n' sound in the retroflex position.

The next five consonants are 'dental': the tongue touches the upper teeth, making a soft sound.

त	<i>ta</i>	As the first 't' in 'at the', very soft.
थ	<i>tha</i>	Aspirated version of the above.
द	<i>da</i>	As in 'breadth', very soft.
ध	<i>dha</i>	Aspirated version of the above.
न	<i>na</i>	As in 'anthology'.

'SONI DENTAL CHAMBER:
[FALSE-] TEETH AND
SPECTACLE-MAKER'

Ironically, the English word 'dental' is spelt with retroflex ड़ *ḍ* and ट़ *ṭ* in this signboard, whereas the Hindi word दाँत *dāṭ* 'tooth' has two dentals!



Now we come to 'labials', consonants produced with the lips.

प	<i>pa</i>	Much less aspiration than in 'pin'.
फ	<i>pha</i>	Aspirated version of the above.
ब	<i>ba</i>	As in 'bun'.
भ	<i>bha</i>	Aspirated version of the above.
म	<i>ma</i>	As in 'moon'.

Now for a sequence of four characters called 'semi-vowels':

य	ya	As in 'yes'.
र	ra	As in 'roll' — but lightly rolled!
ल	la	As in 'lullaby', but softer, more dental.
व	va	Neither a buzzy sound as in 'visa', nor as rounded as in 'we', but halfway between.

We're nearly done. Here are three 'sibilants':

श	śa	As 'sh' in 'ship'; pronounced 's' in some regional accents.
ष	ṣa	Strictly speaking a 'cerebral' (in which the tongue touches a high point in the roof of the mouth); but usually pronounced 'sh', the same as the previous character, श śa. It occurs in loanwords from Sanskrit only.
स	sa	As in 'sip'.

And finally an aspirate:

ह	ha	As in 'help'.
---	----	---------------

You'll have noticed that some characters have 'dotted' versions: these are for sounds which go beyond the range of Sanskrit, the classical language for which the script was first devised. They are क *ka*, ख *kha*, ग *ga*, ज *ja*, and फ *fa* (typically for words borrowed from Arabic and Persian) and ङ *ṅa*, ढ *ḍha* (late developers in the long history of Indian languages). These characters are not distinguished in dictionary order from their undotted equivalents. The showing of dots in print is often rather haphazard — but not in this book!

Remember that each consonant contains an inherent 'a' vowel as part of the deal. But it's important to notice that this 'inherent vowel' is *not* pronounced at the end of a word: thus the word for 'all', सब, reads *sab* (not '*saba*'), and the word for 'simple', सरल, reads *saral* (not '*sarala*'). Armed with this information you can now read and write these words:

क	ka	when?	क़लम	qalam	pen
ज	ja	when	गरम	garam	warm
त	ta	then	तरफ़	taraf	direction
प	pa	but; on	नमक	namak	salt
फ	pha	fruit	महल	mahal	palace
म	ma	mind	शहर	śahar	town
स	sa	all	सड़क	ṣarak	street
ह	ha	we, us	सरल	saral	simple

In the words महल *mahal* and शहर *śahar*, the ह *ha* has the effect of 'lightening' the adjacent vowels, making them sound more like the 'e' in 'mend' than the 'u' in 'mundane' (this will vary somewhat from speaker to speaker). Elsewhere, Hindi is remarkably free of such contextual changes: the Hindi script is a 'what you see is what you get' system.

► The vowels

Now we move on to look at vowels. Each vowel has two different forms: one is the 'vowel sign', used after a consonant; the other is the 'vowel character', used in other positions. First, vowel signs.

A vowel sign is used when a vowel follows a consonant. It's a small mark that is added to the consonant, and it replaces the 'a' that is otherwise present as the inherent vowel. The examples below show the vowel 'e' added to the consonants क *ka*, ख *kha*, ग *ga* and घ *gha*.

के	ke	खे	khe	गे	ge	घे	ghe
----	----	----	-----	----	----	----	-----

Here now is the full range of such vowel signs, based on क —

का	kā	A long vowel, as in 'calm'.
कि	ki	A short vowel, as in 'kipper'.
की	kī	A long version of the above, as in 'keep'.
कु	ku	Short, as in 'put'.

क	kū	A long version of the above, as in 'food'.
कृ	kr	A very short 'ri' sound, as in 'thrill'. It only occurs in Sanskrit loanwords.
के	ke	Like the French é in 'été'; <i>not</i> a rounded sound as in English 'payday'.
कै	kai	Similar to the vowel in 'cap', but flatter.
को	ko	A pure 'o', less rounded than in 'cold'.
कौ	kau	Similar to the vowel in 'hot'.

And here's some more reading and writing practice:

▶ कान	kān	ear	पानी	pānī	water
कृपा	krpā	kindness	भारत	bhārat	India
खड़ा	kharā	standing	मकान	makān	house
चाय	cāy	tea	वाराणसी	vārāṇasī	Varanasi
तोता	totā	parrot	सितार	sitār	sitar
दुकान	dukān	shop	सौ	sau	hundred
दूर	dūr	far	है	hai	is

At this point you should practise writing out these vowel signs attached to *all* the consonants until they become really familiar.

These vowel signs can only be used when they have a consonant sign to cling to. In other positions, such as at the beginning of a word, the vowel is written with a vowel *character*. The first in the list is the 'inherent' vowel:

अ	a	अब <i>ab</i>	now
आ	ā	आज <i>āj</i>	today
इ	i	इधर <i>idhar</i>	over here
ई	ī	ईरान <i>irān</i>	Iran

उ	u	उधर <i>udhar</i>	over there
ऊ	ū	ऊपर <i>ūpar</i>	up
ऋ	r	ऋण <i>m</i>	debt
ए	e	एक <i>ek</i>	one
ऐ	ai	ऐसा <i>aisā</i>	such
ओ	o	ओर <i>or</i>	direction
औ	au	और <i>aur</i>	and

And here are three words in which vowel characters appear as the second of two sequential vowels (i.e. neither at the beginning of a word nor after a consonant):

कई	kaī	'several' — ई <i>i</i> follows the syllable क <i>ka</i> ;
उबाऊ	ubāū	'boring' — ऊ <i>ū</i> follows the syllable बा <i>bā</i> ;
बनाओ	banāo	'make' — ओ <i>o</i> follows the syllable ना <i>nā</i> .

▶ Conjunct characters

When two consonant sounds come together without an intervening vowel, we have to cancel or 'kill off' the inherent vowel of the first consonant. For example, in the word 'Hindi' there is no 'a' between the 'n' and the 'd', so a shortened form of the first consonant, न, is physically joined to the second consonant, द, giving हिन्दी *hindī*.

क + य	=	क्य	क्या <i>kyā</i>	what?
च + च	=	च्च	बच्चा <i>baccā</i>	child
च + छ	=	च्छ	अच्छा <i>acchā</i>	good
ल + ल	=	ल्ल	बिल्ली <i>billī</i>	cat
स + त	=	स्त	हिन्दुस्तानी <i>hindustānī</i>	Indian

Conjuncts beginning with द *da* can be hard to recognize:

द + द	=	द्	रद्द <i>radd</i>	cancelled
द + म	=	द्म	पद्म <i>padma</i>	lotus

द + य = य	विद्या <i>vidyā</i> knowledge
द + व = द्व	द्वार <i>dvār</i> gateway

When र is the first character of a compound it turns into a little curl (called रेफ *reph*) above the second character:

र + क = कर्क	फर्क <i>farq</i> difference
र + थ = र्थ	अर्थ <i>arth</i> meaning
र + द = र्द	दर्द <i>dard</i> pain
र + मा = र्मा	शर्मा <i>śarmā</i> Sharma
र + थी = र्थी	विद्यार्थी <i>vidyārthī</i> student

The *reph* comes at the very end of the syllable in words like शर्मा *śarmā* (where it's above the vowel sign ि) and like विद्यार्थी *vidyārthī* (where it's above the vowel sign ी).

When र is the second character of a compound it turns into a little slanting line, tucked into a convenient nook of the first character:

ग + र = ग्र	सिग्रेट <i>sigret</i> cigarette
द + र = द्र	द्रोही <i>drohī</i> hostile
प + र = प्र	प्रदेश <i>prades</i> state, region

See what happens when no nook is available:

ट + र = ट्र	ट्रेन <i>tren</i> train
ड + र = ड्र	ड्रामा <i>drāmā</i> drama

Some conjuncts stack vertically:

ट + ट = ट्ट	छुट्टी <i>chutti</i> holiday
ट + ठ = ट्ठ	चिट्ठी <i>ciṭṭhī</i> letter

Most conjuncts are easy to read, but there are some in which the conjunct has limited resemblance to its component parts, and these have to be learnt as new characters in their own right:

क + त = क्त	भक्ति <i>bhakti</i> devotion
क + ष = क्श	रक्षा <i>rakṣā</i> protection

त + त = त्त	कुत्ता <i>kuttā</i> dog
त + र = त्र	मित्र <i>mitr</i> friend
द + भ = द्भ	अद्भुत <i>adbhut</i> wondrous
श + र = श्र	श्री <i>śrī</i> Mr
ह + म = ह्म	ब्रह्मा <i>Brahmā</i> Brahma (a deity)

The rare character ञ *jña* is a conjunct of ज with ञ् *ña*, a nasal consonant (like the first 'n' in 'onion') that is not shown in our table because it never occurs alone; ञ *jña* is usually pronounced 'gy'.

When pronouncing doubled consonants, just 'hold' the sound momentarily, as in distinguishing 'night train' from 'night rain'. Practise with कुत्ता *kuttā* 'dog', बिल्ली *billī* 'cat', बच्चा *baccā* 'child'.

▶ Nasals

A nasalized vowel is produced by diverting part of the breath through the nose: speak while pinching your nose to hear what it sounds like! Nasalization is marked with a sign called *candrabindu*, 'moon-dot':

हाँ	<i>hā̃</i> yes
कहाँ	<i>kahā̃</i> where?
यहाँ	<i>yahā̃</i> here

If there's a vowel sign above the top line, there won't be room for the moon (*candra*), so the dot (*bindu*) is used alone:

नहीं	<i>nahī̃</i> no
कहीं	<i>kahī̃</i> somewhere
यहीं	<i>yahī̃</i> right here

Nasalizing a vowel can change the meaning, as with है *hai* 'is' and हैं *haĩ* 'are'. Similarly, while यहीं *yahī̃* means 'right here', यही *yahī* means 'this one, this very one' — a completely different word!

Our little dot has a second function also (here with a new name — 'anusvār'); it can be used to indicate an 'n' or 'm' when such a letter is the first element of a conjunct:

अंडा = अण्डा	<i>aṇḍā</i> egg
हिंदी = हिन्दी	<i>hindī</i> Hindi
लंबा = लम्बा	<i>lambā</i> long, tall

Other signs

The word दुःख *duḥkh* 'sorrow' includes the colon-like sign called 'visarga'; this rare sign indicates a lightly pronounced 'h' sound.

In situations where it's not possible or convenient to write or print a conjunct, an inherent vowel can be cancelled by hanging a little line called 'virām' below it: चड्डी *caḍḍī* 'underpants'.

The 'full stop' is a standing line, as seen from Unit 1 onwards. Most other punctuation follows English usage.

Here are the numerals from 0 to 9:

० १ २ ३ ४ ५ ६ ७ ८ ९

Loanwords from English

When writing non-Indian words, transcribe the sounds, *not* the spelling; thus 'cycle' (bicycle) is written साइकिल *sāikil*. English 't' and 'd' usually become retroflex: 'doctor' is डाक्टर *dākṭar*.

Sometimes a little 'moon' sign is used to designate the Hindi pronunciation of an English 'o' like the first vowel in 'chocolate' — चॉकलेट. It doesn't have a standard transliteration in the roman script, and the sound isn't really affected: most people say चाकलेट *cāklet*, with the standard long 'ā' vowel.

Silent 'inherent vowels'

The inherent vowel 'a' is silent at the end of a word in Hindi — though not in Sanskrit, Hindi's classical ancestor. Thus the name राम is pronounced 'Rām' in Hindi, 'Rāma' in Sanskrit.

At the end of a word whose last syllable is a conjunct character, the inherent vowel is pronounced lightly in order to make the conjunct easier to say: अवश्य *avaśya* 'certainly', जन्म *janma* 'birth'.

Sometimes an inherent vowel is silent in the middle of a word, even though the spelling involves no conjunct. Here is a general (if imperfect) pair of rules:

In a word of three or more syllables that ends with a vowel other than the inherent vowel, the penultimate inherent vowel is not pronounced. Thus समझ *samajh*, but समझा *samjhā* (because it ends in long ā); रहन *rahan*, but रहना *rahnā* (likewise).

In a word that has three syllables in which the third is a long vowel and the second is the inherent vowel, the inherent vowel is not pronounced. Thus सोमवार *somvār* 'Monday', लिखता *likhtā* 'write, writing'.

01

greetings
namaste
नमस्ते

In this unit you will learn

- how to say who you are, greet people and say goodbye
- how to ask questions about things and people

Language points

- the verb 'to be'
- basic sentence construction
- question formation

1 Saying hello

The universal greeting in Hindi is the word नमस्ते *namaste*, which means both 'hello, good morning' etc. and also 'goodbye'. It comes from India's classical language of Sanskrit, where it means 'Salutation to you'. Though this literal meaning is now remote (like the 'God be with you' that underlies the English 'goodbye'), it is part of the elaborate code of respect that runs through the Hindi language.

To communicate well in Hindi, good clear pronunciation is as important as grammar, and the word नमस्ते *namaste* gives an ideal chance to practise right from the start. Your tongue should touch your upper teeth as you say the n and the t; and in the last syllable, aim for the é of French 'été' — the vowel is not the rounded 'ay' sound heard in English 'stay'.

In formal contexts the word नमस्ते *namaste* is accompanied by a gesture in which the palms are put together (though many people are more likely to offer a handshake these days). It's considered polite to say नमस्ते *namaste* to an older or senior person first, before he or she says it to you. Sometimes you will hear नमस्कार *namaskār* (in which the 's' may be pronounced 'sh'); this means the same thing.

नमस्ते *namaste* — you're speaking Hindi already!



2 Who and how people are

Here we meet Raju and Geeta, a married couple from Agra; later we'll meet their children Manoj (boy, 16), Meena (girl, 10), and Ram (boy, 8), and their dog Moti (male, age unknown).

'I am' is मैं हूँ *mai hū̃*, and 'I am not' is मैं नहीं हूँ *mai nahī̃ hū̃*. Notice how the verb हूँ *hū̃* 'am' comes at the end of the sentence.

मैं राजू हूँ ।

mai Rājū hū̃. I am Raju.

मैं ठीक हूँ ।

mai thik hū̃. I am OK.

मैं बीमार नहीं हूँ ।

mai bimār nahī̃ hū̃. I am not ill.

मैं गीता हूँ ।

mai Gītā hū̃. I am Geeta.

मैं हिन्दुस्तानी हूँ ।

mai hindustānī hū̃. I am Indian.

मैं अंग्रेज़ नहीं हूँ ।

mai āngrez nahī̃ hū̃. I am not English.

► My and mine

The word मेरा *merā* means both 'my' and 'mine'; है *hai* means 'is'.

मेरा नाम राजू है ।

merā nām Rājū hai. My name is Raju.

मैं अध्यापक हूँ ।

mai adhyāpak hū̃. I'm a teacher.

गीता डाक्टर है ।

Gītā dāktar hai. Geeta is a doctor.

सीता नर्स है ।

Sītā nars hai. Sita is a nurse.

► Yes/no questions

A statement is turned into a question by simply adding the question-word क्या *kyā* at the beginning of the sentence; क्या *kyā* isn't translatable here: it just turns what follows into a question. There's no change in the word order: just add क्या *kyā* to make a question.

क्या मैं अध्यापक हूँ ?

kyā mai adhyāpak hū̃? Am I a teacher?

क्या गीता डाक्टर है ?

kyā Gītā dāktar hai? Is Geeta a doctor?

क्या सीता नर्स है ?

kyā Sītā nars hai? Is Sita a nurse?

Because these questions can all be answered either जी हाँ *jī hā̃* 'yes' or जी नहीं *jī nahī̃* 'no', we'll call them 'yes/no' questions. Here are two more, with their answers:

क्या राजू ठीक है ?

kyā Rājū thik hai? Is Raju OK?

जी हाँ, राजू ठीक है।

jī hā, Rājū thīk hai. Yes, Raju is OK.

क्या गीता बीमार है ?

kyā Gītā bimār hai? Is Geeta ill?

जी नहीं, गीता बीमार नहीं है।

jī nahī, Gītā bimār nahī hai. No, Geeta isn't ill.

▶ You

In order to begin real conversations, we need to add the word आप *āp* 'you' and the verb हैं *hai* 'are' — आप हैं *āp hai* 'you are'. Notice the difference between है *hai* 'is' and हैं *hai* 'are': the second is nasalized (a nasal sound is produced when some of the breath comes through the nose rather than through the mouth).

Now we're really talking:

क्या आप गीता हैं ?

kyā āp Gītā hai? Are you Geeta?

जी हाँ, मैं गीता हूँ।

jī hā, mai Gītā hū. Yes, I am Geeta.

क्या आप डाक्टर हैं ?

kyā āp dāktar hai? Are you a doctor?

जी हाँ, मैं डाक्टर हूँ।

jī hā, mai dāktar hū. Yes, I'm a doctor.

क्या मैं बीमार हूँ ?

kyā mai bimār hū? Am I ill?

जी नहीं, आप बीमार नहीं हैं।

jī nahī, āp bimār nahī hai. No, you're not ill.

क्या मैं ठीक हूँ ?

kyā mai thīk hū? Am I all right?

जी हाँ, आप बिलकुल ठीक हैं !

jī hā, āp bilkul thīk hai! Yes, you're quite all right!

Did you know?

In the tally of world languages, only English, Chinese and Spanish have more speakers than Hindi.

▶ Practise what you've learnt

Practise these questions by speaking them out loud (and answering them) until you're completely at home with the format. Stay with this pattern until new words and phrases have been introduced.

क्या आप अंग्रेज़ हैं ?

kyā āp āgrez hai? Are you English?

क्या आप डाक्टर हैं ?

kyā āp dāktar hai? Are you a doctor?

क्या आप अध्यापक हैं ?

kyā āp adhyāpak hai? Are you a teacher?

क्या आप विद्यार्थी हैं ?

kyā āp vidyārthī hai? Are you a student?

क्या आप ठीक हैं ?

kyā āp thīk hai? Are you OK?

क्या आप बीमार हैं ?

kyā āp bimār hai? Are you ill?

क्या आप खुश हैं ?

kyā āp khuś hai? Are you happy?

क्या आप नाराज़ हैं ?

kyā āp nārāz hai? Are you angry?

You may have noticed that Hindi doesn't have a word for 'a' (though sometimes the word एक *ek* — the number 'one' — serves this purpose). There isn't a word for 'the' either.

▶ 3 This and that; he, she, and it

So far we've seen the pronouns मैं *mai* 'I', and आप *āp* 'you'. Now we move on to the two words that mean, 'this, that, he, she, it'.

यह *yah* (often pronounced 'ye') means 'this', and वह *vah* (often pronounced 'vo') means 'that'.

यह लड़का राम है।

yah larḳā Rām hai. This boy is Ram.

यह लड़की मीना है।

yah larḳī Minā hai. This girl is Meena.

वह लड़का नाराज़ है, लेकिन ...

vah larḳā nārāz hai, lekin... That boy is angry, but...

वह लड़की खुश है ।

vah larḳī khūś hai. that girl is happy.

यह yah and वह vah also mean 'he, she, it'. If the person referred to is near at hand ('this person here'), use यह yah; otherwise, use वह vah. Only use यह yah when indicating quite specifically 'this person/thing here': when referring to 'he, she, it' generally, वह vah is better.

राम ठीक नहीं है । वह बीमार है ।

Rām thīk nahī hai. vah bīmār hai. Ram isn't well. He's ill.



यह मोती है । yah Motī hai.

यह कुत्ता है । yah kuttā hai.

यह खुश है । yah khūś hai.

यह मेरा है । yah merā hai.

There's no 'he/she' gender distinction in the Hindi pronoun. Later on you'll see that gender is distinguished by some verb endings.

In the plural, यह yah becomes ये ye ('these, they'), and वह vah becomes वे ve ('those, they'). And remember है hai 'is' and हैं hai 'are'.

यह आदमी अंग्रेज़ है ।

yah ādmī āgrez hai. This man's English.

ये लोग अंग्रेज़ हैं ।

ye log āgrez hai. These people are English.

वह आदमी अंग्रेज़ है ।

vah ādmī āgrez hai. That man's English.

वे लोग अंग्रेज़ हैं ।

ve log āgrez hai. Those people are English.

4 More questions

We saw just now that क्या kyā turns a statement into a question, without changing the word order: आप ठीक हैं āp thīk hai 'You are OK' becomes क्या आप ठीक हैं? kyā āp thīk hai? 'Are you OK?'

But in a second meaning, क्या kyā has the sense 'what?' Similarly कौन kaun means 'who?'

क्या

kyā what?

यह क्या है ?

yah kyā hai? What is this?

वह क्या है ?

vah kyā hai? What is that?

कौन

kaun who?

यह कौन है ?

yah kaun hai? Who is this?

वह कौन है ?

vah kaun hai? Who is that?

Notice how a reply copies the word-order of the question, the answer-word simply replacing the question-word. In the following pair of sentences, कौन kaun 'who?' is replaced by the answer मेरा दोस्त merā dost 'my friend'.

वह कौन है ?

vah kaun hai? Who is he?

वह मेरा दोस्त है ।

vah merā dost hai. He is my friend.

Our conversation possibilities are growing rapidly:

आप कौन हैं ?

āp kaun hai? Who are you?

मैं राजू हूँ ।

mai Rājū hū. I am Raju.

यह कौन है ?

yah kaun hai? Who is this?

यह मीना है ।

yah Mīnā hai. This is Meena.

वह क्या है ?
vah kyā hai? What is that?
 वह सितार है ।
vah sitār hai. That is a sitar.

वह कौन है ?
vah kaun hai? Who is that?
 वह मनोज है ।
vah Manoj hai. That is Manoj.

मनोज कौन है ?
Manoj kaun hai? Who is Manoj?
 मनोज मेरा भाई है ।
Manoj merā bhāi hai. Manoj is my brother.

► What's this?

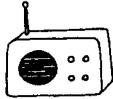
Here's a chance for you to practise a very useful question-and-answer pattern — 'What's this?' 'It's a...'



यह क्या है ? *yah kyā hai?*
 यह किताब है । *yah kitāb hai.*



यह क्या है ? *yah kyā hai?*
 यह कलम है । *yah qalam hai.*



यह क्या है ? *yah kyā hai?*
 यह रेडियो है । *yah reḍiyo hai.*



यह क्या है ? *yah kyā hai?*
 यह कुर्सी है । *yah kursī hai.*



यह क्या है ? *yah kyā hai?*
 यह मेज़ है । *yah mez hai.*



यह क्या है ? *yah kyā hai?*
 यह मकान है । *yah makān hai.*



यह क्या है ? *yah kyā hai?*
 यह कुत्ता है । *yah kuttā hai.*



यह क्या है ? *yah kyā hai?*
 यह बिल्ली है । *yah billi hai.*

Remember that when क्या *kyā* comes at the beginning of the sentence, it turns a following statement into a question. When you've answered the following questions, make up more questions and answers of your own, using any everyday words from the glossary. (NB: you'll find answers to all *numbered* questions either after the questions or at the back of the book.)

१. क्या मोती बिल्ली है ?
kyā Motī billi hai?
२. क्या गीता डाक्टर है ?
kyā Gitā dākṭar hai?
३. क्या आप डाक्टर हैं ?
kyā āp dākṭar hai?
४. क्या राजू और गीता हिन्दुस्तानी हैं ?
kyā Rājū aur Gitā hindustāni hai?
५. क्या हिंदी आसान है ?
kyā hindī āsān hai?

▶ Raju meets his new neighbour, Javed

You'll see a new pronoun here: उसका *uskā* 'his, her/hers, its'.

राजू नमस्ते । मैं राजू हूँ । आप कौन हैं ?

जावेद नमस्ते । मेरा नाम जावेद है ।

राजू क्या आप ठीक हैं ?

जावेद जी हाँ, शुक्रिया, मैं ठीक हूँ ।

राजू वह लड़की कौन है ?

जावेद उसका नाम बानो है ।

राजू आपका पूरा नाम क्या है ?

जावेद मेरा पूरा नाम जावेद खाँ है ।

Rājū namaste. mai Rājū hū. āp kaun hai?

Jāved namaste. merā nām Jāved hai.

Rājū kyā āp thik hai?

Jāved jī hā, śukriyā, mai thik hū.

Rājū vah laṛkī kaun hai?

Jāved uskā nām Bāno hai.

Rājū āpkā pūrā nām kyā hai?

Jāved merā pūrā nām Jāved Khā hai.

Raju Hello. I am Raju. Who are you?

Javed Hello. My name is Javed.

Raju Are you OK?

Javed Yes, thank you, I am OK.

Raju Who is that girl?

Javed Her name is Bano.

Raju What is your full name?

Javed My full name is Javed Khan.

Exercise 1a Translate:

Javed What is this?

Manoj This is my radio.

Javed Who is that boy?

Manoj He is my brother.

Javed What's his name?

Manoj His name is Ram.

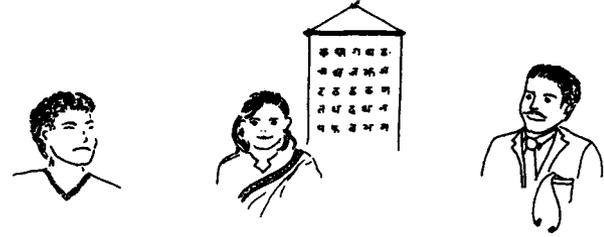
Javed Who is that girl?

Manoj Her name is Meena.

Javed Is she ill?

Manoj No, she isn't ill. She's OK.

Exercise 1b Answer the questions about the people described below. (New words: शादी-शुदा *sādi-śudā* 'married', दोनों *donō* 'both').



सुरेश खन्ना Suresh Khanna	उमा देवी Uma Devi	विनोद कुमार Vinod Kumar
student	teacher	doctor
Indian	Indian	American
not married	not married	married
not happy	happy	happy

१ क्या सुरेश शादी-शुदा है ? *kyā Sureś sādī-śudā hai?*

२ क्या वह हिन्दुस्तानी है ? *kyā vah hindustānī hai?*

३ क्या वह अध्यापक है ? *kyā vah adhyāpak hai?*

४ उसका पूरा नाम क्या है ? *uskā pūrā nām kyā hai?*

५ क्या उमा हिन्दुस्तानी है ? *kyā Umā hindustānī hai?*

६ क्या वह डाक्टर है ? *kyā vah dāktar hai?*

७ क्या वह शादी-शुदा है ? *kyā vah sādī-śudā hai?*

८ क्या वह सुखी है ? *kyā vah sukhī hai?*

९ क्या विनोद अँग्रेज़ है ? *kyā Vinod āngrez hai?*

- १० क्या वह अध्यापक है ? *kyā vah adhyāpak hai?*
 ११ उसका पूरा नाम क्या है ? *uskā pūrā nām kyā hai?*
 १२ क्या वह शादी-शुदा है ? *kyā vah śādī-śudā hai?*
 १३ क्या विनोद और सुरेश दोनों हिन्दुस्तानी हैं ?
kyā Vinod aur Sureś donō hindustāni hai?
 १४ क्या उमा और विनोद दोनों शादी-शुदा हैं ?
kyā Umā aur Vinod donō śādī-śudā hai?
 १५ क्या सुरेश और उमा दोनों अध्यापक हैं ?
kyā Sureś aur Umā donō adhyāpak hai?

► Glossary

The words in this glossary are on the recording at the end of the Introduction (track 1).

अंग्रेज़ <i>āgrez</i> m., f. English person	डाक्टर <i>dāktar</i> m. doctor
अध्यापक <i>adhyāpak</i> m. teacher	दोनों <i>donō</i> both
अमरीकन <i>amrikan</i> American	दोस्त <i>dost</i> m., f. friend
आदमी <i>ādmī</i> m. man	नमस्कार <i>namaskār</i> hello,
आप <i>āp</i> you	goodbye
आपका <i>āpkā</i> your, yours	नमस्ते <i>namaste</i> hello, goodbye
आसान <i>āsān</i> easy	नर्स <i>nars</i> m., f. nurse
इसका <i>iskā</i> his, her/hers, its	नहीं <i>nahī</i> not, no
उसका <i>uskā</i> his, her/hers, its	नाम <i>nām</i> m. name
एक <i>ek</i> a; one	नाराज़ <i>nārāz</i> angry, displeased
और <i>aur</i> and	पूरा <i>pūrā</i> full, complete
औरत <i>aurat</i> f. woman	बिलकुल <i>billkul</i> quite, completely
क़लम <i>qalam</i> m./f. pen	बिल्ली <i>billī</i> f. cat
किताब <i>kitāb</i> f. book	बीमार <i>bīmār</i> ill, sick
कुत्ता <i>kuttā</i> m. dog	बेटा <i>beṭā</i> m. son
कुरसी <i>kursī</i> f. chair	भाई <i>bhāī</i> m. brother
कौन <i>kaun</i> who?	मकान <i>makān</i> m. house
क्या <i>kyā</i> what?; and question- marker	मेज़ <i>mez</i> f. table
ख़ुश <i>khuś</i> pleased, happy	मेरा <i>merā</i> my, mine
जी नहीं <i>jī nahī</i> no	मैं <i>maī</i> I
जी हाँ <i>jī hā</i> yes	यह <i>yah</i> he, she, it, this
ठीक <i>thik</i> OK, all right	ये <i>ye</i> they, these
	रेडियो <i>reḍiyo</i> m. radio

लड़का *larkā* m. boy
 लड़की *larkī* f. girl
 लेकिन *lekin* but
 लोग *log* m. pl. people
 वह *vah* he, she, it, that
 विद्यार्थी *vidyārthī* m. student
 वे *ve* they, those
 शादी-शुदा *śādī-śudā* married
 शुक्रिया *śukriyā* thank you

सुखी *sukhī* happy
 सितार *sitār* m. sitar
 हाँ *hā* yes
 हिन्दी *hindī* f. Hindi
 हिन्दुस्तानी *hindustāni* Indian
 हूँ *hū* am
 हैं *hai* are
 है *hai* is

1 Gender matters

We saw earlier that लड़का *laṛkā* means 'boy' and लड़की *laṛkī* means 'girl'. This contrast between *-ā* in the masculine and *-ī* in the feminine appears in many nouns, adjectives, etc. — in fact it's a characteristic feature of Hindi. See how both adjective and noun change in the following:

मनोज बड़ा लड़का है ।

Manoj barā laṛkā hai. Manoj is a big boy.

मीना बड़ी लड़की है ।

Mīnā barī laṛkī hai. Meena is a big girl.

Masculine बड़ा *barā* becomes feminine बड़ी *barī*. Watch again:

मनोज लंबा और पतला है ।

Manoj lambā aur patlā hai. Manoj is tall and thin.

मीना लंबी और पतली है ।

Mīnā lambī aur patlī hai. Meena is tall and thin.

राम छोटा है ।

Rām choṭā hai. Ram is little.

क्या राम अच्छा लड़का है ?

kyā Rām acchā laṛkā hai? Is Ram a good boy?

मोती मोटा नहीं है ।

Motī moṭā nahī hai. Moti isn't fat.

क्या मनोज पतला है ?

kyā Manoj patlā hai? Is Manoj thin?

क्या मीना लंबी है ?

kyā Mīnā lambī hai? Is Meena tall?

Similarly, मेरा *merā* 'my, mine' becomes मेरी *merī* when describing a feminine noun:

यह लड़का मेरा छोटा भाई है ।

yah laṛkā merā choṭā bhāī hai. This boy is my little brother.

यह लड़की मेरी छोटी बहन है ।

yah laṛkī merī choṭī bahin hai. This girl is my little sister.

In this unit you will learn

- about masculines and feminines
- about formal and informal ways of speaking to people

Language points

- agreement of number and gender
- cardinal and ordinal numbers

हमारा परिवार

hamārā

our family

02

मेरा बेटा ठीक है लेकिन मेरी बेटी बीमार है ।

merā beṭā ṭhīk hai lekin merī beṭī bīmār hai. My son is well but my daughter is sick.

The speaker of the three sentences above could be either male or female: the gender of मेरा/मेरी *merā/merī* depends on the thing or person possessed, *not* the possessor. It behaves just like any other adjective. Similarly आपका *āpkā* becomes आपकी *āpkī* in the feminine:

आपका बेटा काफी लंबा है ।

āpkā beṭā kāfī lambā hai. Your son is quite tall.

आपकी बेटी बहुत सुंदर है ।

āpkī beṭī bahut sundar hai. Your daughter is very beautiful.

Practise what you've learnt

Think of a neighbour and answer these questions about him or her:

A male neighbour	A female neighbour
क्या आपका पड़ोसी लंबा है ? <i>kyā āpkā paṛosī lambā hai?</i>	क्या आपकी पड़ोसिन लंबी है ? <i>kyā āpkī paṛosin lambī hai?</i>
क्या आपका पड़ोसी पतला है ? <i>kyā āpkā paṛosī patlā hai?</i>	क्या आपकी पड़ोसिन पतली है ? <i>kyā āpkī paṛosin patlī hai?</i>
क्या आपका पड़ोसी अँग्रेज़ है ? <i>kyā āpkā paṛosī āgrez hai?</i>	क्या आपकी पड़ोसिन अँग्रेज़ है ? <i>kyā āpkī paṛosin āgrez hai?</i>
क्या वह नाराज़ है ? <i>kyā vah nārāz hai?</i>	क्या वह नाराज़ है ? <i>kyā vah nārāz hai?</i>
क्या वह बीमार है ? <i>kyā vah bīmār hai?</i>	क्या वह बीमार है ? <i>kyā vah bīmār hai?</i>
क्या वह सुंदर है ? <i>kyā vah sundar hai?</i>	क्या वह सुंदर है ? <i>kyā vah sundar hai?</i>

All nouns have a gender

You must learn the gender of every new noun you meet — it's not only animate beings that have gender. The words आशा *āsā* 'hope', अलमारी *almāri* 'cupboard' and तस्वीर *tasvīr* 'picture' are all feminine, while कमरा *kamrā* 'room', मकान *makān* 'house' and आदमी *ādmī* 'man' are all masculine. Try learning nouns with an appropriate adjective:

बड़ा कमरा, बड़ा आदमी

barā kamrā, barā ādmī big room, big man

बड़ी तस्वीर, बड़ी किताब

barī tasvīr, barī kitāb big picture, big book

बड़ा कुत्ता, छोटी बिल्ली

barā kuttā, choṭī billī big dog, small cat

Some adjectives never change

Only those adjectives that end *-ā* in the masculine change to *-ī* in the feminine. Other adjectives never change, and so are called 'invariable'; ठीक *ṭhīk* 'OK' is a good example.

यह किताब ठीक है ।

yah kitāb ṭhīk hai. This book is OK.

यह कमरा ठीक है ।

yah kamrā ṭhīk hai. This room is OK.

मनोज ठीक है ।

Manoj ṭhīk hai. Manoj is OK.

A few adjectives ending in *-ā* are invariable despite this ending. Examples are ज़िन्दा *zindā* 'alive' and शादी-शुदा *śādī-śudā* 'married'. A few adjectives ending in *-ī*, such as खाली *khāli* 'vacant, empty, free', are also invariable.

क्या बिल्ली ज़िन्दा है ?

kyā billī zindā hai? Is the cat alive?

गीता शादी-शुदा है ।

Gītā śādī-śudā hai. Geeta is married.

यह कमरा खाली है ।

yah kamrā khāli hai. This room is free.

Did you know?

Though India's linguistic diversity has made it difficult for Hindi (or any other language) to gain the status of a true 'national language', Hindi is spoken by some 350 million people in the subcontinent — the 1991 census gives the figure of 337,272,114 (source: www.censusindia.net).

Role play

In this role play, your name is Geeta Sharma and you are married to Raju Sharma; you have a brother, Rakesh, and a sister, Sita — she's unwell, but everyone else is OK. Answer these questions:

- १ क्या आप गीता हैं ? *kyā āp Gītā hai?*
- २ आपका पूरा नाम क्या है ? *āpkā pūrā nām kyā hai?*
- ३ क्या आप शादी-शुदा हैं ? *kyā āp śādī-śudā hai?*
- ४ राकेश कौन है ? *Rākeś kaun hai?*
- ५ सीता कौन है ? *Sītā kaun hai?*
- ६ क्या आपकी बहिन ठीक है ? *kyā āpkī bahin thik hai?*
- ७ क्या आपका भाई बीमार है ? *kyā āpkā bhāī bimār hai?*
- ८ क्या आप बीमार हैं ? *kyā āp bimār hai?*

2 Number

English usually makes nouns singular plural by adding an 's', as in 'one book, two books'. In Hindi it's a bit more complicated, because masculine and feminine nouns behave differently. We'll look at masculine nouns first.

Two types of masculine noun

Most masculine nouns ending *-ā* in the singular change to *-e* in the plural. The same happens with most adjectives ending *-ā*.

बड़ा कमरा	बड़े कमरे
<i>baṛā kamrā</i> big room	<i>baṛe kamre</i> big rooms

Other masculine nouns don't change at all in the plural — they behave like the English word 'sheep'. In the following, though the noun आदमी *ādmī* doesn't change, its status as singular or plural is revealed by the adjective changing from singular *-ā* to plural *-e*:

बड़ा आदमी	बड़े आदमी
<i>baṛā ādmī</i> big man	<i>baṛe ādmī</i> big men

You'll sometimes find that neither the adjective *nor* the noun is of the changing type. As with the numerically ambiguous English phrase 'fat sheep', you can only tell the number from the context:

आसान काम

āsān kām easy work / easy jobs

साफ़ मकान

sāf makān clean house / clean houses

A handful of nouns ending in *-ā* belong to this 'non-changing' group: पिता *pitā* 'father', चाचा *cācā* 'uncle', राजा *rājā* 'king', नेता *netā* 'leader, politician.

मेरे पिता और चाचा दोनों नेता हैं ।

mere pitā aur cācā donō netā hai. My father and uncle are both politicians.

Two types of feminine noun

Feminine nouns ending *-ī* (like लड़की *laṛkī* 'girl') or *-i* (शक्ति *śakti* 'power') change this ending to *-iyā* in the plural, but feminine adjectives stay the same in the plural:

छोटी लड़की	छोटी लड़कियाँ
<i>choṭī laṛkī</i> little girl	<i>choṭī laṛkiyā</i> little girls

Other feminine nouns are made plural by adding *-एँ -ई*.

एक मेज़	दो मेज़ें
<i>ek mez</i> one table	<i>do mezē</i> two tables
एक औरत	तीन औरतें
<i>ek aurat</i> one woman	<i>tīn auratē</i> three women
एक मोटी महिला	चार मोटी महिलाएँ
<i>ek moṭī mahilā</i> one fat lady	<i>cār moṭī mahilāē</i> four fat ladies
मेरी बड़ी बहिन	मेरी बड़ी बहिनें
<i>merī baṛī bahin</i> my big sister	<i>merī baṛī bahinē</i> my big sisters

An adjective that refers to mixed genders is masculine, as in लंबे *lambe* below:

मनोज और मीना दोनों लंबे हैं ।

Manoj aur Mīnā donō lambe hai. Manoj and Meena are both tall. (Manoj is male, Meena female: the adjective लंबे *lambe* is masculine plural.)

Fill the gap!

Fill the gap with the appropriate word(s). Answers below.

- १ ये औरतें बहुत हैं ।
ye auratē bahut hai. These women are very tall.
- २ बहुत मोटे हैं ।
..... bahut mote hai. Those boys are very fat.
- ३ आपका दोस्त ।
āpkā dost Your friend is very thin.
- ४ सीता है ?
Sītā hai? Who is Sita?
- ५ मोती ठीक है ?
..... Motī thīk hai? Is Moti OK?

Answers: 1 लंबी *lambī*; 2 वे लड़के *ve larke*; 3 बहुत पतला है *bahut patlā hai*; 4 कौन *kaun*; 5 क्या *kyā*.

Practising some plurals

Making nouns plural is an essential skill: practise singular/plural contrasts out loud, pronouncing every word as clearly as you can, and you'll feel the music of the language as you learn it.

एक आदमी <i>ek ādmī</i> one man	दो आदमी <i>do ādmī</i> two men
एक लड़का <i>ek larḱā</i> one boy	दो लड़के <i>do larḱe</i> two boys
एक लड़की <i>ek larḱī</i> one girl	दो लड़कियाँ <i>do larḱiyā</i> two girls
एक मेज़ <i>ek mez</i> one table	दो मेज़ें <i>do mezē</i> two tables

Do this with a variety of different nouns and you'll soon get the hang of it — a certain amount of parrot-like repetition is essential when learning a new language! Throw in an adjective too —

एक बड़ा आदमी
ek barā ādmī
one big man

दस बड़े आदमी
das barē ādmī
ten big men etc.

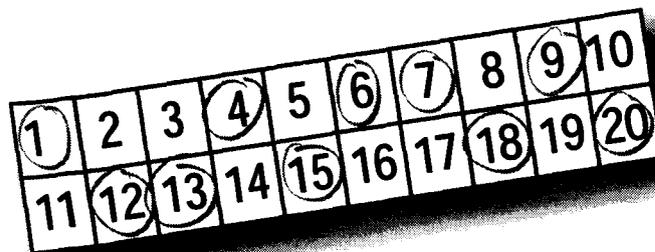
Some numbers

Talking of numbers — you should learn to count! Learn the numbers from 1 to 20 in groups of five as they're set out below. (You'll find a full list of numbers in Unit 12.6.) Hindi uses both the Arabic set of numerals (1 2 3 etc.) and the Devanagari set (१ २ ३ etc.).

१	1	एक <i>ek</i>	११	11	ग्यारह <i>gyārah</i>
२	2	दो <i>do</i>	१२	12	बारह <i>bārah</i>
३	3	तीन <i>tīn</i>	१३	13	तेरह <i>terah</i>
४	4	चार <i>cār</i>	१४	14	चौदह <i>caudah</i>
५	5	पाँच <i>pāc</i>	१५	15	पंद्रह <i>pandrah</i>
६	6	छह <i>chah</i>	१६	16	सोलह <i>solah</i>
७	7	सात <i>sāt</i>	१७	17	सत्रह <i>satrah</i>
८	8	आठ <i>āth</i>	१८	18	अठारह <i>aṭhārah</i>
९	9	नौ <i>nau</i>	१९	19	उन्नीस <i>unnīs</i>
१०	10	दस <i>das</i>	२०	20	बीस <i>bīs</i>

Bingo

If you have people you can practise with, have a game of bingo: everyone selects ten numbers of their choice (between 1 and 20) as shown below, then the caller calls out random numbers in Hindi between 1 and 20 until the winner declares a victory. No cheating!



Ordinal numbers: first, second, third

Ordinal numbers are made by adding *-vā* to the cardinal number, as in पाँचवाँ *pācivā* fifth; but 'first', 'second', 'third', 'fourth', sixth' and 'ninth' are irregular:

पहला <i>pahlā</i> first	छठा <i>chathā</i> sixth
दूसरा <i>dūsārā</i> second, other	सातवाँ <i>sātvā</i> seventh
तीसरा <i>tīsārā</i> third	आठवाँ <i>āthvā</i> eighth
चौथा <i>cauthā</i> fourth	नवाँ <i>navā</i> ninth
पाँचवाँ <i>pācivā</i> fifth	दसवाँ <i>dasvā</i> tenth

The ordinal numbers agree as adjectives: दसवाँ कमरा *dasvā kamrā* 'tenth room', दसवीं तस्वीर *dasvī tasvīr* 'tenth picture'.

Ordinal numbers quiz

Answer the questions about these five fine fellows:

गणेश Ganesh



सुरेश Suresh



महेश Mahesh



दिनेश Dinesh



राजेश Rajesh



- १ क्या पहला लड़का मोटा है ? *kyā pahlā laṛkā moṭā hai?*
- २ पहला लड़का कौन है ? *pahlā laṛkā kaun hai?*
- ३ क्या तीसरा लड़का खुश है ? *kyā tīsārā laṛkā khus hai?*
- ४ पाँचवाँ लड़का कौन है ? *pācivā laṛkā kaun hai?*

- ५ क्या चौथा लड़का पतला है ? *kyā cauthā laṛkā patlā hai?*
- ६ चौथा लड़का कौन है ? *cauthā laṛkā kaun hai?*
- ७ क्या दूसरा लड़का महेश है ? *kyā dūsārā laṛkā Maheś hai?*

3 Getting familiar

We've already seen that आप *āp* means 'you' and आप हैं *āp hai* means 'you are'. But in an informal context (talking to a friend, or with someone perceived by the speaker to be in some way close or socially 'junior') the pronoun तुम *tum* 'you' is used instead. तुम *tum* has its own verb form: तुम हो *tum ho* 'you are'.

तुम कौन हो ?
tum kaun ho? Who are you?

क्या तुम राम हो ?
kyā tum Rām ho? Are you Ram?

When addressing someone as तुम *tum*, the word for 'your' is तुम्हारा *tumhārā*. Remember that such words must agree with the person or thing 'possessed'.

तुम्हारा भाई
tumhārā bhāi your brother

तुम्हारी बहिन
tumhārī bahin your sister

The important point here is that तुम *tum* is much more familiar and informal than आप *āp*. Used in the wrong context, तुम *tum* and तुम्हारा *tumhārā* could sound presumptuous or offensive, so you have to tread carefully here.

Even greater familiarity is shown by yet another pronoun, तू *tū* 'you', whose verb is है *hai* (the same as for यह *yah* and वह *vah*): तू है *tū hai* 'you are'. This is very intimate and is restricted to the closest of relationships, such as with partners, small children — and God!

राजू, तू मेरी जान है !
Rājū, tū merī jān hai! Raju, you are my darling!

गीता, तू मेरी जान है !
Gītā, tū merī jān hai! Geeta, you are my darling!

We won't be seeing much of तू *tū* in this book. Its intimacy restricts its usage; and if you know a Hindi-speaker well enough to use it, he or she will happily teach you all you need to know! Used in the wrong context, it can be insultingly blunt. All its verb forms (except the commands — see 4.1) are the same as for यह *yah* and वह *vah*.

Here then is the full range of 'you' words, with their verbs:

आप हैं

āp haī you are (formal and polite)

तुम हो

tum ho you are (familiar and casual)

तू है

tū hai you are (intimate or blunt)

Grammatically, तू *tū* is singular, and both आप *āp* and तुम *tum* are plural — whether addressing one person or more than one.

Did you know?

English used to have a similar singular/plural distinction, but the singular pronouns 'thou (thou art), thee, thy, thine' have been dropped — which is why even a single person is now addressed by the plural 'you are', rather than 'you is'.

▶ How are you?

This is a good moment to introduce another new word, the very important कैसा *kaisā*, 'how?', as in 'how are you?'. (Later we'll see that it can also mean 'what kind of?')

राजू, आप कैसे हैं ?

Rājū, āp kaise haī? Raju, how are you?

गीता, आप कैसी हैं ?

Gītā, āp kaisī haī? Geeta, how are you?

आपका भाई कैसा है ?

āpkā bhāī kaisā hai? How is your brother?

आपकी बहिन कैसी है ?

āpkī bahin kaisī hai? How is your sister?

आपके माता-पिता कैसे हैं ?

āpke mātā-pitā kaise haī? How are your parents?

राम, तुम कैसे हो ?

Rām, tum kaise ho? Ram, how are you?

मीना, तुम कैसी हो ?

Mīnā, tum kaisī ho? Meena, how are you?

4 Getting formal

As we have seen in the आप-तुम-तू *āp-tum-tū* distinction, Hindi has a hierarchy of formality: calling someone आप *āp* shows respect, and sets them 'above' people referred to as तुम *tum*, who in turn have higher status than those addressed as तू *tū*.

You may be familiar with similar systems in languages like French, with its distinction between 'vous' and 'tu' in the second person ('you'). But in Hindi, the system extends to the third person: 'he/she' can be expressed with the plural pronouns ये *ye* and वे *ve* instead of यह *yah* and वह *vah*. In effect, it's like referring to an individual person as 'they' rather than as 'he' or 'she'. The bad news is that verbs and adjectives must be plural to match!

As there's no difference between this 'honorific' plural and a numerical plural, some statements could be ambiguous:

वे अच्छे आदमी हैं ।

ve acche ādmī haī. He is a good man. / They are good men.

मेरे भाई लंबे हैं ।

mere bhāī lambe haī. My brother is tall. / My brothers are tall.

But this ambiguity only occurs in the masculine. In the feminine, only *numerically* plural nouns show plural forms. Compare the following:

ये लंबी महिला कौन हैं ?

ye lambī mahilā kaun haī? Who is this tall lady?

(Here the pronoun ये *ye* and verb हैं *haī* are honorific plural, but the noun महिला *mahilā* stays singular.)

ये लंबी महिलाएँ कौन हैं ?

ye lambī mahilāē kaun haī? Who are these tall ladies?

(Here ये *ye*, महिलाएँ *mahilāē* and हैं *haī* are all plural.)

Raju ji, Geeta ji

Respect can also be shown by adding जी *ji* to a name — written as one word or two (गीताजी *Gītājī*, or गीता जी *Gītā ji*). It's used with first names of both genders, or with surnames for males; also with titles and relationship terms (e.g. पिता जी *pitā ji* 'father'). It's sometimes a bit like 'Mr' or 'Mrs', but manages to combine respect and warmth more successfully than these rather stuffy English equivalents.

ये सीता जी हैं ।

ye Sītā jī hai. This is Sita ji.

शर्मा जी अच्छे अध्यापक हैं ।

Śarmā jī acche adhyāpak hai. Sharma ji is a good teacher.

Used alone, जी *ji* can be used as a polite way of addressing someone: नमस्ते जी ! *namaste jī!* English has no single equivalent.

We and our

Finally: 'we' and 'us' is हम *ham*, and 'our, ours' is हमारा *hamārā*.

हम आपके पड़ोसी हैं ।

ham āpke paṛosī hai. We're your neighbours.

मोती हमारा कुत्ता है ।

Motī hamārā kuttā hai. Moti is our dog.

मोती हमारा है ।

Motī hamārā hai. Moti is ours.

▶ Javed asks Raju about his family

जावेद राजू जी, मनोज कौन है ?

राजू मनोज हमारा बड़ा बेटा है ।

जावेद अच्छा । मीना और राम कौन हैं ?

राजू मीना हमारी बेटी है और राम हमारा दूसरा बेटा है ।

जावेद और गीता जी आपकी पत्नी हैं ?

राजू जी हाँ, गीता मेरी पत्नी है ।

जावेद क्या आपके भाई डाक्टर हैं ?

राजू जी नहीं । वे अध्यापक हैं ।

जावेद वे कैसे अध्यापक हैं ?

राजू वे बहुत अच्छे अध्यापक हैं ।

Jāved Rājū jī, Manoj kaun hai?

Rājū Manoj hamārā barā beṭā hai.

Jāved acchā. Mīnā aur Rām kaun hai?

Rājū Mīnā hamārī beṭī hai aur Rām hamārā dūsrā beṭā hai.

Jāved aur Gītā jī āpki patnī hai?

Rājū jī hā, Gītā merī patnī hai.

Jāved kyā āpke bhāī ḍāktar hai?

Rājū jī nahī. ve adhyāpak hai.

Jāved ve kaise adhyāpak hai?

Rājū ve bahut acche adhyāpak hai.

Javed Raju ji, who is Manoj?

Raju Manoj is our elder ('big') son.

Javed Right. Who are Meena and Ram?

Raju Meena is our daughter and Ram is our second son.

Javed And Geeta ji is your wife?

Raju Yes, Geeta is my wife.

Javed Is your brother a doctor?

Raju No, he's a teacher.

Javed What kind of teacher is he? [i.e. 'is he good?']

Raju He's a very good teacher.

Exercise 2a Translate these sentences into Hindi.

(NB: 'There are' is हैं *hai*; 'only' is सिर्फ *sirf*.)

- 1 My name is Manoj. Raju and Geeta Sharma are my parents.
- 2 Meena is my little sister and Ram is my little brother.
- 3 Moti is our dog. He's very cute.
- 4 This is Meena. She is OK. She is little.
- 5 Our house isn't very big. There are only five rooms.
- 6 That boy is my friend; his name is Pratap [प्रताप *Pratāp*].
- 7 Javed sahab is our neighbour. [Use honorific plural.]

Exercise 2b Here are some sentences with singular subjects. Make them all numerically plural. (Make sure that all verbs, pronouns and adjectives agree!)

- ८ यह लड़का बहुत प्यारा है। *yah laṛkā bahut pyārā hai.*
 ९ यह कुत्ता हमारा नहीं है। *yah kuttā hamārā nahī hai.*
 १० वह लड़का कौन है? *vah laṛkā kaun hai?*
 ११ यह आदमी कौन है? *yah ādmī kaun hai?*
 १२ मेरा दोस्त पंजाबी है। *merā dost panjābī hai.*
 १३ क्या यह कुत्ता आपका है? *kyā yah kuttā āpkā hai?*
 १४ वह औरत कौन है? *vah aurat kaun hai?*
 १५ हमारा बेटा अच्छा लड़का है। *hamārā beṭā acchā laṛkā hai.*
 १६ मेरी बेटी बीमार है। *merī beṭī bimār hai.*
 १७ क्या यह किताब महँगी है? *kyā yah kitāb mahāgi hai?*
 १८ यह मेज़ गंदी है। *yah mez gandī hai.*

Exercise 2c Change the sentences from आप *āp* to तुम *tum*, or vice versa, making sure that all the verb agreements (तुम हो *tum ho*, आप हैं *āp hai* etc.) work properly.

- १९ तुम कौन हो? *tum kaun ho?*
 २० तुम्हारा नाम क्या है? *tumhārā nām kyā hai?*
 २१ तुम्हारे माता-पिता बहुत अच्छे लोग हैं। *tumhāre mātā-pitā bahut acche log hai.*
 २२ तुम्हारा भाई सुंदर नहीं है। *tumhārā bhāī sundar nahī hai.*
 २३ तुम दोनों लड़के लंबे हो। *tum donō laṛke lambe ho.*
 २४ तुम कैसे हो? *tum kaise ho?*
 २५ आपका नाम क्या है? *āpkā nām kyā hai?*
 २६ क्या आप ठीक हैं? *kyā āp ṭhik hai?*
 २७ आप नाराज़ नहीं हैं? *āp nārāz nahī hai?*
 २८ आप कैसी हैं? *āp kaisī hai?*

Finally, go through all the sentences in sentences 1–28, underlining the subject of the verb; and make sure you can understand why each verb is singular or plural.

Glossary

(NB: Cardinal numbers up to 10 (and ordinals up to 'sixth') are included here. Higher cardinal numbers are given in Unit 12.6.)

- अच्छा *acchā* good, nice
 अलमारी *almārī* f. cupboard
 आठ *āṭh* eight
 आशा *āsā* f. hope
 औरत *aurat* f. woman
 कमरा *kamrā* m. room
 काफ़ी *kāfī* quite, very; enough
 काम *kām* m. work; job, task
 कैसा *kaisā* how?
 ख़ाली *khālī* empty, free, vacant
 गंदा *gandā* dirty
 चाचा *cācā* m. uncle (father's younger brother)
 चार *cār* four
 चौथा *cauthā* fourth
 छठा *chathā* sixth
 छह *chah* six
 छोटा *choṭā* small
 ज़रूर *zarūr* of course
 जान *jān* f. life, soul
 ज़िंदा *zindā* (invariable -ā ending) alive
 जी *jī* word of respect used after names etc. and as a short form of जी हौं *jī hā* 'yes'
 तस्वीर *tasvīr* f. picture
 तीन *tīn* three
 तीसरा *tīsra* third
 तुम *tum* you (familiar)
 तुम्हारा *tumhārā* your, yours
 तू *tū* you (intimate)
 दस *das* ten
 दूसरा *dūsra* second; other

- दो *do* two
 नेता *netā* m. leader, politician
 नौ *nau* nine
 पड़ोसी *paṛosī* m., पड़ोसिन *paṛosin* f. neighbour
 पतला *patlā* thin
 पत्नी *patnī* f. wife
 पहला *pahlā* first
 पाँच *pāc* five; पाँचवाँ *pācvā* fifth
 पिता *pitā* m. father
 प्यारा *pyārā* dear, sweet, cute
 बड़ा *barā* big
 बहिन *bahin* f. sister
 बहुत *bahut* very
 बेटी *beṭī* f. daughter
 महँगा *mahāgā* expensive
 महिला *mahilā* f. lady
 माता *mātā* f. mother
 माता-पिता *mātā-pitā* m. pl. parents
 मोटा *moṭā* fat
 राजा *rājā* m. king, raja
 लंबा *lambā* tall
 शक्ति *śakti* f. power
 सात *sāt* seven
 साफ़ *sāf* clean, clear
 साहब *sāhab* sahib
 सिर्फ़ *sirf* only
 सुंदर *sundar* beautiful, handsome
 हम *ham* we, us
 हमारा *hamārā* our, ours
 हो *ho* are (with तुम *tum*)

1 Some more questions

You'll have noticed that question-words in Hindi begin with a 'k' — क्या *kyā*, कौन *kaun* etc. A further selection of such words will give us much more to talk about. We've already met कैसा *kaisā*, used in asking 'how' someone is; but it also means 'what kind of ?' And कितना *kitnā* means 'how much?'

कैसा मकान ?

kaisā makān? what kind of house?

यह कैसा मकान है ?

yah kaisā makān hai? What kind of house is this?

कितना पानी ?

kitnā pānī? how much water?

कितना पानी है ?

kitnā pānī hai? How much water is there?

Both कैसा *kaisā* and कितना *kitnā* inflect (OK, change their endings!) like adjectives: कैसा-कैसे-कैसी *kaisā-kaise-kaisī*, कितना-कितने-कितनी *kitnā-kitne-kitnī*.

यह कैसा कमरा है ?

yah kaisā kamrā hai? What kind of room is this?

यह कैसी किताब है ?

ye kaisī kitāb hai? What kind of book is this?

ये कैसे कमरे हैं ?

ye kaise kamre hāi? What kind of rooms are these?

कितने कमरे हैं ?

kitne kamre hāi? How many rooms are there?

कितनी दुकानें हैं ?

kitnī dukānē hāi? How many shops are there?

कितना पैसा है ?

kitnā paisā hai? How much money is there?

कितने लोग हैं ?

kitne log hāi? How many people are there?

कितना समय है ?

kitnā samay hai? How much time is there?

In this unit you will learn

- to say where people and things are
- to describe things
- to talk about ownership

Language points

- postpositions and case
- word order

कमरे में

kamre

in the room

03

What's this like?

When कैसा *kaisā* comes after the noun, it means 'what is something like?' Remember that it's also the usual way of asking about someone's health — such a commonly used expression that we'll look at some more examples:

यह कमरा कैसा है ?

yah kamrā kaisā hai? What's this room like?

मनोज कैसा है ?

Manoj kaisā hai? How is Manoj?

माता जी कैसी हैं ?

mātā jī kaisī hai? How is Mother?

राम, तुम कैसे हो ?

Rām, tum kaise ho? Ram, how are you?

शर्मा जी, आप कैसे हैं ?

Śarmā jī, āp kaise hai? Sharma ji, how are you?

गीता जी, आप कैसी हैं ?

Gitā jī, āp kaisī hai? Geeta ji, how are you?

Some questions for you

Answer the questions about the picture, using words from the list:

बूढ़ा *būrhā*

elderly

पुराना *purānā*

old (of things)

कुल मिलाकर

kul milākar

in total

चूहा *cūhā* m.

mouse, rat

तोता *totā* m.

parrot



१ कितने आदमी हैं ? *kitne ādmī hai?*

२ यह कैसा आदमी है ? *yah kaisā ādmī hai?*

३ मेज़ कैसी है ? *mez kaisī hai?*

४ कितनी लड़कियाँ हैं ? *kitnī laṛkiyā̃ hai?*

५ कुल मिलाकर कितने लोग हैं ? *kul milākar kitne log hai?*

६ क्या दोनों लड़कियाँ लंबी हैं ? *kyā donō laṛkiyā̃ lambī hai?*

७ कितने चूहे हैं ? *kitne cūhe hai?*

८ कितनी कुरसियाँ हैं ? *kitnī kursiyā̃ hai?*

९ क्या चूहे बहुत बड़े हैं ? *kyā cūhe bahut bade hai?*

१० कितने तोते हैं ? *kitne tote hai?*

2 Where? On the table

The word कहाँ *kahā* means 'where?' In order to say *where* something is, we need the words for 'on, in' and so on. Here's a little list:

पर	<i>par</i>	on, at
में	<i>mē</i>	in
से	<i>se</i>	from, with, by
तक	<i>tak</i>	up to, until
को	<i>ko</i>	to (and other meanings)

And here are some phrases:

मेज़ पर	<i>mez par</i>	on the table
कुरसी पर	<i>kursī par</i>	on the chair
घर पर	<i>ghar par</i>	at home
घर में	<i>ghar mē</i>	in the house
दिल्ली में	<i>dillī mē</i>	in Delhi
भारत में	<i>bhārat mē</i>	in India
आज तक	<i>āj tak</i>	until today

As you can see, the words पर *par*, में *mē* etc. come after the noun. Because of this they're called *postpositions* rather than *prepositions*.

▶ Practise what you've learnt

Answer these questions, using the postposition में *mē* 'in'.

दिल्ली कहाँ है ? *dillī kahā hai?*

काठमांडु कहाँ है ? *kāthmāṇḍu kahā hai?*

कराची कहाँ है ? *karācī kahā hai?*

मुम्बई कहाँ है ? *mumbaī kahā hai?*

लंदन कहाँ है ? *landan kahā hai?*

आप कहाँ हैं ? *āp kahā hai?*

Your answers should be दिल्ली भारत में है *dillī bhārat mē hai* etc.; and my answer to the last one is मैं लंदन में हूँ *māi landan mē hū̃*.

At home, at school, at work

पर *par* usually means 'on', but it means 'at' in phrases like घर पर *ghar par* 'at home'.

आज मनोज घर पर नहीं है ।

āj Manoj ghar par nahī hai. Manoj isn't at home today.

राम स्कूल पर नहीं है ।

Rām skūl par nahī hai. Ram isn't at school.

मेरे दोस्त काम पर हैं ।

mere dost kām par hai. My friends are at work.

शर्मा जी काम पर हैं ।

Śarmā jī kām par hai. Sharma ji is at work.

Word order

Look very closely at the difference between these two sentences:

मेज़ पर पंखा है ।

mez par pankhā hai. There's a fan on the table.

पंखा मेज़ पर है ।

pankhā mez par hai. The fan is on the table.

You'll see that the main piece of new information comes *just before the verb*. Another way of looking at these sentences is to see them as the answers to particular questions, with the new information simply slotting into the space that had been occupied by the question word:

मेज़ पर क्या है ?

mez par kyā hai? What is on the table?

मेज़ पर पंखा है ।

mez par pankhā hai. There's a fan on the table.

पंखा कहाँ है ?

pankhā kahā hai? Where is the fan?

पंखा मेज़ पर है ।

pankhā mez par hai. The fan is on the table.

Where's the cat?

Answer the questions about the picture:

१ बिल्ली कहाँ है ? *billī kahā hai?*

२ कुत्ता कहाँ है ? *kuttā kahā hai?*

३ तस्वीर में कितनी कुरसियाँ हैं ? *tasvīr mē kitnī kursiyā hai?*

४ तस्वीर में कितनी बिल्लियाँ हैं ? *tasvīr mē kitnī billiyā hai?*

५ छोटी कुरसी पर क्या है ? *choṭī kursī par kyā hai?*

६ बड़ी कुरसी पर क्या है ? *baṛī kursī par kyā hai?*

७ मेज़ पर क्या है ? *mez par kyā hai?*

८ क्या कुत्ता और बिल्ली प्यारे हैं ? *kyā kuttā aur billī pyāre hai?*



▶ Do you have...

One postposition that you'll often need is के पास *ke pās*. We'll meet it more fully later, but we need it *now*. Its first meaning is 'near':

हमारी दुकान स्टेशन के पास है ।

hamārī dukān ṣṭeśān ke pās hai. Our shop is near the station.

But के पास *ke pās* can also indicate *ownership* of goods and chattel (or even time) — it's used in the meaning of 'to have':

मनोज के पास नया रेडियो है ।

Manoj ke pās nayā reḍiyo hai. Manoj has a new radio.

राम के पास कई नई किताबें हैं ।

Rām ke pās kai nāi kitābē hēi. Ram has several new books.

मीना के पास कुछ नए कपड़े हैं ।

Mīnā ke pās kuch nae kapṛe hēi. Meena has some new clothes.

राजू के पास कम्प्यूटर नहीं है ।

Rājū ke pās kampyūṭar nahī hai. Raju doesn't have a computer.

पिताजी के पास समय नहीं है ।

pitājī ke pās samay nahī hai. Father doesn't have time.

आपके पास कितना पैसा है ?

āpke pās kitnā paisā hai? How much money do you have?

When के पास *ke pās* is used with मेरे *mere*, तुम्हारे *tumhāre* or हमारे *hamāre*, the के *ke* is dropped:

मेरे पास समय नहीं है ।

mere pās samay nahī hai. I don't have time.

तुम्हारे पास क्या है ?

tumhāre pās kyā hai? What have you got?

हमारे पास कुछ नहीं है ।

hamāre pās kuch nahī hai. We have nothing.

Although के पास *ke pās* is used widely for a variety of possessions it's not usually used with relatives ('I have a son' etc.); we'll come to a way of saying this in Unit 6.1. Meanwhile, a spirit of idle curiosity makes me ask *you* some questions:

क्या आप के पास ... *kyā āp ke pās...*

... साइकिल है ? *sākil hai?*

... बहुत पैसे हैं ? *bahut paise hai?*

... नया रेडियो है ? *nayā reḍiyo hai?*

... नए हिन्दुस्तानी कपड़े हैं ? *nae hindustānī kapṛe hai?*

... नई गाड़ी है ? *nāi gārī hai?*

3 Case

In the English phrase 'he speaks to him', the two pronouns can't be exchanged: 'him speaks to he' isn't impressive English! This is an example of a difference of 'case' — a system that shows how words relate to each other in a sentence. Stand by for a really important piece of grammar here.

Hindi has two main cases — the 'oblique', always used before postpositions, and the 'direct', used elsewhere.

In the following sentences, the underlined words are postpositions, and the **bold** words are oblique, because they're followed by those postpositions.

हम लोग **घर** में हैं ।

*ham log **ghar** mē hai.* We ['we people'] are in the house.

दिल्ली **भारत** में हैं ।

*dillī **bhārat** mē hai.* Delhi is in India.

क्या आप **लंदन** से हैं ?

*kyā āp **landan** se hai?* Are you from London?

शर्माजी **दुकान** पर हैं ।

*Śarmājī **dukān** par hai.* Sharma ji is at the shop.

In the first example, में *mē* 'in' affects only घर *ghar* 'house', giving the sense 'in the house' — it doesn't affect हम लोग *ham log* 'we' because this is the subject, and not part of the location. The same principle applies with the other examples.

Why say that these words are oblique, when they haven't changed their form at all? Because in the singular, only *some* nouns change in the oblique. Masculine -ā endings are the culprits here: they change to -e, as shown in the following list.

कमरा	<i>kamrā</i>	room
कमरे में	<i>kamre mē</i>	in the room
लड़का	<i>laṛkā</i>	boy
लड़के से	<i>laṛke se</i>	by the boy
आगरा	<i>āgrā</i>	Agra
आगरे तक	<i>āgre tak</i>	as far as Agra

Masculine -ā adjectives describing oblique nouns change similarly:

छोटा कमरा	<i>choṭā kamrā</i>	small room
छोटे कमरे में	<i>choṭe kamre mē</i>	in a/the small room
मोटा लड़का	<i>moṭā laṛkā</i>	fat boy
मोटे लड़के से	<i>moṭe laṛke se</i>	by the fat boy
मेरा बगीचा	<i>merā bagīcā</i>	my garden
मेरे बगीचे में	<i>mere bagīce mē</i>	in my garden

An -ā adjective changes like this with *all* types of masculine noun. So although घर *ghar* 'house' does not end in -ā and therefore cannot change visibly in the oblique, -ā adjectives qualifying it must change all the same:

बड़े घर में	<i>baṛe ghar mē</i>	in the big house
छोटे मकान में	<i>choṭe makān mē</i>	in the little house

Feminine nouns and adjectives are easier to deal with — they don't change at all in the oblique singular:

छोटी मेज़ पर	<i>choṭī mez par</i>	on the little table
मेरी बहिन को	<i>merī bahin ko</i>	to my sister

Plural nouns in the oblique case

In the oblique plural, all nouns take the ending -ō as shown:

मेज़	<i>mez</i>	table
मेज़ों पर	<i>mezō par</i>	on tables
कमरा	<i>kamrā</i>	room
कमरों में	<i>kamrō mē</i>	in rooms

लड़का	<i>laṛkā</i>	boy
लड़कों को	<i>laṛkō ko</i>	to boys
कुत्ता	<i>kuttā</i>	dog
कुत्तों को	<i>kuttō ko</i>	to dogs

... and masculine -ā adjectives keep their *usual* oblique -e ending:

कमरा	<i>kamrā</i>	room
छोटे कमरों में	<i>choṭe kamrō mē</i>	in small rooms
लड़का	<i>laṛkā</i>	boy
बड़े लड़कों को	<i>baṛe laṛkō ko</i>	to big boys
हमारा कुत्ता	<i>hamārā kuttā</i>	our dog
हमारे कुत्तों को	<i>hamāre kuttō ko</i>	to our dogs

Nouns of either gender that end in -ī change this to *iy* before adding the -ō ending. So they end -iyō.

आदमी	<i>ādmī</i>	man
आदमियों से	<i>ādmīyō se</i>	from men
लड़की	<i>laṛkī</i>	girl
लड़कियों से	<i>laṛkiyō</i>	from girls

Well, after all that grammar you probably feel the need to sit or even lie down for a bit, so...

Sitting and lying

'Sitting' is बैठा *baiṭhā* and 'standing' is खड़ा *kharā*; 'lying' is पड़ा *parā* for an inanimate object (e.g. a book lying on the table), but लेटा *leṭā* for a person who is 'lying down'. These words need to agree with their nouns, like adjectives:

मनोज कमरे में बैठा है ।	<i>Manoj kamre mē baiṭhā hai.</i>	Manoj is sitting in the room.
गीता बगीचे में खड़ी है ।	<i>Gītā bagīce mē kharī hai.</i>	Geeta is standing in the garden.
आपके कपड़े करसी पर पड़े हैं ।		

दोनों लड़कियाँ फर्श पर लेटी हैं।

donō laṛkiyā fars̄ par leṭī haī. The two girls are lying on the floor.

House for rent

A Hindi-speaking friend has seen an advertisement in an English newspaper and needs your help in understanding it. Read the advertisement and then answer her questions.



**New house for rent in
Agra. 2 large & 2 small
rooms, all well ventilated
(windows in all rooms,
ceiling fans in large
rooms). Small garden with
trees. Rent Rs. 5000.**

- १ घर कहाँ है ?
ghar kahā hai?
- २ क्या वह बहुत पुराना है ?
kyā vah bahut purānā hai?
- ३ कितने कमरे हैं ?
kitne kamre haī?
- ४ क्या सब कमरों में खिड़कियाँ हैं ?
kyā sab kamrō mẽ khirkiyā haī?
- ५ क्या पंखे भी हैं ?
kyā pankhe bhī haī?
- ६ बाहर क्या है ?
bāhar kyā hai?
- ७ क्या दुकानें दूर हैं ?
kyā dukānē dūr haī?
- ८ किराया कितना है ?
kirāyā kitnā hai?

Geeta's story

Geeta is telling us about her husband and her home.

मेरा नाम गीता है - श्रीमती गीता शर्मा। मैं वाराणसी से हूँ। मेरे पति श्री राजकुमार शर्मा हैं। वे दिल्ली से हैं। राजू अध्यापक हैं। यह हमारा घर है। हमारा घर आगरे में है। घर में एक बड़ा कमरा और चार छोटे कमरे हैं। यह हमारा बड़ा कमरा है। कमरे में एक बड़ी मेज़ है। मेज़ पर मेरा कम्प्यूटर है। एक पंखा भी है। फ़र्श पर कुछ किताबें पड़ी हैं। बगीचे में दो-तीन लंबे पेड़ हैं।

merā nām Gītā hai - śrīmatī Gītā Śarmā. maī vārāṇasī se hū. mere pati śrī Rāj Kumār Śarmā haī. ve dilli se haī. Rājū adhyāpak haī. yah hamārā ghar hai. hamārā ghar āgre mẽ hai. ghar mẽ ek baṛā kamrā aur cār choṭe kamre haī. yah hamārā baṛā kamrā hai. kamre mẽ ek baṛī mez hai. mez par merā kampyūṭar hai. ek pankhā bhī hai. fars̄ par kuch kitābē paṛī haī. bagīche mẽ do-tīn lambe peṛ haī.

My name is Geeta — Mrs Geeta Sharma. I'm from Varanasi. My husband is Mr Rajkumar Sharma. He's from Delhi. Raju is a teacher. This is our house. Our house is in Agra. In the house there's one big room and four small rooms. This is our big room. In the room there's one big table. On the table is my computer. There's a fan too. Some books are lying on the floor. In the garden there are two or three tall trees.

Two tasks for you

Underline all the words in the oblique case in Geeta's statement, then answer these questions:

- १ गीता कहाँ से है ? *Gītā kahā se hai?*
- २ क्या गीता शादी-शुदा है ? *kyā Gītā śādī-śudā hai?*
- ३ क्या राजू दिल्ली से है ? *kyā Rājū dilli se hai?*
- ४ क्या राजू डाक्टर है ? *kyā Rājū dākṭar hai?*
- ५ क्या यह घर दिल्ली में है ? *kyā yah ghar dilli mẽ hai?*
- ६ घर में कितने कमरे हैं ? *ghar mẽ kitne kamre haī?*
- ७ बड़े कमरे में क्या है ? *baṛe kamre mẽ kyā hai?*

- ८ कम्प्यूटर कहाँ है ? *kampyūtar kahā hai?*
 ९ किताबें कहाँ हैं ? *kitābē kahā hai?*
 १० बगीचे में क्या है ? *bagīce mē kyā hai?*

A word that hates to be misplaced

The little word भी *bhī* 'also, too' is simple enough in itself, but it's incredibly fussy about where it goes in the sentence — it insists on following the word it emphasizes. Look closely at the difference between these two statements, both of which could be translated as 'this cloth is cheap too', leaving the emphasis ambiguous in English:

यह कपड़ा भी सस्ता है ।

yah kapṛā bhī sastā hai. This cloth too is cheap [i.e. as well as the other cloth we were just looking at].

यह कपड़ा सस्ता भी है ।

yah kapṛā sastā bhī hai. This cloth is cheap too [i.e. in addition to its other advantages — colour, texture, or whatever].

► At school

- अध्यापक राम, तुम्हारी किताबें कहाँ हैं ?
 राम जी, मेरी किताबें यहाँ मेज़ पर पड़ी हैं ।
 अध्यापक तुम्हारी कुरसी पर क्या पड़ा है ?
 राम जी, मेरी कुरसी पर मेरे क़लम हैं ।
 अध्यापक तुम्हारे हाथों में क्या है ?
 राम मेरे हाथों में कुछ नहीं है ।
 अध्यापक आज तुम्हारी बहिन मीना कहाँ है ?
 राम जी, वह घर पर है । वह बीमार है ।

- adhyāpak** *Rām, tumhārī kitābē kahā hai?*
Rām *jī, merī kitābē yahā mez par paṛī hai.*
adhyāpak *tumhārī kursī par kyā paṛā hai?*
Rām *jī, merī kursī par mere qalam hai.*
adhyāpak *tumhāre hāthō mē kyā hai?*
Rām *mere hāthō mē kuch nahī hai.*

adhyāpak
Rām

- āj tumhārī bahin Mīnā kahā hai?*
jī, vah ghar par hai. vah bīmār hai.
 Teacher Ram, where are your books?
 Ram Sir, my books are lying here on the table.
 Teacher What's lying on your chair?
 Ram Sir, my pens are on my chair.
 Teacher What's in your hands?
 Ram There's nothing in my hands.
 Teacher Where is your sister Meena today?
 Ram Sir, she's at home. She's unwell.

► At home

- राजू गीता, मनोज कहाँ है ?
 गीता वह स्कूल पर है ।
 राजू और राम कहाँ है ?
 गीता वह भी स्कूल पर है ।
 राजू अच्छा ! और मीना ?
 गीता मीना बगीचे में बैठी है ।
 राजू मेरा भाई कहाँ है ?
 गीता मालूम नहीं !
Rājū *Gītā, Manoj kahā hai?*
Gītā *vah skūl par hai.*
Rājū *aur Rām kahā hai?*
Gītā *vah bhī skūl par hai.*
Rājū *acchā! aur Mīnā?*
Gītā *Mīnā bagīce mē baiṭhī hai.*
Rājū *merā bhāī kahā hai?*
Gītā *mālūm nahī!*

- Raju** Geeta, where's Manoj?
Geeta He's at school.
Raju And where's Ram?
Geeta He's at school too.
Raju I see! And Meena?

Geeta Meena's sitting in the garden.
Raju Where's my brother?
Geeta Don't know!

Exercise 3a Translate into Hindi:

- 1 My books are lying on the table.
- 2 Your brother is sitting in the garden.
- 3 I am standing in the big room.
- 4 Your books are in the little cupboard.
- 5 His house is not far from here.
- 6 How many people are there in your family?
- 7 How much money does your husband have?
- 8 How is your wife today? And how are you?
- 9 The children aren't at home, they're at school.
- 10 Is this little girl your sister?

Exercise 3b Role play. You are Geeta Sharma (a doctor, remember), at home in Agra with your husband and children; they're in the garden and your husband's indoors. Answer these questions for a local government survey. (Say 'no' to 19, 'yes' to 23.)

- ११ आपका पूरा नाम क्या है ?
āpkā pūrā nām kyā hai?
- १२ क्या आप डाक्टर हैं ?
kyā āp dākṭar hai?
- १३ क्या आपके पति भी डाक्टर हैं ?
kyā āpke pati bhī dākṭar hai?
- १४ क्या आपके पति घर पर हैं ?
kyā āpke pati ghar par hai?
- १५ क्या आप लोग दिल्ली से हैं ?
kyā āp log dillī se hai?
- १६ आपके मकान में कितने कमरे हैं ?
āpke makān mẽ kitne kamre hai?
- १७ आपके परिवार में कितने बच्चे हैं ?
āpke parivār mẽ kitne bacce hai?

- १८ क्या आपका छोटा लड़का आज स्कूल पर है ?
kyā āpkā choṭā larḳā āj skūl par hai?
- १९ क्या उसका स्कूल यहाँ से दूर है ?
kyā uskā skūl yahā se dūr hai?
- २० आपके दूसरे बच्चे कहाँ हैं ?
āpke dūsre bacce kahā hai?
- २१ क्या वह कुत्ता भी आपका है ?
kyā vah kuttā bhī āpkā hai?
- २२ बहुत प्यारा है ! उसका नाम क्या है ?
bahut pyārā hai! uskā nām kyā hai?
- २३ क्या आपके पास गाड़ी है ?
kyā āpke pās gārī hai?
- २४ क्या आपके पास कम्प्यूटर है ?
kyā āpke pās kampyūtar hai?

धन्यवाद ! बहुत धन्यवाद ! *dhanyavād! bahut dhanyavād!*

Glossary

अस्पताल <i>aspatāl</i> m. hospital	के पास <i>ke pās</i> near; in the possession of
आज <i>āj</i> today; आजकल <i>ājkal</i> nowadays, these days	को <i>ko</i> to
कई <i>kaī</i> several	खड़ा <i>kharā</i> standing
कपड़ा <i>kapṛā</i> m. cloth, garment	खिड़की <i>khirkī</i> f. window
कम्प्यूटर <i>kampyūtar</i> m. computer	गाड़ी <i>gārī</i> f. car; train, vehicle
कराची <i>karācī</i> f. Karachi	घर <i>ghar</i> m. house, home
काठमांडु <i>kāṭhmāṇḍu</i> m. Kathmandu	चूहा <i>cūhā</i> m. mouse, rat
कहाँ <i>kahā</i> where?	छुट्टी <i>chuttī</i> f. holiday; free time, time off
कितना <i>kitnā</i> how much/many?	तक <i>tak</i> up to, until, as far as
किराया <i>kirāyā</i> m. rent; fare	तोता <i>totā</i> m. parrot
कुछ <i>kuch</i> some; something; कुछ और <i>kuch aur</i> some more;	दफ्तर <i>daftar</i> m. office
कुछ नहीं <i>kuch nahī</i> nothing	दिल्ली <i>dillī</i> f. Delhi
कुल मिलाकर <i>kul milākar</i> in total, all together	दुकान <i>dukān</i> f. shop
	दूर <i>dūr</i> far, distant
	धन्यवाद <i>dhanyavād</i> thank you

नया *nayā* (f. नई *nai*; m. pl. नए *nae*) new
 नेपाल *nepāl* m. Nepal
 पंखा *pankhā* m. fan
 पड़ा *parā* lying
 पति *pati* m. husband
 पर *par* on (and 'at' in 'at home' etc.)
 परिवार *parivār* m. family
 पाकिस्तान *pākistān* m. Pakistan
 पानी *pānī* m. water
 पास *pās*, पास में *pās mẽ* nearby
 पुराना *purānā* old (only for inanimates)
 पेड़ *peṛ* m. tree
 पैसा *paisā* m. money
 फर्श *farś* m. floor
 फूल *phūl* m. flower
 बगीचा *bagicā* m. garden
 बाहर *bāhar* outside
 बूढ़ा *būṛhā* elderly, old (only for animates)
 बैठा *baithā* seated, sitting
 भारत *bhārat* m. India

भी *bhī* also; even
 मालूम नहीं *mālūm nahī* [I] don't know
 मुंबई *mumbai* f. Mumbai, Bombay
 में *mẽ* in
 यहाँ *yahā* here
 या *yā* or
 लन्दन *landan* m. London
 लेटा *leṭā* lying, lying down
 रास्ता *rāstā* m. road
 वहाँ *vahā* there
 वाराणसी *vārāṇasī* f. Varanasi, Banaras
 श्री *śrī* Mr; श्रीमती *śrīmatī* Mrs
 सब *sab* all
 समय *samay* m. time
 सस्ता *sastā* cheap
 साइकिल *sāikil* f. bicycle
 से *se* from
 सोमवार *somvār* m. Monday
 स्कूल *skūl* m. school
 हजार *hazār* m. thousand
 हाथ *hāth* m. hand

04

चाय पीजिए
cāy
 have some tea

pijie

In this unit you will learn

- how to make requests and give commands
- how to describe everyday events and habits

Language points

- imperative verbs
- imperfective present tense

1 Giving orders and making requests

Giving orders and making requests is easy in Hindi: but what you say depends on whom you're speaking to, because the imperative (command-giving) verb has different forms for तू *tū*, तुम *tum* and आप *āp* people. We're going to concentrate on the तू *tū* and आप *āp* forms here. First, we have to define a couple of terms.

Dictionaries list verbs in their 'infinitive' form: बैठना *baiṭhnā* 'to sit'. Take away the -ना *-nā* ending and you are left with बैठ *baiṭh*, which is the basic building-block of the verb; it's called the 'verb stem'. Remember these terms, because we'll be using them quite often.

For commands to someone you call तुम *tum*, just add -o to the stem: बैठो *baiṭho* 'sit', etc.

For commands to someone you call आप *āp*, add -ie to the stem: बैठिए *baiṭhie* 'speak', etc. Because this is inherently polite, it more or less implies the sense 'please'.

As in English, the pronoun is optional: you can say either तुम बैठो *tum baiṭho* 'you sit', or just बैठो *baiṭho* 'sit'.

Spend some time getting to know these very common commands:

INFINITIVE	तुम <i>tum</i>	आप <i>āp</i>
बैठना <i>baiṭhnā</i> to sit	बैठो <i>baiṭho</i> sit	बैठिए <i>baiṭhie</i> please sit
बोलना <i>bolnā</i> to speak	बोलो <i>bolo</i> speak	बोलिए <i>bolie</i> please speak
जाना <i>jānā</i> to go	जाओ <i>jāo</i> go	जाइए <i>jāie</i> please go
आना <i>ānā</i> to come	आओ <i>āo</i> come	आइए <i>āie</i> please come
कहना <i>kahnā</i> to say	कहो <i>kaho</i> say	कहिए <i>kahie</i> please say
खाना <i>khānā</i> to eat	खाओ <i>khāo</i> eat	खाइए <i>khāie</i> please eat

Four of the commonest verbs are irregular (wouldn't you just know it?):

करना <i>karnā</i> to do	करो <i>karo</i> do	कीजिए <i>kijie</i> please do
देना <i>denā</i> to give	दो <i>do</i> give	दीजिए <i>dijie</i> please give
लेना <i>lenā</i> to take	लो <i>lo</i> take	लीजिए <i>lijie</i> please take
पीना <i>pīnā</i> to drink	पियो <i>piyo</i> drink	पीजिए <i>pījie</i> please drink

Commands to someone you call तू *tū* just use the verb stem — बैठ *baiṭh*, बोल *bol*, जा *jā*, आ *ā*, कह *kah*, खा *khā*, कर *kar*, दे *de*, ले *le*, पी *pī*. As their shortness suggests, these तू *tū* commands are very blunt (or, if you prefer, sharp!) — 'Speak!' 'Sit!'; used out of context, they could easily give offence. Care needed here!

Commands are made negative by न *na* or मत *mat* 'don't'. The latter is blunter.

यहाँ न बैठिए ।

yahā na baiṭhie. Please don't sit here.

कुछ मत बोलो !

kuch mat bolo! Don't say anything!

▶ Practise what you've learnt

Here are some आप *āp* commands for you to change into तुम *tum* commands. You'll find the new verbs in the glossary.

- मत जाइए ! आइए, बैठिए । *mat jāie! āie, baiṭhie*.
- बताइए, आप कैसे हैं ? *batāie, āp kaise hai?*
- समोसा खाइए, पानी पीजिए । *samosā khāie, pānī pījie*.
- यह दूसरा समोसा भी लीजिए । *yah dūsrā samosā bhī lijie*.
- मोती को समोसा न दीजिए । *Motī ko samosā na dijie*.
- और खाइए ! *aur khāie!* ['Have some more!']
- खाली प्लेट मेज़ पर रखिए । *khālī pleṭ mez par rakhie*.
- अरे ! सिग्रेट न पीजिए ! *are! sigreṭ na pījie!*
- और चाय लीजिए । *aur cāy lijie*. ['Have some more tea.']

The infinitive as a command

The infinitive too can be used as a command: हिन्दी में बोलना ! *hindī mē bolnā!* 'Speak in Hindi!'. Such commands are often meant to be obeyed at some time in the future, or generally at all times, rather than immediately.

झूठ मत बोलना ।

jhūṭh mat bolnā. Don't tell lies.

घर में सिग्रेट न पीना ।

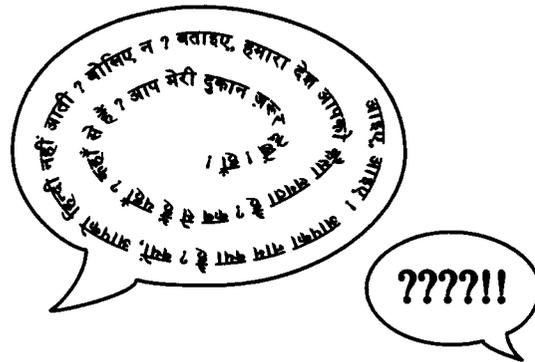
ghar mē sigreṭ na pinā. Don't smoke in the house.

आगरे से खत भेजना ।

āgre se khat bhejnā. Send [me] a letter from Agra.

Some conversational gambits

When you're learning Hindi you may find that people speak quite fast — you'll need to ask them to repeat things or to speak slowly etc. This section gives you some useful phrases to help you out!



फिर से पूछिए ।

phir se pūchie. Please ask [me] again.

फिर से कहिए ।

phir se kahie. Please tell [me] again, say [it] again.

ज़ोर से बोलिए ।

zor se bolie. Please speak loudly.

धीरे धीरे बोलिए ।

dhire dhire bolie. Please speak slowly.

हिन्दी में बोलिए ।

hindī mē bolie. Please speak in Hindi.

हिन्दी में बोलिएगा ।

hindī mē boliegā. Be so kind as to speak in Hindi.

This sentence adds *-gā* to the command: बोलिए *bolie* becomes बोलिएगा *boliegā*. This gives a particularly polite command.

मैं नहीं समझा ।

mai nahī samjhā. I don't/didn't understand. (male speaker)

मैं नहीं समझी ।

mai nahī samjhī. I don't/didn't understand. (female speaker)

These sentences use the past tense, introduced in Unit 10.1.

2 Telling, saying, speaking, asking

When using verbs like 'to tell' and 'to ask', you may want to specify the person being spoken to. Most 'saying, asking' verbs make this link with *से se*, and here's a list of the common ones that do so:

कहना *kahnā* to say, tell

बोलना *bolnā* to speak

बात करना *bāt karnā* to converse

पूछना *pūchnā* to ask

माँगना *māgnā* to ask for, demand

मिलना *milnā* to meet

राम से कहो ।

Rām se kaho. Tell Ram.

राम से बात करो, मनोज से नहीं ।

Rām se bāt karo, Manoj se nahī. Talk to Ram, not to Manoj.

मनोज से न पूछो, राम से पूछो ।

Manoj se na pūcho, Rām se pūcho. Don't ask Manoj, ask Ram.

राम से पैसा माँगो ।

Rām se paisā māgo. Ask Ram for money.

राम से मिलो ।

Rām se milo. Meet Ram.

But the verb बताना *batānā* 'to tell' uses को *ko* —

राम को बताओ । *Rām ko batāo*. Tell Ram.

Practise what you've learnt

Using both तुम *tum* and आप *āp* forms, make up some requests and commands from the following lists. Make some of your examples negative by using न *na* or मत *mat*. Here's an example:

यह किताब ध्यान से पढ़िए

yah kitāb dhyān se paṛhie. Read this book carefully.

OBJECTS

समोसा *samosā* m. samosa

किताब *kitāb* f. book

हिन्दी *hindī* f. Hindi

पानी *pānī* m. water

खाना *khānā* m. food

और चाय *aur cāy* f. more tea

घर *ghar* home

मेरी बात *merī bāt* f. what I say, my words

यह *yah* this

ये *ye* these

ADVERBS

अब *ab* now

अभी *abhī* right now

जल्दी से *jaldī se* quickly

ज़ोर से *zor se* loudly

धीरे धीरे *dhīre dhīre* slowly

यहाँ *yahā* here

यहीं *yahī* right here

ध्यान से *dhyān se* carefully

फिर से *phir se* again

VERBS

कहना *kahnā* to say

खाना *khānā* to eat

चलाना *calānā* to drive (vehicle)

जाना *jānā* to go

देखना *dekhnā* to see, look at

पढ़ना *paṛhnā* to read

पीना *pīnā* to drink

पूछना *pūchnā* to ask

बताना *batānā* to tell

बात करना *bāt karnā* to talk, converse

बैठना *baithnā* to sit

बोलना *bolnā* to speak

रखना *rakhnā* to put, to keep

सीखना *sikhnā* to learn

सुनना *sunnā* to listen

Did you know?

Like all the major languages of northern India, Hindi derives from Sanskrit, India's classical language. Sanskrit is a member of the Indo-European language family that includes Greek, Latin and the modern languages of Western Europe. So Hindi is a distant cousin of English, French, German etc.

▶ 3 Routine events

We now take a big step forward by learning how to describe present-tense events and actions — starting with the verb बोलना *bolnā* 'to speak' and समझना *samajhnā* 'to understand':

मैं हिन्दी बोलता हूँ ।

maī hindī boltā hū̃. I speak Hindi. [male speaker]

मैं हिन्दी समझता हूँ ।

maī hindī samajhtā hū̃. I understand Hindi. [male speaker]

This is a present tense that describes actions that are done regularly or habitually. It is called the 'imperfective', and it consists of two parts. First, the word describing the action is बोलता *bolta*, which consists of the stem बोल *bol* plus the ending -ता *-tā*).

बोल + ता = बोलता *bol + tā = boltā*

समझ + ता = समझता *samajh + tā = samajhtā*

The second part is the verb 'to be' — here हूँ *hū̃* — already familiar to us from मैं हूँ *maĩ hū̃* 'I am'. Its purpose here is to show that the verb is in the present tense ('I speak', rather than 'I used to speak').

As you might expect, बोलता *bolta* changes to बोलते *bolte* in the masculine plural, and to बोलती *bolti* in the feminine; the part of the verb 'to be' also changes with the subject — वे बोलती हैं *ve bolti hai* etc.

मैं हिन्दी बोलती हूँ ।

maĩ hindī bolti hū̃. I speak Hindi. [female]

तुम हिन्दी बोलते हो ।

tum hindī bolte ho. You speak Hindi. [male]

तुम हिन्दी बोलती हो ।

tum hindī bolti ho. You speak Hindi. [female]

वह हिन्दी बोलता है ।

vah hindī boltā hai. He speaks Hindi.

वह हिन्दी बोलती है ।

vah hindī bolti hai. She speaks Hindi.

हम / आप / वे हिन्दी बोलते हैं ।

ham/āp/ve hindī bolte haĩ. We/you/they speak Hindi. [male]

हम / आप / वे हिन्दी बोलती हैं ।

ham/āp/ve hindī bolti haĩ. We/you/they speak Hindi. [female]

► Where do you live? What do you do?

Let's look at examples of this tense using other verbs:

आप कहाँ रहती हैं ?

āp kahā̃ rahti haĩ? Where do you live?

मैं दिल्ली में रहती हूँ ।

maĩ dilli maĩ rahti hū̃. I live in Delhi.

आप क्या काम करती हैं ?

āp kyā kām karti haĩ? What work do you do?

मैं संगीतकार हूँ; सितार बजाती हूँ ।

maĩ sangitkār hū̃; sitār bajāti hū̃. I'm a musician; I play the sitar.

क्या आपके पति भी सितार बजाते हैं ?

kyā āpke pati bhī sitār bajāte haĩ? Does your husband play the sitar too?

जी नहीं, वे अंग्रेज़ी पढ़ाते हैं ।

ji nahī̃, ve āgrezĩ pārhāte haĩ. No, he teaches English.

आपकी बेटी क्या करती है ?

āpkĩ betĩ kyā karti haĩ? What does your daughter do?

वह अभी छोटी है । वह स्कूल जाती है ।

vah abhī choṭī haĩ. vah skūl jāti haĩ. She's still young; she goes to school.

What's this called?

The verb कहना *kahnā* 'to say' is useful in asking what something is called — a frequent event when learning a new language! Point to something and say:

इसको क्या कहते हैं ?

isko kyā kahte haĩ? What's this called?

You'll get answers like:

इसको किताब कहते हैं ।

isko kitāb kahte haĩ.

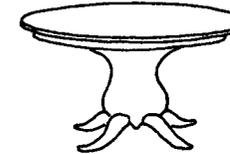
This is called a book.



इसको मेज़ कहते हैं ।

isko mez kahte haĩ.

This is called a table.



The question literally means 'What do [they] call this?', leaving the 'they' unexpressed because it's an impersonal kind of question. (The word इसको *isko* 'this' will be explained in Unit 5.)

► Find the matching pairs of sentences

Each sentence numbered 1–7 matches up with one from the sequence A–G. Find the matching pairs. Answers below.

- 1 मनोज और राम सिनेमा जाते हैं ।
Manoj aur Rām sinemā jāte hai.
 - 2 शर्मा जी अध्यापक हैं ।
Śarmā jī adhyāpak hai.
 - 3 राम स्कूल जाता है ।
Rām skūl jātā hai.
 - 4 कभी कभी मनोज और मीना चाय बनाते हैं ।
kabhī kabhī Manoj aur Mīnā cāy banāte hai.
 - 5 गीता बहुत अच्छा खाना बनाती है ।
Gītā bahut acchā khānā banātī hai.
 - 6 मीना बगीचे में बैठती है ।
Mīnā bagīche mẽ baiṭhtī hai.
 - 7 तुम हमेशा हम से पैसा माँगते हो ।
tum hamesā ham se paisā māṅte ho.
- A लेकिन वह बहुत ध्यान से नहीं पढ़ता ।
lekin vah bahut dhyān se nahī pṛhṭā.
- B लेकिन हम को कुछ नहीं देते हो ।
lekin ham ko kuch nahī dete ho.
- C वे हिन्दी पढ़ाते हैं ।
ve hindī pṛhāte hai.
- D वे हिन्दी फ़िल्में देखते हैं ।
ve hindī filmē dekhte hai.
- E पर मनोज नहीं बनाता, सिर्फ़ खाता है !
par Manoj nahī banātā, sirf khātā hai!
- F वे काफ़ी भी बनाते हैं ।
ve kāfī bhī banāte hai.
- G वह वहाँ बिल्ली से बात करती है ।
vah vahā billī se bāt kartī hai.

Answers: 1D, 2C, 3A, 4F, 5E, 6G, 7B.

Language about language

Because the tense introduced in this chapter describes events that haven't been completed, it's called the 'imperfective' present. The form बोल्ता *bolṭā* is called the 'imperfective participle'.

The verb 'to be' (हूँ *hū̃*, है *hai* etc.) as used here is called the 'auxiliary', because it helps complete the meaning of the verb by specifying its timeframe. (English uses auxiliaries too: 'will' in the future tense 'I will go' is an example.)

Negative verbs

A final point here: the auxiliary can be dropped when the verb is in the negative — it's often optional, as shown by the brackets:

क्या तुम गोश्त खाते हो ?

kyā tum gośt khāte ho? Do you eat meat?

नहीं, मैं गोश्त नहीं खाता (हूँ) ।

nahī, mai gośt nahī khātā (hū̃). No, I don't eat meat.

क्या वे शराब पीते हैं ?

kyā ve śarāb pīte hai? Do they drink alcohol?

नहीं, वे शराब नहीं पीते (है) ।

nahī, ve śarāb nahī pīte (hai). No, they don't drink alcohol.

► Javed and Raju get to know each other

जावेद राजू जी, आप एक कालेज में पढ़ाते हैं, न ?

राजू जी हाँ, मैं इतिहास पढ़ाता हूँ ।

जावेद और आपकी पत्नी ? क्या वे भी काम करती हैं ?

राजू हाँ ज़रूर, हम दोनों काम करते हैं ।

जावेद वे क्या काम करती हैं ?

राजू वे अस्पताल में काम करती हैं । डाक्टर हैं ।

Jāved Rājū jī, āp ek kālej mẽ pṛhāte hai, na?

Rājū jī hā̃, mai itihās pṛhātā hū̃.

Jāved aur āpkī patnī? kyā ve bhī kām kartī hai?

Rājū hā̃ zarūr, ham donō kām karte hai.

Jāved ve kyā kām kartī hai?

Rājū ve aspatāl mẽ kām kartī hai. ḍāktar hai.

- Javed** Raju ji, you teach in a college, don't you?
Raju Yes, I teach history.
Javed And your wife? Does she work too?
Raju Yes, of course, we both work.
Javed What work does she do?
Raju She works in a hospital. She's a doctor.

Notice that a pronoun can be dropped when its reference is clear from what's come before: डाक्टर हैं *ḍakṭar hai* [she] is a doctor. Look out for further examples of this in the second and third line below:

- जावेद** यह बताइए राजू जी, आप गोश्त खाते हैं ?
राजू जी हाँ, कभी कभी खाता हूँ । और आप ?
जावेद मैं भी खाता हूँ । लेकिन शराब नहीं पीता ।
राजू आप शराब नहीं पीते ? मैं पीता हूँ, लेकिन बहुत कम ।
जावेद क्या गीता जी भी पीती हैं ?
राजू जी नहीं, वे नहीं पीतीं ।

- Jāved** *yah batāie Rājū jī, āp gośt khāte hai?*
Rājū *jī hā, kabhī kabhī khātā hū. aur āp?*
Jāved *maī bhī khātā hū. lekin śarāb nahī pītā.*
Rājū *āp śarāb nahī pīte? maī pītā hū, lekin bahut kam.*
Jāved *kyā Gītā jī bhī pītī hai?*
Rājū *jī nahī, ve nahī pītī.*

- Javed** Tell me this, Raju ji, do you eat meat?
Raju Yes, sometimes I do ['I eat']. And you?
Javed I do too. But I don't drink alcohol.
Raju You don't drink? I do, but very little.
Javed Does Geeta drink too?
Raju No, she doesn't drink.

वे नहीं पीतीं *ve nahī pītī* — when पीती हैं *pītī hai* becomes negative it can drop the auxiliary हैं *hai*, leaving just वे नहीं पीतीं *ve nahī pītī*. The nasal from the dropped हैं *hai* has been made homeless by this, so it jumps onto the participle पीती *pītī*! This only happens with the feminine plural, and only in this tense.

Now look back at the list of verbs in section 4.1 and make up sentences from as many as you can, with yourself as subject (e.g.

मैं हिन्दी बोलता हूँ *maī hindī boltā hū*). Then do the same with other subjects such as 'she' or 'they'. Be sure to say your sentences *out loud*, with conviction; this will help you get used to this very important tense.

Exercise 4a Translate, using first तुम *tum* commands and then आप *āp* commands:

- 1 Don't drink alcohol in the house.
- 2 Listen carefully.
- 3 Send this letter to Manoj.
- 4 Go home.
- 5 Tell me his name.
- 6 Eat these two samosas.
- 7 Play the sitar.
- 8 Ask my neighbour.
- 9 Give this money to my wife.
- 10 Don't drive the car today.
- 11 Speak slowly.

Exercise 4b Fill the gap with the right postposition, then translate:

- १२ राम.....पूछिए । *Rām.....pūchie.*
- १३ बच्चों.....मत बताना । *baccō.....mat batānā.*
- १४ चाचा जी.....हिन्दी बोलो । *cācā jī.....hindī bolo.*
- १५ मनोज.....बात कीजिए । *Manoj.....bāt kijie.*
- १६ गीता.....पैसा माँगना । *Gītā.....paisā māgnā.*

Exercise 4c Translate all the variations shown in these sentences:

- 17 My brother/sister lives in Delhi.
- 18 I/we understand Hindi.
- 19 The boy/girl drives the car very fast.
- 20 My husband/wife speaks Hindi.
- 21 Who [male/female] speaks English?

Glossary

अभी *abhī* right now; still
 अरे *are* hey! oh!
 आना *ānā* to come
 और *aur* more
 इतिहास *itihās* m. history
 कभी *kabhī* ever; कभी कभी *kabhī kabhī* sometimes
 कम *kam* little, less
 करना *karnā* to do
 कहना *kahnā* to say
 काफ़ी *kāfī* f. coffee
 काम *kām* work; काम करना *kām karnā* to work
 कालेज *kālej* m. college
 खत *khat* m. letter
 (correspondence)
 खाना¹ *khānā* m. food
 खाना² *khānā* to eat
 गाना¹ *gānā* m. song, singing
 गाना² *gānā* to sing
 गोश्त *gošt* m. meat
 चलाना *calānā* to drive
 चाय *cāy* f. tea
 जाना *jānā* to go
 ज़ोर से *zor se* with force, loudly
 झूठ *jhūth* m. a lie
 तबला *tablā* m. tabla (drum)
 देखना *dekhnā* to look, to see
 देना *denā* to give
 धीरे धीरे *dhīre dhīre* slowly
 ध्यान *dhyān* m. attention; ध्यान से *dhyān se* attentively
 न *na* don't; not
 पढ़ना *parhnā* to read, to study

पढ़ाना *parhānā* to teach
 पीना *pīnā* to drink; to smoke
 पूछना *pūchnā* to ask
 प्लेट *plet* f. plate
 फिर *phir*; फिर से *phir se* again
 फ़िल्म *film* f. film
 बजाना *bajānā* to play (music)
 बताना *batānā* to tell
 बनाना *banānā* to make
 बात *bāt* f. thing said, idea; बात करना *bāt karnā* to talk, converse
 बैठना *baiṭhnā* to sit
 बोलना *bolnā* to speak
 भेजना *bhejnā* to send
 मत *mat* don't
 माँगना *māgnā* to ask for, demand
 मिलना *milnā* to meet
 यहीं *yahī* right here
 रखना *rakhnā* to put, place, keep
 लेना *lenā* to take
 शराब *śarāb* f. alcoholic drink, liquor
 संगीत *saṅgīt* m. music
 संगीतकार *saṅgītkār* m. musician
 समझना *samajhnā* to understand
 समोसा *samosā* m. samosa
 सिग्रेट *sigreṭ* m. cigarette
 सिनेमा *sinemā* m. cinema
 सीखना *sikhnā* to learn
 सुनना *sunnā* to hear, to listen
 हमेशा *hameśā* always

आपको क्या चाहिए ?
 āpko
 what do you want?

Kyā

In this unit you will learn

- to talk about likes and needs
- expressions for 'to get' and 'to know'

Language points

- oblique-case expressions
- imperfective of 'to be'

1 Obliques again

Just when you thought you'd got things straight, we go oblique again! This time it's with the pronouns. To say 'to me', 'from her' etc., we need to use a postposition, which means that the pronoun must become oblique. (Look back to Unit 3 if you're uncertain about the use of obliques.)

The good news is that हम *ham*, आप *āp* and तुम *tum* don't change at all in the oblique:

हम को	<i>ham ko</i>	to us
आप को	<i>āp ko</i>	to you
तुम को	<i>tum ko</i>	to you

The bad news is that the others do change — like this:

DIRECT		OBLIQUE + को <i>ko</i>	
मैं	<i>maī</i>	मुझ को	<i>mujh ko</i> to me
तू	<i>tū</i>	तुझ को	<i>tujh ko</i> to you
यह	<i>yah</i>	इस को	<i>is ko</i> to him, her, it, this
वह	<i>vah</i>	उस को	<i>us ko</i> to him, her, it, that
ये	<i>ye</i>	इन को	<i>in ko</i> to them, these
वे	<i>ve</i>	उन को	<i>un ko</i> to them, those
कौन	<i>kaun</i>	किस को	<i>kis ko</i> to whom (singular)
कौन	<i>kaun</i>	किन को	<i>kin ko</i> to whom (plural)

उस को ये चीज़ें दीजिए ।

us ko ye chīzē dijīe. Please give these things to him/her.

उन को मेरा पैसा दो ।

un ko merā paisā do. Give my money to them.

मुझ को बताइए ।

mujh ko batāie. Please tell me.

तुम मुझ को कुछ नहीं देती हो ।

tum mujh ko kuch nahī detī ho. You give me nothing.

Pronoun + postposition are usually written together as one word (उसको *usko*), though on the page opposite they were written as two (उस को *us ko*), to show you more clearly what's going on.

▶ Geeta talks to her children

Geeta is getting Manoj and Ram to help in the house. First, some new words:

कौनसा <i>kaunsā</i>	which?	जो <i>jo</i>	which, who
साफ़ करना <i>sāf karnā</i>	to clean	अख़बार <i>akhbār</i>	m. newspaper



मनोज़ बेटा, ये किताबें तुम अलमारी में रखो । कौनसी किताबें ? हाँ ये, जो मेरी मेज़ पर पड़ी हैं । मीना कहाँ है ? उसको बुलाओ । अच्छा मीनू, तुम यहाँ हो ? तुम यह कमरा साफ़ करो । राम, तुम पिताजी से पूछो कि अख़बार कहाँ है । उनसे कहो कि चाचाजी बैठे हैं ।

Manoj beṭā, ye kitābē tum almāri mē rakho. kaunsi kitābē? hā ye, jo meri mez par paṛī hai. Mīnā kahā hai? usko bulāo. acchā Mīnū, tum yahā ho? tum yah kamrā sāf karo. Rām, tum pitājī se pūcho ki akhbār kahā hai. unse kaho ki cācāji baiṭhe hai.

Manoj, son, put these books in the cupboard. Which books? Yes these, which are lying on my table. Where's Meena? Call her. Oh, Meena, you're here? You clean this room. Ram, ask father where the newspaper is. Tell him that Uncle is sitting [waiting].

Did you know?

At the level of everyday conversation, Hindi and Urdu are virtually identical — though Urdu is written in the Persian script (modified to represent Indian retroflex consonants). All the grammar taught in this book, and nearly all the vocabulary used here, is 'Urdu' as much as it is 'Hindi'.

2 What do you like, what do you want?

▶ Liking things

In English, we can say 'I like London'; the subject of this is 'I'. But we could also say 'London appeals to me', which makes 'London' the subject. Hindi has many such constructions. They work like this:

मुझको दिल्ली पसंद है ।

mujhko dillī pasand hai. I like Delhi.

हमको दिल्ली पसंद है ।

hamko dillī pasand hai. We like Delhi.

These sentences translate literally as 'Delhi is pleasing to me/us'; the word दिल्ली *dillī* is the subject of the verb है *hai* 'is', with the 'me/us' expressed in the oblique. Here are some more examples.

क्या राम को यह जगह पसंद है ?

kyā Rām ko yah jagah pasand hai? Does Ram like this place?

हमको वह आदमी पसंद नहीं है ।

hamko vah ādmī pasand nahī hai. We don't like that man.

मेरे दोस्त को ये तस्वीरें पसंद नहीं हैं ।

mere dost ko ye tasvīrē pasand nahī hai. My friend doesn't like these pictures.

IMPORTANT!

GRAMMATICAL HEALTH WARNING

Constructions using को *ko* can damage your grammar

Take care: as you learn more Hindi you will see that this switch from English 'I' to Hindi मुझ को *mujh ko* 'to me' is very common. The focus of 'I' sentences is the person who experiences, but मुझको *mujhko* sentences have the *experience itself* as the focus. We can call these 'मुझको *mujhko*' constructions.

▶ Needing and wanting things

Another मुझको *mujhko* construction expresses 'I need' or 'I want', using the word चाहिए *cāhie* — literally 'is wanted'. There's no है *hai* used with चाहिए *cāhie*.

तुमको क्या चाहिए ?

tumko kyā cāhie? What do you want/need?

मुझको काफी चाहिए ।

mujhko kāfi cāhie. I want/need coffee.

हमको भी काफी चाहिए ।

hamko bhī kāfi cāhie. We want/need coffee too.

किसको चाय चाहिए ?

kisko cāy cāhie? Who wants/needs tea?

राजू को चाय चाहिए ।

Rājū ko cāy cāhie. Raju wants/needs tea.

Remember that किस *kis* is the oblique of कौन *kaun* 'who?', as in किसको *kisko* 'to whom?'.

▶ Knowing things

A similar construction means 'I know', using the word मालूम *mālūm* — literally 'known'. A difference from the चाहिए *cāhie* construction is that है *hai* is used here (though it can be dropped in the negative).

मुझको मालूम है ।

mujhko mālūm hai. I know.

मुझको नहीं मालूम / मुझको मालूम नहीं ।

mujhko nahī mālūm / mujhko mālūm nahī. I don't know.

किसको मालूम है ?

kisko mālūm hai? Who knows?

उनको मालूम है कि मुझको चाबी चाहिए ।

unko mālūm hai ki mujhko cābī cāhie. They know that I want/need a key.

हमको मालूम है कि तुम यहाँ हो ।

hamko mālūm hai ki tum yahā ho. We know that you're here.

मुझको मालूम है कि तुम कहाँ हो ।

mujhko mālūm hai ki tum kahā ho. I know where you are.

उनको मालूम है कि मुझको क्या चाहिए ।

unko mālūm hai ki mujhko kyā cāhie. They know what I want.

▶ Pratap goes shopping

Pratap, a visitor from England, is shopping in Delhi. He's forgotten the Hindi for some of the things he needs, but luckily for him, the shopkeeper knows some English and is able to help him out. We join them in the middle of their conversation.

प्रताप	मुझको टोर्च भी चाहिए ।
दुकानदार	“टोर्च” नहीं, “टार्च” ! यह लीजिए । और ?
प्रताप	मुझको ... क्या कहते हैं उस को ? ... एक छोटी किताब ... मैं कुछ लिखना चाहता हूँ ...
दुकानदार	अच्छा, आपको कापी चाहिए ।
प्रताप	हाँ, कापी ! एक कलम भी दीजिए ।
दुकानदार	कैसा कलम चाहिए ?
प्रताप	काला नहीं ... ब्लू ...
दुकानदार	यह लीजिए, नीला कलम । और ?
प्रताप	मुझको वह चीज़ भी चाहिए ...
दुकानदार	कौनसी चीज़ ? यह डिब्बा ?
प्रताप	नहीं नहीं, वह लाल चीज़ जो डिब्बे पर पड़ी है ।
दुकानदार	अच्छा, चाकू ! आपको चाकू चाहिए । लीजिए ।
Pratāp	<i>mujhko ṭorc bhī cāhie.</i>
dukāndār	<i>'ṭorc' nahī, 'tārc'! yah lijie. aur?</i>
Pratāp	<i>mujhko... kyā kahte hāi us ko?... ek choti kitāb... mai kuch likhna cāhtā hū...</i>
dukāndār	<i>acchā, āp ko kāpī cāhie.</i>
Pratāp	<i>hā, kāpī! ek qalam bhī dijie.</i>
dukāndār	<i>kaisā qalam cāhie?</i>
Pratāp	<i>kālā nahī... blū...</i>
dukāndār	<i>yah lijie, nilā qalam. aur?</i>
Pratāp	<i>mujhko vah ciz bhī cāhie...</i>
dukāndār	<i>kaunsi ciz? yah dibbā?</i>
Pratāp	<i>nahī nahī, vah lāl ciz jo ḍibbe par paṛī hai.</i>
dukāndār	<i>acchā, cāqū! āp ko cāqū cāhie. lijie.</i>

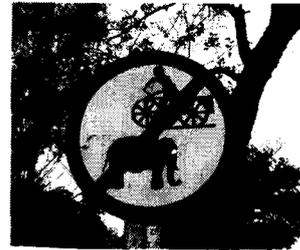
Pratap	I need a torch too.
Shopkeeper	Not 'ṭorc', 'tārc'! What else?
Pratap	I... what's it called... a little book... I want to write something.
Shopkeeper	Oh, you need an exercise book.
Pratap	Yes, an exercise book! Give me a pen too.
Shopkeeper	What kind of pen do you want?
Pratap	Not black... 'blue'...
Shopkeeper	Here you are, a blue pen. What else?
Pratap	I need that thing too...
Shopkeeper	Which thing? This box?
Pratap	No no, that red thing that's lying on the box.
Shopkeeper	Oh, a penknife! You need a penknife. Here you are.

▶ 3 Availability — 'to get, to find'

Besides meaning 'to meet', मिलना *milnā* also means 'to be available', and is the normal way to express the meaning 'to get, to find, to receive'. The subject here is not the person who gets or receives something, but the thing that's available or received.

इस दुकान में अच्छे जूते मिलते हैं ।

is dukān mē acche jūte milte hāi. You can get good shoes in this shop. (Good shoes are available in this shop.)



दिल्ली में सब कुछ मिलता है ।

dillī mē sab kuch miltā hai.

You can get everything in Delhi.

हाथी भी मिलते हैं !

hāthī bhī milte hāi!

You can even find elephants!

Notice that the sense of 'you' in 'you can get' is dropped, because the situation's an impersonal one, describing *general* availability.

सस्ते कपड़े कहाँ मिलते हैं ?

saste kapṛe kahā milte hāi? Where can you get cheap clothes?

अच्छी साड़ियाँ कहाँ मिलती हैं ?

acchī sāriyā kahā miltī hāi? Where can you get good saris?

Practise what you've learnt

Match up items with locations, as in this example:

समोसे ढाबे में मिलते हैं ।

samosa dhābe mẽ milte hai. Samosas are available in a café.

WHAT'S AVAILABLE

समोसे *samosa* m. pl. samosas

सस्ता खाना *sastā khānā* m. cheap food

डाक टिकटें *dāk tikaṭē* f. pl. stamps

ताज़ा फल *tāzā phal* m. fresh fruit

अच्छा खाना *acchā khānā* m. good food

सिग्रेट *sigreṭ* m. pl. cigarette

सुंदर कपड़े *sundar kapre* m. pl. lovely clothes

अच्छे कमरे *acche kamre* m. pl. good rooms

WHERE TO FIND IT/THEM

डाक घर *dāk ghar* m. post office

मेरा कमरा *merā kamrā* m. my room

छोटी दुकान *choṭī dukān* f. small shop

यहाँ *yahā* here

ढाबा *dhābā* m. roadside cafe

भारत *bhārat* m. India

यह होटल *yah hoṭal* m. this hotel/restaurant

वह दुकान *vah dukān* f. that shop

The general and the particular

Look closely at these two sentences:

बनारसी साड़ियाँ बहुत अच्छी होती हैं ।

banārasī sāriyā̃ bahut acchī hotī hai. Banarasi saris are very good.

ये साड़ियाँ बहुत अच्छी हैं ।

ye sāriyā̃ bahut acchī hai. These saris are very good.

The participle होता *hotā* (from होना *honā* 'to be') is used in a statement that relates to a whole class of things: it's a *general* statement. Thus the first sentence above is about *all* saris from Banaras (a centre of fine sari making), while the second one is a *specific* one about a *particular* selection of saris.

4 Revision!

By now you should be reasonably confident in making basic sentences, using the verb 'to be' (है *hai* etc.) and the habitual tense of other verbs (मैं हिन्दी बोलता हूँ *mai hindi boltā hū̃*). The distinction between आप *āp* and तुम *tum* should be second nature, especially in making requests, and you should be able to make words agree with their subjects in number, gender and case. You can locate things using postpositions like में *mē* and पर *par*, and should always remember that nouns and pronouns that 'carry' postpositions must be in the oblique (कमरे में *kamre mẽ*, उस पर *us par*). You should be able to express 'need' using चाहिए *cāhie*, and मिलना *milnā* as 'to get' should be familiar too. You know that many constructions follow the format of 'X is pleasing to me' ('*mujhko* constructions') rather than 'I like X'. Look back now at anything you're unsure of.

Some hints on learning

- Listen to the recording until its dialogues and phrases are coming out of your ears! Try to catch the *music* of the language.
- Read *aloud*; and when reading longish sentences, break them up into smaller units, repeating each part until you're familiar with both its meaning and its construction.
- Read sentences *critically*: put yourself into the position of a teacher, explaining how each phrase is built up and why words are in the order and form in which you find them.
- If you have someone to practise with, act out the dialogues.
- You'll learn words and constructions much more thoroughly by using them yourself rather than just reading them passively. Write a Hindi diary, starting by noting 'habitual' things that you do every day, then gradually extending your range as new tenses are introduced; or write some dialogues of your own.

▶ Raju visits a hotel

This section brings a revision dialogue in two parts. Visiting a small town for a teachers' conference, Raju tries his luck at the local hotel. There's no new grammar, but here are some useful new words:

कोई *koī* some, any, a

दिखाना *dikhānā* to show

अच्छा-सा *acchā-sā* goodish,

दिन *din* m. day

decent

के लिए *ke lie* for

यानी <i>yāni</i> that is to say	ऐसा <i>aisā</i> such, of this kind
शुक्रवार <i>śukravār</i> m. Friday	किराया <i>kirāyā</i> m. rent; fare
फ़ोन <i>fon</i> m. phone	सौ <i>sau</i> m. hundred
शहर <i>śahar</i> m. town	रुपया <i>rupayā</i> m. rupee

शंकर	आइए साहब, आपको क्या चाहिए ?
राजू	मुझको कमरा चाहिए । कोई अच्छा-सा कमरा दिखाइए ।
शंकर	बहुत अच्छा । आपको कैसा कमरा चाहिए ?
राजू	मुझको बड़ा कमरा चाहिए ।
शंकर	बहुत अच्छा । कितने दिनों के लिए चाहिए ?
राजू	चार दिनों के लिए, यानी शुक्रवार तक ।
शंकर	बहुत अच्छा । आज से शुक्रवार तक हमारा एक बहुत अच्छा कमरा खाली है ।
राजू	क्या कमरे में फ़ोन है ? फ़ोन चाहिए ।
शंकर	जी हाँ, है । बहुत अच्छा कमरा है । इस शहर में ऐसे कमरे मुश्किल से मिलते हैं ।
राजू	किराया कितना है ?
शंकर	सिर्फ सात सौ रुपये ।
राजू	कमरा दिखाइए ।
शंकर	बहुत अच्छा साहब । आइए, मैं कमरा दिखाता हूँ ।
Śankar	<i>āie sāhab, āpko kyā cāhie?</i>
Rājū	<i>mujhko kamrā cāhie. koī acchā-sā kamrā dikhāie.</i>
Śankar	<i>bahut acchā. āpko kaisā kamrā cāhie?</i>
Rājū	<i>mujhko barā kamrā cāhie.</i>
Śankar	<i>bahut acchā. kitne dinō ke lie cāhie?</i>
Rājū	<i>cār dinō ke lie, yāni śukravār tak.</i>
Śankar	<i>bahut acchā. āj se śukravār tak hamārā ek bahut acchā kamrā khāli hai.</i>
Rājū	<i>kyā kamre mẽ fon hai? fon cahie.</i>
Śankar	<i>jī hā, hai. bahut acchā kamrā hai. is śahar mẽ aise kamre muškil se milte hāi.</i>

Rājū	<i>kirāyā kitnā hai?</i>
Śankar	<i>sirf sāt sau rupaye.</i>
Rājū	<i>kamrā dikhāie.</i>
Śankar	<i>bahut acchā sāhab. āie, maī kamrā dikhātā hū.</i>

Shankar	Please come [in], sir, what do you want?
Raju	I need a room. Show me some decent room.
Shankar	Very good. What kind of room do you want?
Raju	I want a big room.
Shankar	Very good. How many days do you want it for?
Raju	For four days — that is, until Friday.
Shankar	Very good. We have a very good room vacant from today until Friday.
Raju	Is there a phone in the room? There needs to be a phone.
Shankar	Yes, there is. It's a very good room. Such rooms are hard to find in this town.
Raju	How much is the rent?
Shankar	Only seven hundred rupees.
Raju	Show me the room.
Shankar	Very good, sir. Come, I'll show [you] the room.

(In this last line, Shankar's sentence में कमरा दिखाता हूँ *maī kamrā dikhātā hū* shows how the present tense can refer to something just about to be done.)

All seems to be going fine so far, and Shankar is obviously eager to please. But it's when he shows Raju the room that the problems start. Do you notice a change in tone in the way Raju addresses Shankar? (Look out for the pronouns.) But before we move on to the second part, some more new words:

ऊपर <i>ūpar</i> up, upstairs	घूमना <i>ghūmnā</i> to turn, revolve
दरवाज़ा <i>darvāzā</i> m. door	लाइट <i>lāiṭ</i> f. electricity, electrical power
खोलना <i>kholnā</i> to open	बिजली <i>bijlī</i> f. electricity
करवाना <i>karvānā</i> to get done, caused to be done (by someone else)	शुभ <i>śubh</i> good, auspicious (mainly used in the formula शुभ नाम <i>śubh nām</i> 'good name')
काम करना <i>kām karnā</i> to work, to function	कोई दूसरा <i>koī dūsarā</i> another, some other one
चालू करना <i>cālū karnā</i> to turn on, make work	

The encounter continues:

(दोनों आदमी ऊपर जाते हैं। शंकर एक दरवाज़ा खोलता है।)

शंकर आइए जी।

राजू यह कमरा साफ़ नहीं है।

शंकर बहुत अच्छा साहब। मैं कमरा अभी साफ़ करवाता हूँ।

राजू क्या यह पुराना पंखा काम करता है ?

शंकर जी हाँ, पंखा काम करता है। बहुत अच्छा पंखा है। आजकल ऐसे पंखे नहीं मिलते हैं।

राजू चालू करो।

शंकर बहुत अच्छा साहब।

(शंकर स्विच को "ऑन" करता है [turns on the switch] लेकिन पंखा घूमता नहीं।)

राजू पंखा घूमता नहीं।

शंकर जी हाँ, क्योंकि लाइट नहीं है — बिजली नहीं है।

राजू तुम्हारा नाम क्या है ?

शंकर जी, मुझको शंकर कहते हैं। और आपका शुभ नाम ?

राजू मेरा नाम शर्मा है। श्री राजकुमार शर्मा।

शंकर बहुत अच्छा नाम है सर। मुझको आपका नाम बहुत पसंद है।

राजू शंकर, तुम "बहुत अच्छा" बहुत कहते हो। लेकिन यह कमरा बहुत अच्छा नहीं है। मुझ को पसंद नहीं है। कोई दूसरा कमरा दिखाओ।

शंकर बहुत अच्छा शर्मा जी। आइए।

(donõ ādmī ūpar jāte hai. Śankar ek darvāzā kholtā hai.)

Śankar āie jī.

Rājū yah kamrā sāf nahī hai.

Śankar bahut acchā sāhab. maī kamrā abhī sāf karvātā hū.

Rājū kyā yah purānā pankhā kām kartā hai?

Śankar jī hā, pankhā kām kartā hai. bahut acchā pankhā hai. ājkal aise pankhe nahī milte hai.

Rājū cālū karo.

Śankar bahut acchā sāhab.

(Śankar svic ko 'ān' kartā hai [turns on the switch] lekin pankhā ghūmtā nahī.)

Rājū pankhā ghūmtā nahī.

Śankar jī hā, kyōki laīṭ nahī hai — bijlī nahī hai.

Rājū tumhārā nām kyā hai?

Śankar jī, mujhko Śankar kahte hai. aur āpkā śubh nām?

Rājū merā nām Śarmā hai. Śrī Rāj Kumār Śarmā.

Śankar bahut acchā nām hai sar. mujhko āpkā nām bahut pasand hai.

Rājū Śankar, tum 'bahut acchā' bahut kahte ho. lekin yah kamrā bahut acchā nahī hai. mujhko pasand nahī hai. koī dūsarā kamrā dikhāo.

Śankar bahut acchā Śarmā jī. āie.

(Both men go upstairs. Shankar opens a door.)

Shankar Please come in, sir.

Raju This room isn't clean.

Shankar Very good, sir. I'll get the room cleaned at once.

Raju Does this old fan work?

Shankar Yes, the fan works. It's a very good fan. You can't get fans like this these days.

Raju Turn it on.

(Shankar switches on the fan, but the fan doesn't turn.)

Raju The fan doesn't turn.

Shankar Yes, sir [i.e. he agrees that it doesn't], because there's no 'light' — no electricity.

Raju What's your name?

Shankar Sir, I'm called Shankar. And what is your good name?

Raju My name is Sharma. Mr Rajkumar Sharma.

Shankar It's a very good name, sir. I like your name very much.

Raju Shankar, you say 'very good' very much. But this room isn't very good. Show me some other room.

Shankar Very good, Sharma ji. Please come.

In the first part of the dialogue, Raju had been calling Shankar आप āp (as is apparent from such commands as दिखाइए dikhāie; but in the second part, he calls Shankar तुम tum — the drop in honorific level indicating his declining patience!

Quantities

Expressing quantities or amounts in Hindi is simplicity itself:

एक किलो चावल

ek kilo cāval one kilo of rice

दो चम्मच चीनी

do cammac cīnī two spoons of sugar

तीन कप चाय

tīn kap cāy three cups of tea

There's no 'of' between the amount and the measured substance.

▶ **Exercise 5a** You're doing some shopping in the market. Reply to the shopkeeper's questions:

- १ आइए ! आज आपकी तबियत कैसी है ?
āie! āj āpkī tabiyat kaisī hai?
- २ घर में सब लोग ठीक हैं ?
ghar mē sab log thīk hai?
- ३ आपको क्या चाहिए ?
āpko kyā cāhie ?
- ४ कितना चाहिए ?
kitnā cāhie?
- ५ आपको और क्या चाहिए ?
āpko aur kyā cāhie?
- ६ साबुन वगैरह चाहिए?
sābun vagairah cāhie?
- ७ चाय, कॉफी, बिस्कुट...?
cāy, kāfī, biskut...?
- ८ आपका घर कहाँ है ?
āpkā ghar kahā hai?
- ९ क्या ये चीजें भी आपकी हैं ?
kyā ye cizē bhī āpkī hai?
- १० आपकी गाड़ी बहुत दूर खड़ी है ?
āpkī gārī bahut dūr khārī hai?

Exercise 5b Translate into Hindi:

- 11 I need three samosas.
- 12 They don't like this house, they like the small house.
- 13 I don't like this room, show me another room.
- 14 Where do you live? We live in Old Delhi.
- 15 Your house isn't very far from my house. Come tomorrow.
- 16 I know that [कि *ki*] my teacher doesn't live here.
- 17 I know where your teacher lives.
- 18 Houses in Delhi are quite expensive.
- 19 Grandfather speaks very beautiful Hindi.
- 20 We don't want these black shoes.

Glossary

आधा <i>ādhā</i> m. half	क्यों <i>kyō</i> why?
ऊपर <i>ūpar</i> up, upstairs	क्योंकि <i>kyōki</i> because
ऐसा <i>aisā</i> such, of this kind	खोलना <i>kholnā</i> to open
कमीज़ <i>qamīz</i> f. shirt	घूमना <i>ghūmnā</i> to turn, revolve
किलो <i>kilo</i> m. kilo, kilogram	चम्मच <i>cammac</i> m. spoon
करवाना <i>karvānā</i> to get done (by someone else), to cause to be done	चाकू <i>cāqū</i> m. knife, penknife
कल <i>kal</i> yesterday; tomorrow	चाबी <i>cābī</i> f. key
काम करना <i>kām karnā</i> to work, to function	चालू करना <i>cālū karnā</i> to turn on
काला <i>kālā</i> black	चावल <i>cāval</i> m. rice
कि <i>ki</i> that (conjunction)	चाहना <i>cāhnā</i> to want, wish
किराया <i>kirāyā</i> m. rent; fare	चाहिए <i>cāhie</i> (is) wanted, needed
कुरता <i>kurtā</i> m. kurta	चीज़ <i>cīz</i> f. thing
के लिए <i>ke lie</i> for	चीनी <i>cīnī</i> f. sugar
कोई <i>koī</i> some, any, a; कोई दूसरा <i>koī dūsarā</i> some other, another	जगह <i>jagah</i> f. place
	जुकाम <i>zūkām</i> m. head cold
	जूता <i>jūtā</i> m. shoe
	जो <i>jo</i> who, which; the one who/which
कौनसा <i>kaunsā</i> which?	टार्च <i>tārc</i> m. torch, flashlight

टिकिया *ṭikiyā* f. cake (of soap)
 डाक *ḍāk* f. post; डाक घर *ḍāk*
ghar m. post office; डाक की
 टिकट *ḍāk kī ṭikaṭ* f. stamp
 डिब्बा *ḍibbā* m. box
 ढाबा *dhābā* m. roadside cafe
 तबियत *tabiyat* f. health,
 disposition
 ताज़ा *tāzā* m. fresh
 तो *to* so, then
 दरवाज़ा *darvāzā* m. door
 दिखाना *dikhānā* to show
 दिन *din* m. day
 नीला *nīlā* blue
 पढ़ना *paṛhnā* to read; to study
 पर *par* but
 पसंद *pasand* pleasing (यह मुझको
 पसंद है *yah mujhko pasand*
hai I like this)
 फल *phal* m. fruit
 फलवाला *phalvālā* m. fruitseller
 फोन *fon* m. phone; फोन करना
fon karnā to phone
 बिजली *bijlī* f. electricity
 बिस्कुट *biskuṭ* m. biscuit
 बुज़ार *bukhār* m. fever
 मालूम *mālūm* (is) known

मिलना *milnā* to meet, to be
 available
 मुश्किल *muškil* difficult; मुश्किल
 से *muškil se* barely, hardly
 यानी *yānī* in other words, that
 is to say
 रहना *rahnā* to live, to stay
 रुपया *rupayā* m. rupee
 लाइट *lāiṭ* f. light, electric
 power
 लाल *lāl* red
 वगैरह *vagairah* etc., and so on
 शहर *śahar* m. town, city
 शायद *śāyad* maybe, perhaps
 साबुन *sābun* m. soap
 शुक्रवार *śukravār* m. Friday
 शुभ *śubh* good, auspicious
 सब कुछ *sab kuch* everything
 -सा *-sā* '-ish' (suffix that
 qualifies an adjective, as in
 बड़ा-सा *barā-sā* 'biggish')
 साड़ी *sārī* f. sari
 साफ़ करना *sāf karnā* to clean
 सौ *sau* m. hundred
 हाथी *hāthī* m. elephant
 होटल *hoṭal* m. hotel, restaurant,
 café

आप क्या काम करते हैं ?
 āp
 what work do you do?

kyā

In this unit you will learn

- how to talk about relationships
- how to ask about people's ages
- how to say 'I can' and 'let me'

Language points

- possessives
- verb stem and infinitive

1 Possession and 'to have'

You already know that मेरा *merā* means 'my, mine', आपका *āpkā* means 'your, yours', उसका *uskā* means 'his, her/hers, its', and हमारा *hamārā* means 'our, ours'. So much for showing possession with pronouns; now we need to see how possession works with names and nouns, as in 'Ram's friend' or 'my son's name'.

The phrase राम का कुत्ता *Rām kā kuttā* means 'Ram's dog'; मीना का कुत्ता *Minā kā kuttā* means 'Meena's dog'. So the little word का *kā* works like the apostrophe 's' in English. Some more examples:

मनोज का दोस्त	<i>Manoj kā dost</i>	Manoj's friend
गीता का पति	<i>Gītā kā pati</i>	Geeta's husband
राजू का बेटा	<i>Rājū kā betā</i>	Raju's son

This is a very important feature of the language and you should practise it thoroughly! Make some phrases of your own from the items provided:

डाक्टर <i>dāktar</i>		कमरा <i>kamrā</i>
पिता जी <i>pitā jī</i>		भाई <i>bhāi</i>
पड़ोसी <i>paṛosī</i>		चाचा <i>cācā</i>
विद्यार्थी <i>vidyārthī</i>		नाम <i>nām</i>
मेरी पत्नी <i>merī patnī</i>		पैसा <i>paisā</i>

You'll have made phrases like मेरी पत्नी का पैसा *merī patnī kā paisā* 'my wife's money'. Great! Now look carefully at these phrases:

लड़के का दोस्त	<i>laṛke kā dost</i>	the boy's friend
लड़के की बहिन	<i>laṛke kī bahin</i>	the boy's sister
लड़के के माँ-बाप	<i>laṛke ke mā-bāp</i>	the boy's parents

Two things have happened: लड़का *laṛkā* has become oblique, and का *kā* has changed like an adjective to agree with the following word.

So का *kā* is a postposition that works like an adjective! This didn't show up earlier (in राम का कुत्ता *Rām kā kuttā* etc.) because non-inflecting masculine words had been cunningly chosen there. But

from now on we'll have to keep an eye on this का *kā* business. For practice, make up phrases from the following lists, remembering to use oblique versions of words from the left-hand column, and to make का *kā* agree with the word chosen from the right-hand column:

वह आदमी <i>vah ādmi</i>		चाबी <i>cabī</i>
मेरा दोस्त <i>merā dost</i>		बहिन <i>bhāi</i>
यह लड़का <i>yah laṛkā</i>		दो भाई <i>do bhāi</i>
फलवाला <i>phalvālā</i>		माता <i>mātā</i>
उसका बेटा <i>uskā betā</i>		कपड़े <i>kapṛe</i>
ये लोग <i>ye log</i>		गाड़ी <i>gārī</i>

Do you have brothers and sisters?

Some time back we saw that Hindi doesn't have a verb 'to have', and that ownership of goods and chattels is indicated by के पास *ke pās*:

उसके पास दो चाबियाँ हैं ।

uske pās do cābiyā̃ haī. He/she has two keys.

But look at the following and notice the difference:

उसके दो भाई हैं ।

uske do bhāi haī. He/she has two brothers.

उसकी दो बहिनें हैं ।

uskī do bahinē haī. He/she has two sisters.

Yes, describing the 'ownership' or relatives involves का *kā* (or a pronoun like मेरा *merā*, or आपका *āpkā*) rather than के पास *ke pās*. The same applies for parts of the body:



रावण के दस सिर हैं ।

Rāvaṇ ke das sir haī.

Rāvaṇ has ten heads.

मेरा एक भाई है। उसके दो मकान हैं।

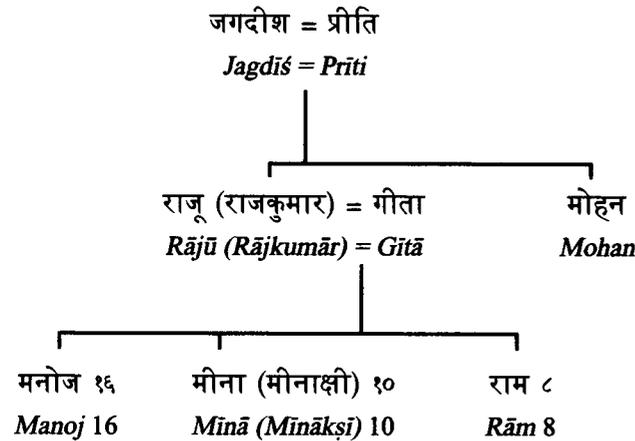
merā ek bhāī hai. uske do makān hai. I have one brother. He has two houses.

मेरी कोई बहिन नहीं।

merī koī bahin nahī. I don't have any sister(s).

2 The Sharma family

Now let's spend some quality time with the Sharmas. Here's their family tree, to remind you of the family relationships.



You have to sort out who's who. Test yourself by covering up the answers on the right of the page, then check your answers.

मनोज का छोटा भाई कौन है ?

Manoj kā choṭā bhāī kaun hai?

राम

Rām

राम और मनोज की बहिन कौन है ?

Rām aur Manoj kī bahin kaun hai?

मीना

Minā

बच्चों की माँ का नाम क्या है ?

baccō kī mā kā nām kyā hai?

गीता

Gītā

बच्चों के बाप का नाम क्या है ?

baccō ke bāp kā nām kyā hai?

राजू

Rājū

राजू और गीता की बेटी का नाम क्या है ?

Rājū aur Gītā kī beṭī kā nām kyā hai?

मीना

Minā

बच्चों के दादा का नाम क्या है ?

baccō ke dādā kā nām kyā hai?

जगदीश

Jagdiś

बच्चों की दादी का नाम क्या है ?

baccō kī dādī kā nām kyā hai?

प्रीति

Prīti

मीना का पूरा नाम क्या है ?

Minā kā pūrā nām kyā hai?

मीनाक्षी शर्मा

Minākṣī Śarmā

बच्चों के चाचा का नाम क्या है ?

baccō ke cācā kā nām kyā hai?

मोहन

Mohan

राजू के पिता का नाम क्या है ?

Rājū ke pitā kā nām kyā hai?

जगदीश

Jagdiś

And a final question:

राजू के बच्चों के कुत्ते का नाम क्या है ?

Rājū ke baccō ke kutte kā nām kyā hai?

मोती

Motī

▶ How old are you?

Another use of का-के-की *kā-ke-kī* is to give people's ages. It's used with the word साल *sāl* m. 'year':

मनोज सोलह साल का है।

Manoj solah sāl kā hai. Manoj is sixteen ('is of 16 years').

मीना दस साल की है।

Minā das sāl kī hai. Meena is ten.

गीता कितने साल की है ?

Gītā kitne sāl kī hai? How old is Geeta?

राम कितने साल का है ?

Rām kitne sāl kā hai? How old is Ram?

राम आठ साल का है।

Rām āth sāl kā hai. Ram is eight.

The word for 'age' is उम्र *umra* (f.), often pronounced 'umar'.

आपकी कितनी उम्र है ?

āpkī kitnī umra hai? How old are you?

Someone is here

The word कोई *koī* 'any' also means 'someone' or 'somebody' (and कोई नहीं *koī nahī* means 'no one'). कोई *koī* can also refer to inanimates, as in कोई दुकान *koī dukān* 'some shop (or other)'. Its oblique form is किसी *kisī*, as in किसी का बेटा *kisī kā betā* 'someone's son'.

Don't confuse किसी *kisī* with किस *kis*, which is the oblique of कौन *kaun* and of क्या *kyā*: किसको *kisko* 'to whom/what?', किसका भाई *kiskā bhāī* 'whose brother?'

कोई है ?

koī hai? Anyone there?

घर में कोई नहीं है ।

ghar mē koī nahī hai. There's nobody in the house.

किसी के घर में कोई चूहा रहता था ।

kisī ke ghar mē koī cūhā rahtā thā. In somebody's house there lived a certain mouse.

Here's a very useful little phrase:

कोई बात नहीं ।

koī bāt nahī. Never mind, it doesn't matter, don't mention it.

Used with a number, कोई *koī* means 'about', just as 'some' does in English:

कोई बारह गाड़ियाँ

koī bārah gāṛiyā̃ some twelve cars

As we've already seen, कुछ *kuch* means 'some' (कुछ पैसा *kuch paisā* 'some money') or 'something'. It doesn't change in the oblique.

क्या मेज़ पर कुछ है ?

kyā mez par kuch hai? Is there something on the table?

हमको कुछ दूध चाहिए ।

hamko kuch dūdh cāhīe. We need some milk.

घर में कुछ नहीं है ।

ghar mē kuch nahī hai. There's nothing in the house.

कछ लोगों के पास कछ नहीं है ।

Manoj introduces Pratap to his father

मनोज प्रताप, मेरे पिताजी से मिलो ।¹

प्रताप नमस्ते जी ।

राजू हलो प्रताप, क्या हाल है ?²

प्रताप ठीक है, शुक्रिया ।

राजू तुम्हारी उम्र कितनी है प्रताप ?

प्रताप मैं इक्कीस साल का हूँ ।

राजू तुम्हारे कितने भाई और बहिनें हैं ?

प्रताप मेरा एक भाई है, मेरी कोई बहिन नहीं है ।

Manoj Pratāp, mere pitājī se milo.¹

Pratāp namaste jī.

Rājū halo Pratāp, kyā hāl hai?²

Pratāp thīk hai, śukriyā.

Rājū tumhāri umr kitnī hai Pratāp?

Pratāp māi ikkīs sāl kā hū̃.

Rājū tumhāre kitne bhāī aur bahinē hai?

Pratāp merā ek bhāī hai, merī koī bahin nahī hai.

Manoj Pratap, meet my father.

Pratap Hello ji.

Raju Hello, Pratap, how's things?

Pratap Fine, thank you.

Raju How old are you, Pratap?

Pratap I'm twenty-one.

Raju How many brothers and sisters do you have?

Pratap I have one brother, I don't have any sister(s).

¹ मिलना *milnā* 'to meet' uses the linking word से *se* 'with' — पिताजी से मिलो *pitājī se milo* 'Meet (with) Father'.

² क्या हाल है? *kyā hāl hai?* 'How's things?' (lit. 'what's the condition?') This is a very common way of asking how someone is — a more colloquial equivalent to तुम कैसे हो? *tum kaise ho?* 'How are you?'

► Some questions for you

आपके कितने भाई हैं ?

āpke kitne bhāī hai?

आपकी कितनी बहिनें हैं ?

āpki kitni bahinē hai?

क्या आपके घर में कोई कुत्ता है ?

kyā āpke ghar mẽ koī kuttā hai?

► Practise what you've learnt

We're going to have another look at the present-tense verbs that we met earlier. Match the subject with the activity:

फलवाला

phalvālā fruit-seller

अध्यापिका

adhyāpikā teacher (female)

लेखक

lekhaḥ writer

दर्ज़ी

darzī tailor

विद्यार्थी

vidyārthī student

ट्रेन

tren train

डाक्टर

dāḥṭar doctor

दुकानदार

dukāndār shopkeeper

किताबें लिखता है ।

kitābē likhtā hai.

कालेज में पढ़ता है ।

kālej mẽ paṛhtā hai.

फल बेचता है ।

phal bectā hai.

मरीज़ों का इलाज करता है ।

marizō kā ilāj kartā hai.

कालेज में पढ़ाती है ।

kālej mẽ paṛhātī hai.

माल बेचता है ।

māl bectā hai.

कपड़े बनाता है ।

kaṇṛe banātā hai.

तेज़ चलती है ।

tez caltī hai.

► 3 You can go

'You can go' is आप जा सकते हैं *āp jā sakte hai*. This features the special verb सकना *saknā* — special because it never stands alone, but always follows the stem of the main verb (here जा *jā* from जाना *jānā* 'to go').

आप मेरी हिन्दी समझ सकते हैं ?

āp merī hindī samajh sakte hai? You can understand my Hindi?

मैं यह काम नहीं कर सकता ।

mai yah kām nahī kar saktā. I can't do this work.

यह कैसे हो सकता है ?

yah kaise ho sakta hai? How can this be?

Now turn these 'I do' sentences into 'I can do' sentences, following this example:

मैं हिन्दी बोलता हूँ ।

mai hindī boltā hū.

I speak Hindi.

मैं हिन्दी बोल सकता हूँ ।

mai hindī bol saktā hū.

I can speak Hindi.

१ हम सिनेमा जाते हैं । *ham sinemā jāte hai.*

२ चाचा जी घर पर रहते हैं । *cācā jī ghar par rahte hai.*

३ मैं अध्यापक से पूछता हूँ । *mai adhyāpak se pūchtā hū.*

४ बच्चे बग़ीचे में खेलते हैं । *bacce baḡīce mẽ khelte hai.*

५ मैं अख़बार पढ़ती हूँ । *mai aḥḥbār paṛhtī hū.*

६ हम बच्चों को सब कुछ बताते हैं । *ham baccō ko sab kuch batāte hai.*

७ तुम शराब नहीं पीते हो । *tum śarāb nahī pīte ho.*

८ वह कुछ नहीं कहता है । *vah kuch nahī kahtā hai.*

► There's nobody in the house

Manoj is talking to Pratap. He thinks they're alone!

मनोज एक सिग्रेट पियो प्रताप ! घर में कोई नहीं है ।

प्रताप नहीं, मैं सिग्रेट नहीं पीता । तुम पी सकते हो ।

मनोज हाँ मैं रोज़ दो-तीन सिग्रेट पीता हूँ ।

प्रताप ये सिग्रेट तुम्हारे हैं ?

मनोज नहीं, ये मेरे बाप के हैं ।

प्रताप उनके सिग्रेट क्यों पीते हो ?

मनोज मेरे पास पैसे नहीं हैं। मैं सिग्रेट नहीं खरीद सकता।
राजू (दूसरे कमरे से) मनोज! ओ मनोज! तुम कहाँ हो?
प्रताप तुम्हारे पिताजी की आवाज़।
 (राजू कमरे में आता है)

राजू अरे, यह क्या? वह तुम्हारे हाथ में क्या है मनोज?

मनोज पिताजी! देखिए, यह प्रताप का सिग्रेट है...

राजू मनोज, बकवास मत कर। प्रताप, तुम जा सकते हो।

मनोज लेकिन ... लेकिन ...

Manoj *ek sigreṭ piyo Pratāp! ghar mẽ koī nahī hai.*

Pratāp *nahī, maī sigreṭ nahī pītā. tum pī sakte ho.*

Manoj *hā maī roz do-tin sigreṭ pītā hū.*

Pratāp *ye sigreṭ tumhāre hai?*

Manoj *nahī, ye mere bāp ke hai.*

Pratāp *unke sigreṭ kyō pite ho?*

Manoj *mere pās paise nahī hai. maī sigreṭ nahī kharid saktā.*

Rājū *(dūsre kamre se) Manoj! O Manoj! tum kahā ho?*

Pratāp *tumhāre pitāji ki āvāz!*

(Rājū kamre mẽ ātā hai)

Rājū *are, yah kyā? vah tumhāre hāth mẽ kyā hai Manoj?*

Manoj *pitāji! dekhie, yah Pratāp kā sigreṭ hai.*

Rājū *Manoj, bakvās mat kar. Pratāp, tum jā sakte ho.*

Manoj *lekin... lekin...*

Manoj Have a cigarette, Pratap! there's no one in the house.

Pratap No, I don't smoke. You can.

Manoj Yes, I smoke two or three cigarettes every day.

Pratap These cigarettes are yours?

Manoj No, they're my dad's.

Pratap Why do you smoke his cigarettes?

Manoj I don't have any money. I can't buy cigarettes.

Raju [from another room] Manoj! Oh Manoj! Where are you?

Pratap Your father's voice!

[Raju comes into the room.]

Raju Hey, what's this? What's that in your hand, Manoj?

Manoj Father! Look, this is Pratap's cigarette...

Raju Manoj, don't talk nonsense. Pratap, you can go.

Manoj But... but...

► True or false?

Are these statements right (सही *sahī* 'correct', सच *sac* 'true') or wrong (गलत *galat*)? Answers below.

- | | सही
<i>sahī</i> | गलत
<i>galat</i> |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| १ प्रताप सिग्रेट पीना चाहता है।
<i>Pratāp sigreṭ pīnā cāhtā hai.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| २ मनोज सोचता है कि राजू घर पर नहीं है।
<i>Manoj soctā hai ki Rājū ghar par nahī hai.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ३ मनोज के पास उसके पिता के सिग्रेट हैं।
<i>Manoj ke pās uske pitā ke sigreṭ hai.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ४ मनोज हमेशा सच बोलता है।
<i>Manoj hamesā sac boltā hai.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ५ राजू के सिग्रेट प्रताप के हाथ में हैं।
<i>Rājū ke sigreṭ Pratāp ke hāth mẽ hai.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ६ राजू कहता है कि दोनों लड़के जा सकते हैं।
<i>Rājū kahtā hai ki donō larke jā sakte hai.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Answers: Only 2 and 3 are true.

4 Let me go!

'Let me go' is मुझको जाने दो *mujhko jāne do*. The sense 'to let, to allow' uses the verb देना *denā*, whose literal meaning is 'to give'; it's like saying 'give me [permission] to go'. As you can see in मुझको जाने दो *mujhko jāne do*, it's used with the infinitive of the main verb. The infinitive ends -e in this construction (here, the infinitive जाना *jānā* changes to oblique जाने *jāne*), and the person who is 'allowed to do' takes को *ko*.

हम बच्चों को खेलने देते हैं।

ham baccō ko khelne dete hai. We let the kids play.

पर हम उनको सड़क पर खेलने नहीं देते ।

par ham unko sarak par khelne nahī dete. But we don't let them play on the road.

हमको सोचने दीजिए ।

hamko socne dijie. Please let us think.

मनोज को बाहर जाने दो ।

Manoj ko bāhar jāne do. Let Manoj go out.

▶ Manoj has a dream

Manoj is dreaming. In this dream, his mother is talking to his father, trying to persuade him to go easy on Manoj and to let him do all the things he wants to do:

मनोज का सपना ।

गीता — “मनोज के बाप, मनोज को सिग्रेट पीने दो, उसको शराब भी पीने दो । वह बहुत अच्छा लड़का है; वह स्कूल में बहुत ध्यान से पढ़ता है । उसको गाड़ी क्यों नहीं चलाने देते हो ? और हाँ, छुट्टियों में उसको अमरीका जाने दो !”



Manoj kā sapnā

Gītā — ‘Manoj ke bāp, Manoj ko sigreṭ pine do, usko śarāb bhī pine do. vah bahut acchā laṛkā hai; vah skūl mẽ bahut dhyān se paṛhtā hai. usko gāṛī kyō nahī calāne dete ho? aur hā, chuṭṭiyō mẽ usko amrikā jāne do!’

Manoj's dream

Geeta — ‘Manoj's father, let Manoj smoke, and let him drink too. He's a very good boy; he studies very hard at school. Why don't you let him drive the car? Oh and yes, let him go to America in the holidays!’

Turning 'I want to' into 'let me'

Here you have to convert the 'I want to' sentences into 'let me' sentences, following the example:

मैं घर जाना चाहता हूँ ।

maī ghar jānā cāhtā hū.

I want to go home.

मुझको घर जाने दीजिए / दो ।

mujhko ghar jāne dijie / do

Let me go home.

१ मैं अमरीका जाना चाहता हूँ ।

maī amrikā jānā cāhtā hū.

२ मैं गाड़ी चलाना चाहती हूँ ।

maī gāṛī calānā cāhtā hū.

३ मैं खाना खाना चाहता हूँ ।

maī khānā khānā cāhtā hū.

४ मैं काम करना चाहती हूँ ।

maī kām karnā cāhtī hū.

५ मैं आपसे बात करना चाहता हूँ ।

maī āpse bāt karnā cāhtā hū.

Continue doing the same with sentences 6–10. These feature people other than 'I', as in this example:

वह सोना चाहता है ।

vah sonā cāhtā hai.

He wants to sleep.

उसको सोने दीजिए / दो ।

usko sone dijie / do

Let him sleep.

६ वह सिग्रेट पीना चाहता है ।

vah sigreṭ pinā cāhtā hai.

७ हम अध्यापक से कुछ कहना चाहते हैं ।

ham adhyāpak se kuch kahnā cāhte hai.

८ वह हिन्दी सीखना चाहती है ।

vah hindī sīkhnā cāhtī hai.

९ बच्चे समोसे खाना चाहते हैं ।

bacce samose khānā cāhte hai.

१० हम यहाँ रहना चाहते हैं ।

ham yahā rahnā cāhte hai.

Repeating formulas like this is a very efficient way of learning new expressions. Say them over and over again, out loud. And try making up new examples, choosing any new verbs from the glossary.

Exercise 6a Answer these questions about occupations:

- १ फलवाला क्या बेचता है ? *phalvālā kyā bectā hai?*
- २ अखबारवाला क्या बेचता है ? *akhbārvalā kyā bectā hai?*
- ३ दूधवाला क्या बेचता है ? *dūdhvālā kyā bectā hai?*
- ४ अध्यापक क्या करता है ? *adhyāpak kyā kartā hai?*
- ५ स्कूल में बच्चे क्या करते हैं ? *skūl mē bacce kyā karte hai?*
- ६ घर पर बच्चे क्या करते हैं ? *ghar par bacce kyā karte hai?*
- ७ ड्राइवर क्या करता है ? *drāivar kyā kartā hai?*
- ८ दुकानदार क्या करता है ? *dukāndār kyā kartā hai?*

Exercise 6b Answer these questions addressed to you:

- ९ आप कहाँ रहते हैं / रहती हैं ?
āp kahā rahte hai / rahti hai?
- १० आप क्या काम करते हैं / करती हैं ?
āp kyā kām karte hai / karti hai?
- ११ क्या आप सितार बजाते हैं / बजाती हैं ?
kyā āp sitār bajāte hai / bajāti hai?
- १२ आप कौनसा अखबार पढ़ते / पढ़ती हैं ?
āp kaunsā akhbār parhte hai / parhti hai?
- १३ आप कितनी भाषाएँ बोलते हैं / बोलती हैं ?
āp kitni bhāṣāḥ bolte hai / bolti hai?

Exercise 6c Translate the following:

- 14 Jagdish reads Manoj's newspaper.
- 15 My two brothers work in a big office.
- 16 My sister drives my brother's car.
- 17 He only speaks Hindi, he doesn't speak English.
- 18 Our teachers teach three languages.
- 19 His children play cricket in the garden.

- 20 Our parents don't eat meat.
- 21 Where do you work? Where do you live?
- 22 What does your younger ('little') brother do?
- 23 How many languages does your mother speak?

Glossary

अखबार *akhbār* m. newspaper

अखबारवाला *akhbārvalā* m.

newspaper seller

अध्यापिका *adhyāpikā* f. teacher

आवाज़ *āvāz* f. voice; sound

इलाज *ilāj* m. cure, treatment

उम्र *umra, umar* f. age

ओ *o* oh!

का-की-के *kā-kī-ke* (shows

possession, like English 's)

कोई *koī* any, some; somebody;

कोई नहीं *koī nahī* nobody

किसी *kisī* oblique of कोई *koī*

क्रिकेट *krikeṭ* m. cricket

खरीदना *kharīdnā* to buy

खेलना *khelnā* to play (a game)

ट्रेन *tren* f. train

ड्राइवर *drāivar* m. driver

दर्जी *darzī* m. tailor

दादा *dādā* m. grandfather

(father's father)

दादी *dādī* f. grandmother

(father's mother)

दुकानदार *dukāndār* m.

shopkeeper

दूध *dūdh* m. milk

दूधवाला *dūdhvālā* m. milkman

देना *denā* to give; to allow to,

let (with oblique infinitive:

हमको जाने दो *hamko jāne do*

'Let us go')

बकवास *bakvās* f. nonsense, idle

chatter

बच्चा *baccā* m. child

बाप *bāp* m. dad

बेचना *becnā* to sell

भाषा *bhāṣā* f. language

मरीज़ *mariz* m. patient

माँ *mā* f. mother; माँ-बाप *mā-*

bāp m. pl. parents

माल *māl* m. goods, stuff

रोज़ *roz* every day

लिखना *likhnā* to write

लेखक *lekhak* m. writer

सकना *saknā* to be able (with

verb stem: तुम जा सकते हो

tum jā sakte ho 'You can

go')

सच *sac* m. truth; adj. true

सड़क *ṣarak* f. road, street

सपना *sapnā* m. dream; सपना

देखना *sapnā dekhnā* to

dream, to have a dream

साल *sāl* m. year

सोचना *socnā* to think

सोना *sonā* to sleep

हाल *hāl* m. condition, state (in

क्या हाल है ? *kyā hāl hai?*

'How's things? How are

you?')

► 1 In the past

So far, we've been working in the present all the time. Moving into the past is very easy. It involves these words from the verb 'to be':

	was	were
MASCULINE	था <i>thā</i>	थे <i>the</i>
FEMININE	थी <i>thī</i>	थीं <i>thī̃</i>

We can use this tense in two ways. Firstly, here's 'was/were' alone:

कल सोमवार था ।

kal somvār thā. Yesterday was Monday.

कल आप घर पर थे ।

kal āp ghar par the. Yesterday you were at home.

कल वह बीमार थी ।

kal vah bimār thī. Yesterday she was ill.

कल प्रीति जी कहाँ थीं ?

kal Priti jī kahā thī̃? Where was Priti ji yesterday?

Unlike है *hai* and हैं *haĩ*, था-थे-थी-थीं *thā-the-thī-thī̃* distinguish gender as well as number, so we know that the second sentence above refers to males (or one male, honorific plural), and the third to a female.

The second use is in the 'imperfective' tense used for routine actions, and introduced in section 4.3. Simply changing है *hai* to था *thā* converts present into past — 'I used to...'

PRESENT	PAST
मैं यहाँ रहता हूँ ।	मैं यहाँ रहता था ।
<i>mai yahā rahtā hū̃.</i>	<i>mai yahā rahtā thā.</i>
I live here.	I used to live here.

दादा जी वाराणसी में रहते थे ।

dādā jī vārāṇasī mẽ rahte the. Grandpa used to live in Varanasi.

वे एक दुकान में काम करते थे ।

ve ek dukān mẽ kām karte the. He used to work in a shop.

In this unit you will learn

- how to talk about memories and routine events in the past
- how to add nuance to what you say

Language points

- past imperfective tenses
- direct objects
- use of emphatics

07

भूत-काल

bhūt-kāl

the past

उनकी बहिनें घर में खेलती थीं ।

unkī bahinē ghar mẽ kheltī thī. His sisters used to play at home.

उनके भाई स्कूल जाते थे ।

unke bhāi skūl jāte the. His brothers used to go to school.

वे बहुत ध्यान से पढ़ते थे ।

ve bahut dhyān se p̄ṛhte the. They used to study very hard.

▶ Memories of Varanasi

Jagdish Sharma is in nostalgic mood and has begun writing some memories of his childhood. There are notes to help you follow what he's written, and later there'll be some questions for you to answer.

किनारा *kinārā* m. bank, edge

ज़माना *zamānā* m. period, time

कमी *kamī* f. lack, shortage

आँगन *āgan* m. courtyard

नदी *nadī* f. river

शाम *śām* f. evening

नाव *nāv* f. boat

सैर *sair* f. trip

याद *yād* f. memory

ठंडा *ṭhaṇḍā* cold; ठंडा-सा

ṭhaṇḍā-sā coldish

हवा *havā* f. air, breeze

चलना *calnā* to move, blow, flow

छत *chat* f. roof

हम लोग¹ वाराणसी में रहते थे । हमारा घर गंगा² के किनारे पर था । बड़ा-सा³ घर था । हम तीन भाई थे, और चार बहिनें । हम तीनों⁴ लड़के स्कूल जाते थे; लड़कियाँ घर पर रहती थीं । उस ज़माने में बहुत कम लड़कियाँ स्कूल जाती थीं । पैसे की कमी थी, और लोग यह सोचते थे कि औरतों की जगह घर में है ।

पिताजी स्कूल में पढ़ाते थे — लेकिन हमारे स्कूल में नहीं । उनका स्कूल हमारे घर से काफी दूर था । वे साइकिल से स्कूल जाते थे । सब लोग उनको “मास्टर जी”⁵ कहते थे । हम उनको “पापा” कहते थे और माताजी को “माँ” कहते थे ।⁶

कितना सुंदर मकान था हमारा ! कोई बगीचा नहीं था, लेकिन हम बच्चे लोग आँगन में खूब खेलते थे । कभी कभी हम सड़कों पर या नदी के किनारे पर भी खेलते थे । शाम को हम नदी पर नाव में सैर करते थे । ठंडी-सी हवा चलती थी । रात को हम छत पर सोते थे । मुझको उन दिनों की यादें बहुत आती हैं ।⁷



ham log¹ vārāṇasī mẽ rahte the. hamārā ghar gangā² ke kināre par thā. baṛā-sa³ ghar thā. ham tīn bhāi the, aur cār bahinē. ham tīnō⁴ larke skūl jāte the; larḳiyā ghar par rahtī thī. us zamāne mẽ bahut kam larḳiyā skūl jāti thī. paise kī kamī thī, aur log yah socte the ki auratō kī jagah ghar mẽ hai.

pītājī skūl mẽ p̄ṛhāte the — lekin hamāre skūl mẽ nahī. unkā skūl hamāre ghar se kāfī dūr thā. ve sāikil se skūl jāte the. sab log unko ‘māṣṭar jī’⁵ kahte the. ham unko ‘pāpā’ kahte the aur mātājī ko ‘mā’ kahte the.⁶

kitnā suṇḍar makān thā hamārā! koī bagīcā nahī thā, lekin ham bacce log āgan mẽ khūb khelte the. kabhī kabhī ham sarakō par yā nadī ke kināre par bhī khelte the. śām ko ham nadī par nāv mẽ sair karte the. ṭhaṇḍī-sī havā caltī thī. rāt ko ham chat par sote the. mujhko un dinō kī yādē bahut atī hai.⁷

We used to live in Varanasi. Our house was on the bank of the Ganges. It was a biggish house. We were three brothers and four sisters. All three of us boys used to go to school; the girls used to stay at home. In those days very few girls went to school. Money was short, and people used to think that women's place was in the home.

Father taught in a school — but not in our school. His school was quite far from our house. He used to go to school by bicycle. Everyone called him ‘Master ji’. We called him ‘Papa’ and we called mother ‘Ma’.

What a beautiful house we had! There wasn't a garden, but we children used to play to our hearts' content in the courtyard. Sometimes we would play on the roads or on the riverbank. In the evening we used to take a ride in a boat on the river. A cool breeze would blow. At night we used to sleep on the roof. I think of those days a lot.

Notes

- हम लोग *ham log* 'we, we people, we guys' — the word लोग *log* can indicate a group; compare बच्चे लोग *bacche log* 'the children, the kids'.
- गंगा *gangā* — like all rivers (and the word for 'river', नदी *nadī*), the Ganges is feminine.
- The suffix -सा -सी -से *-sā -sī -se* is similar to '-ish' in English: बड़ा-सा घर *barā-sā ghar* 'a biggish house', अच्छी-सी गाड़ी *acchī-sī gārī* 'quite a good car', अच्छे-से लोग *acche-se log* 'quite decent people'.
- तीनों *tīnō* — 'all three'; this is a special 'inclusive' use of the oblique plural. Compare दोनों *donō* 'both', चारों *cārō* 'all four'.
- 'Master ji' is a title used for schoolmasters (and for tailors — masters of their craft).
- When a plural subject comprises both males and females, as here, the verb is masculine.
- Literally 'memories of those days come to me a lot' — a typical मुझको *mujhko* expression.

► Some question about Jagdish's memories

- जगदीश जी किस शहर में रहते थे ?
Jagdis ji kis shahar me rahte the?
- उनके परिवार में कितने बच्चे थे ?
unke parivar me kitne bacche the?
- क्या उनकी बहिनें स्कूल जाना नहीं चाहती थीं ?
kyā unki bahinē skūl jānā nahī चाहती थीं?
- जगदीश के पिता का स्कूल कहाँ था ?
Jagdis ke pitā kā skūl kahā thā?
- क्या जगदीश के पिता जी पैदल स्कूल जाते थे ?
kyā Jagdis ke pitā jī paidal skūl jāte the?

Did you know?

Modern Hindi has developed within the last 200 years or so on the basis of a dialect called Khari Boli (खड़ी बोली), whose original home is the region around Delhi. Many other dialects are still spoken within the 'Hindi belt' of northern India; two of them, Braj Bhasha (ब्रजभाषा) and Awadhi (अवधी), were important literary languages between about AD 1500 and 1850, and poetry from this period is still well-loved today.

2 Getting specific

The word को *ko* means 'to':

यह खत गीता को दो ।

yah khat Gītā ko do. Give this letter to Geeta.

टिकट मुझको दीजिए ।

ṭikaṭ mujhko dijīe. Please give the ticket to me.

हम बच्चों को पैसे देते हैं ।

ham baccō ko paise dete hāi. We give money to the children.

In these sentences the 'thing given' (e.g. the letter) is the direct object and the recipient (e.g. Geeta) is the indirect object. It's the recipient who is marked with को *ko*.

Usually, को *ko* isn't needed at all with a direct object. In the following, the direct objects are फल *phal* 'fruit' and पानी *pānī* 'water' respectively:

फल खाओ, पानी पियो ।

phal khāo, pānī piyo. Eat fruit, drink water.

The meaning here is a general one — 'any fruit, any water'. But if a more specific fruit/water is meant, को *ko* is added (and 'the' is used in English):

फल को खाओ, पानी को पियो ।

phal ko khāo, pānī ko piyo. Eat the fruit, drink the water.

The contrast between having को *ko* and not having it isn't always this clearcut: but in general को *ko* tends to be added to an object that's in some way specific or individualized. For this reason, references to people (and other specific creatures such as animals!) normally do take को *ko* —

बच्चों को घर में बुलाओ ।

baccō ko ghar mē bulāo. Call the children inside the house.

मोती को मत मारो !

Motī ko mat māro! Don't hit Moti!

उन लोगों को देखो !

Un logō ko dekho! Look at those people!

Marking an object with को *ko* doesn't necessarily change the meaning much at all. The two sentences यह खत पढ़ो *yah khat parho* and इस खत को पढ़ो *is khat ko parho* both translate as 'read this letter', even though the second version suggests a greater focus on the individual letter (and maybe a closer scrutiny of it also).

3 A shortcut

The word को *ko* is a multi-purpose tool; we saw some of its uses in Unit 5. Whereas English expressions about a person tend to have that person as the grammatical subject (as if individuals were the centre of the universe of experience), Hindi prefers to have the *experience itself* as the subject:

आपको बुखार है ।

āpko bukhār hai. You have a fever.

तुमको जुकाम है ।

tumko zukām hai. You have a cold.

मुझको मालूम है कि आपको क्या चाहिए।

mujhko mālūm hai ki āpko kyā cāhie I know what you need.

किसको मालूम है कि यह क्या है ?

kisko mālūm hai ki yah kyā hai? Who knows what this is?

उनको नए जूते चाहिए ।

unko nae jūte cāhie. They need new shoes.

हमको यह तस्वीर पसंद है ।

hamko yah tasvīr pasand hai. We like this picture.

मुझको लिखने का शौक है ।

mujhko likhne kā śauq hai. I'm fond of writing

उनको संगीत का शौक है ।

unko sangīt kā śauq hai. They are keen on music.

This type of construction, with its heavy reliance on को *ko*, is so common that the 'pronoun + को *ko*' combination has an alternative short form: for example, मुझको *mujhko* has the alternative मुझे *mujhe*. Only आपको *āpko* refuses to be shortened. These pairs of forms are completely interchangeable: it makes no difference at all which member of a pair you choose to use.

मुझको *mujhko* = मुझे *mujhe*

हमको *hamko* = हमें *hamē*

तुझको *tujhko* = तुझे *tujhe*

तुमको *tumko* = तुम्हें *tumhē*

इसको *isko* = इसे *ise*

इनको *inko* = इन्हें *inhē*

उसको *usko* = उसे *use*

उनको *unko* = उन्हें *unhē*

किसको *kisko* = किसे *kise*

किनको *kinko* = किन्हें *kinhē*

Remember that किस *kis* (singular) and किन *kin* (plural) are the oblique forms of कौन *kaun* 'who' and क्या *kyā* 'what':

किसे मालूम है कि राम कहाँ है ?

kise mālūm hai ki Rām kahā hai? Who knows where Ram is?

तुम पत्र किन्हें लिखते हो?

tum patr kinhē likhte ho? To whom [plural] do you write letters?

The main point to bear in mind here is that many expressions in Hindi are based on a मुझको *mujhko* pattern rather than a मैं *mai* pattern. You need to develop the skill of using both types of sentences, switching freely between one and the other. For example, these two sentences have the same meaning:

मुझे मालूम है कि वह कौन है ।

mujhe mālūm hai ki vah kaun hai. I know who he is.

मैं जानता हूँ कि वह कौन है ।

mai jāntā hū ki vah kaun hai. I know who he is.

When getting to grips with the मुझको *mujhko* pattern, think of the individual as being subjected to the effects of experiences from the world around him or her:

मुझे हिन्दी आती है ।
mujhe hindī ātī hai.

मुझे मालूम है कि तुम कौन हो ।
mujhe mālūm hai ki tum kaun ho.



मुझे तुम्हारा चेहरा बहुत पसंद है !
mujhe tumhārā cehrā bahut pasand hai!

मुझे गाने का बहुत शौक है ।
mujhe gāne kā bahut śauq hai.

▶ Raju recalls some childhood experiences

While reading this passage, look out for two things in particular: 'used to' verbs describing habitual things in the past, and the numerous constructions using को *ko*.

बचपन में मुझे पत्र लिखने का बहुत शौक था । कभी कभी मैं प्रधान मंत्री को भी पत्र लिखता था । मुझे मालूम नहीं था कि उन्हें मेरे पत्र पसंद थे कि नहीं, क्योंकि वे जवाब नहीं देते थे । एक समय मेरा छोटा भाई कई महीनों तक बीमार था । उसे बहुत बुखार था इसलिए हमें बहुत चिंता थी । मुझको मालूम था कि उसे दवा की ज़रूरत थी लेकिन हमारे पास पैसे कहाँ थे । लोग कहते थे कि प्रधान मंत्री बहुत दयालु आदमी हैं । इस लिए . . .

आदरणीय प्रधान मंत्री जी ।

सादर नमस्ते । मुझे मालूम है कि आपको बहुत काम है लेकिन हमें बहुत चिंता है क्योंकि मेरे छोटे भाई को बुखार है । हमारे पास पैसे नहीं हैं । क्या आप कुछ कर सकते हैं ? हमको आप पर पूरा भरोसा है ।

शुभकामनाओं सहित

आपका राजकुमार शर्मा

bacpan mẽ mujhe patr likhne kā bahut śauq thā. kabhī kabhī maī pradhān mantrī ko bhī patr likhtā thā. mujhe mālūm nahī thā ki unhē mere patr pasand the ki nahī, kyōki ve javāb nahī dete the. ek samay merā choṭā bhāī kā mahinō tak bimār thā. use bahut bukhār thā islie hamē bahut cintā thī. mujhko mālūm thā ki use davā kī zarūrat thī lekin hamāre pās paise kahā the. log kahte the ki pradhān mantrī bahut dayālu admī haī. is lie...

ādarāṇīy pradhān mantrī jī,

sādar namaste. mujhe mālūm hai ki āpko bahut kām hai lekin hamē bahut cintā hai kyōki mere choṭe bhāī ko bukhār hai. hamāre pās paise nahī haī. kyā āp kuch kar sakte haī? hamko āp par pūrā bharosā hai.

śubhkāmnāō sahī

āpkā Rāj Kumār Śarmā.

In childhood I was very fond of writing letters. Sometimes I would even write letters to the Prime Minister. I didn't know if he liked my letters or not, because he used not to reply. One time my younger brother was ill for several months. He had a high fever and so we were very worried. I knew that he needed medicine but we didn't have the money [literally 'where was the money?']. People used to say that the Prime Minister was a very kindly man. So...

Dear [literally 'respected'] Prime Minister ji,

Respectful greetings. I know that you have a lot of work but we are very anxious because my younger brother has fever. We don't have any money. Can you do something? We have full trust in you.

With best wishes, yours, Rajkumar Sharma.

See Unit 8 for the Prime Minister's reply!

4 Adding emphasis

Three little words can add various kinds of subtle emphasis to a Hindi sentence. We have already met भी *bhī* 'also, even', and we saw how fussy it was about its position in the word order (see 3.2). We now add the other two — ही *hī* 'only' etc., and तो *to* 'as for...'. All three follow the words or phrases that they emphasize, but they are *not* postpositions (see 3.2), so they don't involve any change of case.

Firstly, भी *bhī* means 'also', 'even', etc.; it gives an *inclusive* emphasis. Look out for the effect of भी *bhī* in these sentences:

अजय पतला है; वह लंबा भी है ।

Ajay patlā hai; vah lambā bhī hai. Ajay is thin; he's tall too.

अजय पतला है; विजय भी पतला है ।

Ajay patlā hai; Vijay bhī patlā hai. Ajay is thin; Vijay is thin too.

In the first sentence, भी *bhī* emphasizes लंबा *lambā*; in the second it emphasizes the name विजय *Vijay*. Where does the emphasis fall in the following?

मुझे बुखार है । मुझे जुकाम भी है ।

mujhe bukhār hai. mujhe zukām bhī hai. I've got a fever. I've got a cold too.

मुझे बुखार है । तुम्हें भी बुखार है ।

mujhe bukhār hai. tumhē bhī bukhār hai. I've got a fever.

You've got a fever too.

Yes, it's on जुकाम *zukām* and तुम्हें *tumhē* respectively. So you see again how sensitive the position of भी *bhī* is. The same applies with our second emphatic word, ही *hī*, which means 'only', or stresses what's just been said; it gives an *exclusive* emphasis.

मैं चाय ही पीता हूँ ।

maī cāy hī pitā hū. I only drink tea (nothing but tea).

मैं ही चाय पीता हूँ ।

maī hī cāy pitā hū. Only I drink tea (or 'I drink tea').

यह चाय बहुत ही अच्छी है !

yah cāy bahut hī acchī hai! This tea is really good!

Thirdly: तो *to* emphasizes one thing by implying a contrast to another; this *contrastive* emphasis may be 'explicit', in the sense that it can name both parts of the contrast:

अजय तो ठीक है, पर विजय थोड़ा पागल है ।

Ajay to thīk hai, par Vijay thora pāgal hai. Ajay's OK, but Vijay's a bit crazy.

...or it may be merely implied, leaving a 'but...' hanging in the air:

अजय तो ठीक है ।

Ajay to thīk hai. Ajay's OK (implication: 'but that other guy...').

कमीज़ तो काफ़ी सुंदर है ।

qamiz to kāfi sundar hai. The shirt's quite nice (implication: 'but the jacket's a nightmare!').

कमीज़ सुंदर तो है ।

qamiz sundar to hai. The shirt is quite nice (implication: 'but have you seen the price ticket?').

Finally, notice how ही *hī* merges with certain words:

यह <i>yah</i>	यही <i>yahī</i>	this very one, the same one
इस <i>is</i>	इसी <i>isī</i>	this very one, the same one
वह <i>vah</i>	वही <i>vahī</i>	that very one, the same one
उस <i>us</i>	उसी <i>usī</i>	that very one, the same one
यहाँ <i>yahā</i>	यहीं <i>yahī</i>	right here, in this very place
वहाँ <i>vahā</i>	वहीं <i>vahī</i>	right there, in that very place

For now, it's enough to get a general understanding of how these emphatic words operate: they'll gradually become more familiar.

Exercise 7a Convert the sentences in Exercise 6c into the past tense (e.g. 'Jagdish used to read Manoj's newspaper') and translate into Hindi.

Exercise 7b Translate the following, bringing out the emphasis given by तो *to* and ही *hī*.

- ११ जगदीश जी के परिवार में लड़के ही स्कूल जाते थे ।
Jagdis̄ jī ke parivār mē larke hī skūl jāte the.
- १२ उनका स्कूल उनके घर से बहुत ही दूर था ।
unkā skūl unke ghar se bahut hī dūr thā.
- १३ स्कूल में बच्चे ही नहीं, सब लोग उन्हें "मास्टर जी" कहते थे ।
skūl mē bacche hī nahī, sab log unhē 'māstar jī' kahte the.
- १४ उनकी नौकरी में तनख्वाह तो बहुत अच्छी नहीं थी ।
unkī naukari mē tankhvāh to bahut acchī nahī thī.
- १५ जगदीश की माँ हिन्दी ही बोलती थीं ।
Jagdis̄ kī mā̄ hindī hī boltī thī.
- १६ उस ज़माने में बच्चे तो बहुत खुश थे ।
us zamāne mē bacche to bahut khush the.
- १७ बगीचा तो नहीं था, लेकिन खेलने की जगहें बहुत थीं ।
bagīcā to nahī thā, lekin khelne kī jagahē bahut thī.
- १८ बच्चे लोग तो छत पर ही सोते थे ।
bacche log to chat par hī sote the.
- १९ बचपन में तो राजू को पत्र लिखने का शौक था ।
bacpan mē to Rājū ko patr likhne kā śauq thā.
- २० प्रधान मंत्री दयालु तो थे लेकिन उन्हें बहुत काम होता था ।
pradhān mantrī dayālu to the lekin unhē bahut kām hotā thā.

Exercise 7c Write a passage of 100 words or so about childhood memories — yours or imagined ones. Try to use a wide range of vocabulary and constructions; remember that you can always supplement your vocabulary from the glossaries at the back of the book.

अंग्रेज़ी *āgrezī* f. English (language); and adj.
 आँगन *āgan* m. courtyard
 आदरणीय *ādaraṇīy* 'respected' (used for 'Dear...' in formal correspondence)
 इसलिए *islie* so, because of this
 कमी *kamī* f. lack, shortage
 किनारा *kinārā* m. bank, edge
 खूब *khūb* a lot, freely
 गंगा *gangā* f. Ganges
 गरमी *garmī* f. heat; गरमियाँ *garmiyā* f. pl. summer
 चलना *calnā* to move, blow, flow
 चिंता *cintā* f. anxiety
 चेहरा *cehrā* m. face
 छत *chat* f. roof
 ज़माना *zamānā* m. period, time
 ज़रूरत *zarūrat* f. need
 जवाब *javāb* m. answer, reply; जवाब देना *javāb denā* to reply
 जानना *jānnā* to know
 ज़िंदगी *zindagī* f. life
 टिकट *ṭikaṭ* f./m. ticket; stamp
 ठंडा *ṭhaṇḍā* cold
 तनख्वाह *tankhvāh*, तनज़ाह *tankhāh* f. pay, wages
 तो *to* as for...
 थोड़ा *thorā* (a) little
 दयालु *dayālu* compassionate, kind

दवा *davā* f. medicine
 नदी *nadī* f. river
 नाव *nāv* f. boat
 नौकरी *naukarī* f. job, employment
 पत्र *patr* m. letter (correspondence)
 पसंद आना *pasand ānā* to appeal to, to be liked
 पागल *pāgal* mad, crazy
 पापा *pāpā* m. papa, father
 पैदल *paidal* on foot
 प्रधान मंत्री *pradhān mantrī* m. prime minister
 बचपन *bacpan* m. childhood
 भरोसा *bharosā* m. trust, reliance
 महीना *mahinā* m. month
 मारना *mārṇā* to hit, beat, strike
 मेहनत *mehnat* f. hard work
 मेहनती *mehntī* hard-working
 याद *yād* f. memory
 शाम *sām* f. evening
 शुभकामना *śubhkāmnā* f. good wish
 शौक *śauq* m. liking, hobby, interest
 सहित *sahit* with (formal)
 सादर *sādar* respectful
 सैर *sair* f. trip
 हवा *havā* f. air, breeze
 ही *hī* only (emphatic)

1 Comparisons: bigger and smaller

English has two main ways of showing comparisons, firstly as in 'harder' (using an '-er' comparative word) and secondly as in 'more difficult' (using 'more' with the ordinary adjective). Hindi prefers this second type. The word for 'more' is ज़्यादा *zyādā* or और *aur*.

यह होटल ज़्यादा/और अच्छा है ।

yah hoṭal zyādā/aur acchā hai. This hotel is better.

वह होटल ज़्यादा/और महँगा है ।

vah hoṭal zyādā/aur mahāgā hai. That hotel is more expensive.

When comparing one thing directly to another, the word से *se* 'than' is used, and the ज़्यादा/और *zyādā/aur* can be dropped:

दिल्ली आगरे से बड़ी है ।

dillī āgre se barī hai. Delhi is bigger than Agra.

आगरा दिल्ली से छोटा है ।

āgrā dillī se choṭā hai. Agra is smaller than Delhi.

'Less' is कम *kam* —

यह कमरा कम अच्छा है ।

yah kamrā kam acchā hai. This room is less good.

यह किताब (उस किताब से) कम अच्छी है ।

yah kitāb (us kitāb se) kam acchī hai. This book is less good (than that book).

वह होटल (ताज से) कम महँगा है ।

vah hoṭal (tāj se) kam mahāgā hai. That hotel is less pricey (than the Taj).

Superlatives follow the model of सबसे अच्छा *sabse acchā* 'best of all':

यही दवा सबसे अच्छी है ।

yahī davā sabse acchī hai. This medicine is the best.

मनोज सबसे बड़ा लड़का है ।

Manoj sabse barā larḳā hai. Manoj is the biggest/eldest boy.

राम सबसे छोटा लड़का है ।

Rām sabse choṭā larḳā hai. Ram is the smallest/youngest boy.

08

ā

h

k

क्या हो रहा है ?

In this unit you will learn

- how to make comparisons
- a tense for describing what's going on right now
- how to say *how* things happen

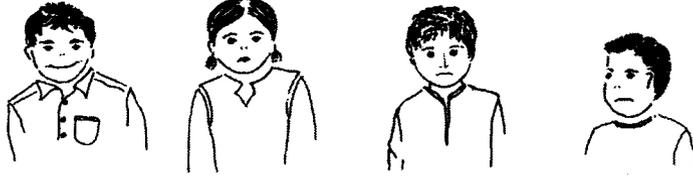
Language points

- comparatives and superlatives
- continuous tenses
- adverbs and postpositions

what's happening?

Four children

Answer the questions about these four siblings, shown in age order (Shiv is the eldest).



शिव m.
Śiv

रीता f.
Rītā

ओम m.
Om

शंकर m.
Śankar

- १ क्या ओम शंकर से बड़ा है ?
kyā Om Śankar se barā hai?
- २ कितने बच्चे रीता से छोटे हैं ?
kitne bacce Rītā se choṭe hai?
- ३ सबसे बड़ा लड़का कौन है ?
sabse barā larḳā kaun hai?
- ४ सबसे छोटा लड़का कौन है ?
sabse choṭā larḳā kaun hai?
- ५ ओम कितने बच्चों से बड़ा है ?
Om kitne baccō se barā hai?
- ६ क्या रीता शिव से बड़ी है ?
kyā Rītā Śiv se barī hai?
- ७ क्या रीता ओम से छोटी है ?
kyā Rītā Om se choṭī hai?
- ८ क्या रीता शंकर से छोटी है ?
kyā Rītā Śankar se choṭī hai?
- ९ आपको किस बच्चे की तस्वीर सबसे ज़्यादा पसंद है ?
āpko kis bacce kī tasvīr sabse zyādā pasand hai?

2 Continuous tense: '-ing' verbs

'I speak Hindi' (मैं हिन्दी बोलता हूँ *māi hindī boltā hū*) describes something that's done regularly or habitually; but 'I am speaking Hindi' describes something that's going on *at the time*. In Hindi, the '-ing' sense is conveyed like this:

मैं हिन्दी बोल रहा हूँ ।

māi hindī bol rahā hū. I am speaking Hindi.

मैं हिन्दी बोल रहा था ।

māi hindī bol rahā thā. I was speaking Hindi.

This is called the 'continuous' tense. It has three elements:

- A the verb stem बोल *bol* (or सीख *sīkh*, कर *kar*, लिख *likh*, कह *kah* etc.) supplies the basic meaning;
- B रहा-रही-रहे *rahā-rahī-rahe* delivers the '-ing' aspect;
- C the auxiliary verb 'to be' (हूँ *hū*, है *hai*, था *thā* etc.) confirms the timeframe, i.e. past or present.

Some more examples:

वह रो रही है ।

vah ro rahī hai. She is crying.

पिताजी क्यों मुस्करा रहे हैं ?

pitāji kyō muskarā rahe hai? Why is Father smiling?

तुम क्यों हँस रहे हो ?

tum kyō hās rahe ho? Why are you laughing?

मेरी बहिन कोई हिन्दी फ़िल्म देख रही थी ।

merī bahin koi hindī film dekh rahī thī. My sister was watching some Hindi film.

क्या तुम तमिल सीख रहे हो ?

kyā tum tamil sikh rahe ho? Are you learning Tamil?

दादी जी गुजराती में कुछ पत्र लिख रही थीं ।

dādi jī gujarātī mē kuch patr likh rahī thī. Grandma was writing some letters in Gujarati.

▶ Geeta phones home

Listen in on a phone conversation between Geeta and Raju with lots of verbs in the continuous tense. Here's the new vocabulary:

सहेली <i>saheli</i> f. girl's or woman's female friend	रात का खाना <i>rāt kā khānā</i> m. dinner
के साथ <i>ke sāth</i> with, in the company of	मदद <i>madad</i> f. help
कब <i>kab</i> when?	आज रात (को) <i>āj rāt (ko)</i> tonight
देर <i>der</i> f. a while, period of time	लाना <i>lānā</i> to bring
	बाप रे बाप <i>bāp re bāp</i> Oh God!

- गीता हलो राजू, मैं गीता बोल रही हूँ ।¹
 राजू कहाँ से बोल रही हो ?²
 गीता ताज होटल से ।
 राजू तुम क्या कर रही हो वहाँ ?
 गीता मैं कुछ सहेलियों के साथ चाय पी रही हूँ !
 राजू बच्चे क्या कर रहे हैं ?
 गीता वे तो यहाँ बगीचे में खेल रहे हैं ।
 राजू तो क्या मनोज भी खेल रहा है ?
 गीता नहीं, वह किसी लड़की से बात कर रहा है ।
 राजू ओहो ! तुम लोग घर कब आ रहे हो ?³
 गीता हम अभी आ रहे हैं, थोड़ी देर में । क्यों ?
 राजू क्योंकि मैं रात का खाना बना रहा हूँ । मुझे मदद चाहिए ।
 गीता क्यों ? आज रात को कोई आ रहा है ?
 राजू हाँ, जावेद आ रहा है । उसके कुछ दोस्त⁴ भी आ रहे हैं ।
 गीता बाप रे बाप ! अच्छा, मैं अभी आती हूँ ।
 राजू वहाँ ताज में ज़्यादा पैसा मत खर्च करना !

<i>Gītā</i>	<i>halo Rājū, maī Gītā bol rahī hū̃.</i> ¹
<i>Rājū</i>	<i>kahā se bol rahī ho?</i> ²
<i>Gītā</i>	<i>tāj hoṭal se.</i>
<i>Rājū</i>	<i>tum kyā kar rahī ho vahā?</i>
<i>Gītā</i>	<i>maī kuch saheliyō ke sāth cāy pī rahī hū̃!</i>

- Rājū* *bacce kyā kar rahe hāi?*
Gītā *ve to yahā bagīce mē khel rahe hāi.*
Rājū *to kyā Manoj bhī khel rahā hai?*
Gītā *nahī, vah kisī laṛkī se bāt kar rahā hai.*
Rājū *oho! tum log ghar kab ā rahe ho?*³
Gītā *ham abhī ā rahe hāi, thoṛī der mē. kyō?*
Rājū *kyōki maī rāt kā khānā banā rahā hū̃. mujhe madad cāhie.*
Gītā *kyō? āj rāt ko koī ā rahā hai?*
Rājū *hā, Jāved ā rahā hai. uske kuch dost⁴ bhī ā rahe hāi.*
Gītā *bāp re bāp! acchā, maī abhī ātī hū̃.*
Rājū *vahā tāj mē zyādā paisā mat kharc karnā!*

- Geeta** Hello, Raju, this is Geeta speaking.
Raju Where are you speaking from?
Geeta From the Taj Hotel.
Raju What are you doing there?
Geeta I'm having tea with some friends!
Raju What are the children doing?
Geeta They're playing in the garden here.
Raju So is Manoj playing too?
Geeta No, he's talking to some girl.
Raju Oho! When are you all coming home?
Geeta We're just coming in a little while. Why?
Raju Because I'm making dinner. I need help.
Geeta Why? Is someone coming tonight?
Raju Yes, Javed's coming. Some of his friends are coming too.
Geeta Oh my God! OK, I'm just coming.
Raju Don't spend too much money there in the Taj!

1 This is the usual way of announcing yourself on the phone — 'I Geeta am speaking', i.e. 'This is Geeta'.

2 Remember that a pronoun (here तुम *tum*) can be dropped when context makes it clear who is meant.

3 The continuous tense can be used for the immediate future (as in English) — 'when are you coming home?'.

4 उसके कुछ दोस्त *uske kuch dost* — 'some friends of his'. Note the word order.

Practise what you've learnt

Look at each picture below, then choose a verb from the list to describe who's doing what. Here's the first answer to show you the format: 1. जावेद पत्र लिख रहा है *Jāved patr likh rahā hai* 'Javed is writing a letter.' Keep an eye on gender and number!

खाना तैयार करना *khānā taiyār karnā* to prepare food

शराब पीना *śarāb pinā* to drink (alcohol)

ताश खेलना *tās khelnā* to play cards

पत्र लिखना *patr likhnā* to write a letter

दौड़ना *daurnā* to run

बरतन माँजना *bartan mājnā* to wash dishes

सोना *sonā* to sleep

फोन पर बात करना *fon par bāt karnā* to talk on the phone



जावेद
Jāved



दो लड़कियाँ
do lar̥kiyā̃



कोई आदमी
koī ādmī



कुत्ता
kuttā



सीता
Sītā



गीता और राजू
Gītā aur Rājū



राम
Rām



उषा
Uṣā

The verbs we've met so far

Now that we're more than halfway through the book, here's a summary of all the verb forms we've seen so far, listed by unit and section. Our example verb here is बोलना *bolnā* 'to speak'.

	GRAMMAR	EXAMPLES
1.2	होना <i>honā</i> 'to be'	है <i>hai</i> , हैं <i>hai</i>
4.1	infinitive	बोलना <i>bolnā</i>
4.1	stem	बोल <i>bol</i>
4.1	command	बोल, बोलो, बोलिए <i>bol, bolo, bolie</i>
4.3	imperfective participle	बोलता <i>boltā</i>
4.3	imperfective present	वह बोलता है <i>vah boltā hai</i>
7.1	imperfective past	वह बोलता था <i>vah boltā thā</i>
8.2	continuous present	वह बोल रहा है <i>vah bol rahā hai</i>
8.2	continuous past	वह बोल रहा था <i>vah bol rahā thā</i>

Now is the time to look back if you need to revise any of these!

3 Raju is reading 'his own' newspaper

Consider this statement: 'Javed is sitting in Raju's house; Raju is reading his newspaper.' Hmm: 'his' is ambiguous here — is Raju reading his *own* newspaper or Javed's? Hindi has no such ambiguity, because the pronoun अपना *apnā* replaces उसका *uskā* whenever the sense 'his/her own' is meant:

राजू अपना अखबार पढ़ रहा है ।

Rājū apnā akhbār paṛh rahā hai. Raju is reading his (own) paper.

राजू उसका अखबार पढ़ रहा है ।

Rājū uskā akhbār paṛh rahā hai. Raju is reading his (someone else's) paper.

अपना *apnā* is not restricted to 'his/her', it can mean 'my', 'our', 'your' and so on.

मैं अपना काम कर रहा हूँ ।

maī apnā kām kar rahā hū̃. I am doing my work.

हम अपना काम कर रहे हैं ।

ham apnā kām kar rahe haĩ. We are doing our work.

तुम अपना काम करो !
tum apnā kām karo. Do your work!

अपना पैसा लीजिए ।
apnā paisā lijie. Please take your money.

When to use अपना *apnā* is a vexing question for all learners of Hindi. As a rule of thumb, it has to be used whenever the 'possessor' is the subject of the main verb. The subjects in the next two sentences (using धोना *dhonā* 'to wash') are मैं *maī* 'I' and वे *ve* 'they' respectively:

मैं अपने कपड़े धो रहा हूँ ।
maī apne kapṛe dho rahā hū. I'm washing my clothes.
 वे अपने कपड़े नहीं धोते ।
ve apne kapṛe nahī dhote. They don't wash their (own) clothes.

▶ Revising with Gopal and Jagdish

The difference between the continuous and imperfective tenses should be reasonably clear by now. Here's a dialogue to remind you of the imperfective. A young lad called Gopal comes timidly to Jagdish Sharma's shop looking for work.

नौकरी <i>naukarī</i> f. job	पास में <i>pās mē</i> nearby
मेहनती <i>mehnatī</i> hard-working	जानना <i>jānnā</i> to know
ज़रूरत <i>zarūrat</i> f. need; मुझको X	थोड़ा <i>thorā</i> a little
की ज़रूरत है <i>mujhko X kī zarūrat hai</i> 'I need X'	अंग्रेज़ी <i>āgrezī</i> f. English (language)
मेहनत <i>mehnat</i> f. hard work	तनख़ाह <i>tankhāh</i> f. pay, wages

गोपाल नमस्ते शर्माजी ।
 जगदीश नमस्ते । क्या चाहिए बेटा ?
 गोपाल जी, मुझको आपकी दुकान में नौकरी चाहिए ।
 जगदीश हाँ, मुझको एक मेहनती लड़के की ज़रूरत तो है ।
 गोपाल मैं बहुत मेहनत करता हूँ शर्मा जी !
 जगदीश तुम्हारी उम्र कितनी है ?
 गोपाल जी, मैं सोलह साल का हूँ ।

जगदीश कहाँ रहते हो ?
 गोपाल पास में । हमारा घर यहाँ से दूर नहीं है ।
 जगदीश क्या तुम पढ़ना-लिखना जानते हो ?
 गोपाल जी हाँ, और मुझे थोड़ी अंग्रेज़ी भी आती है ।
 जगदीश ठीक है, कल से आना ।
 गोपाल बहुत शुक्रिया । शर्माजी, एक बात बताइए ।
 जगदीश बोलो, क्या बात है ?
 गोपाल तनख़ाह ... ?
 जगदीश यह तुम अभी मत पूछो !

Gopāl namaste Śarmāji.
Jagdish namaste. kyā cāhie betā?
Gopāl jī, mujhko āpkī dukān mē naukarī cāhie.
Jagdish hā, mujhko ek mahnatī larke kī zarūrat to hai.
Gopāl maī bahut mehnat kartā hū Śarmā jī!
Jagdish tumhārī umr kitnī hai?
Gopāl jī, maī solah sāl kā hū.
Jagdish kahā rahte ho?
Gopāl pās mē. hamārā ghar yahā se dūr nahī hai.
Jagdish kyā tum parhnā-likhnā jānte ho?
Gopāl jī hā, aur mujhe thorī āgrezī bhī ātī hai.
Jagdish thik hai, kal se ānā.
Gopāl bahut śukriyā. Śarmāji, ek bāt bataīe.
Jagdish bolo, kyā bāt hai?
Gopāl tankhāvāh...?
Jagdish yah tum abhī mat pūcho!

Gopal Hello Sharma ji.
 Jagdish Hello. What do you want, son?
 Gopal Sir, I need a job in your shop.
 Jagdish Yes, I do need a hard-working lad.
 Gopal I work very hard, Sharma ji!
 Jagdish How old are you?
 Gopal Sir, I'm sixteen.
 Jagdish Where d'you live?

- Gopal** Nearby. Our house isn't far from here.
Jagdish Do you know how to read and write?
Gopal Yes, and I know a little English too.*
Jagdish All right, come from tomorrow.
Gopal Thank you very much. Sharma ji, please tell me one thing.
Jagdish Speak, what is it?
Gopal The wages...?
Jagdish Don't ask this just now!

*Literally 'a little English comes to me'. This is a common usage with languages: मुझे उर्दू आती है *mujhe urdū āti hai* 'I know Urdu'; मेरे भाई को चार भाषाएँ आती हैं *mere bhāi ko cār bhāṣāē āti hai* 'my brother knows four languages'. Used with an infinitive verb, this construction means 'knowing how to do something', 'having a skill': मुझे खाना बनाना आता है *mujhe khānā banānā ātā hai*, 'I know how to cook.'

True or false?

Are these statements right (सही *sahī*) or wrong (गलत *galat*)?
 Answers below.

- | | सही
<i>sahī</i> | गलत
<i>galat</i> |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| १ गोपाल दुकान में कुछ खरीदना चाहता है ।
<i>Gopāl dukān mẽ kuch kharidnā cāhtā hai.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| २ गोपाल दुकान में काम करना चाहता है ।
<i>Gopāl dukān mẽ kām karnā cāhtā hai.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ३ गोपाल को मेहनत करना पसंद नहीं है ।
<i>Gopāl ko mehnat karnā pasand nahī hai.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ४ जगदीश को एक लड़के की ज़रूरत है ।
<i>Jagdīś ko ek laṛke kī zarūrat hai.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ५ जगदीश गोपाल के बाप से मिलना चाहता है ।
<i>Jagdīś Gopāl ke bāp se milnā cāhtā hai.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ६ गोपाल तनखाह के बारे में जानना चाहता है ।
<i>Gopāl tankhāh ke bāre mẽ jānnā cāhtā hai.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Answers: 2, 4, 5 and 6 are true.

The PM writes back

Ah, here's the Prime Minister's reply to the letter that Raju wrote when he was little. (For reasons of confidentiality we can't show the signature.)

प्रिय राजू,
 तुम जानते हो कि प्रधान मंत्री का जीवन कैसा होता है ?
 वह अपने लिए तो कुछ नहीं कर सकता है लेकिन दूसरों
 के लिए कुछ कर सकता है ! तुम अपने भाई की चिंता न
 करो । मैं अपने ही डाक्टर से तुम्हारे भाई के लिए कुछ
 दवा भिजवा रहा हूँ । अपने अगले पत्र में उसका हाल
 लिखना । और अपनी तबियत का भी ध्यान रखना ।
 तुम्हारा (...)

priy Rajū,
tum jānte ho ki pradhān mantri kā jīvan kaisā hotā hai?
vah apne lie to kuch nahī kar saktā hai lekin dūsrō
ke lie kuch kar saktā hai! tum apne bhāi kī cintā na
karo. maī apne hī dākṭar se tumhāre bhāi ke lie kuch
davā bhijvā rahā hū. apne agle patr mẽ uskā hāl
likhnā. aur apnī tabiyat kā bhī dhyān rakhnā.
tumhārā (...)

Dear Raju,

Do you know what a Prime Minister's life is like? He can't do anything for himself but he can do something for others! Don't worry about your brother. I'm getting some medicine sent by my very own doctor. In your next letter write how he is. And take care of your own health too!

Yours (...)

▶ 4 These days, in and out, up and down

Here are some sentences with adverbs (words or phrases like 'quickly' or 'these days', that describe the *manner* or *context* in which something happens). Look carefully at the words in bold:

इन दिनों तुम क्या कर रहे हो ?

in dinō tum kyā kar rahe ho? What are you doing these days?

उस दिन हम काम कर रहे थे ।

us din ham kām kar rahe the. That day, we were working.

पिछले हफ्ते मेरी तबियत खराब थी ।

pichle hafte merī tabiyat kharāb thī. I was unwell last week.

वह अगले महीने घर जा रहा है ।

vah agle mahīne ghar jā rahā hai. He's going home next month.

Notice anything? The words in bold print are in the oblique case — as if followed by invisible postpositions. This is usual with adverbs of time; here you have to forget the hard-learned rule that the oblique case is only used when a postposition requires it! Think of the time-words as being haunted by the ghosts of dropped postpositions.

These next sentences involve destinations — 'Agra', 'your house':

हम आगरे जा रहे हैं ।

ham āgre jā rahe hai. We're going to Agra.

वे आपके घर आ रहे हैं ।

ve āpke ghar ā rahe hai. They're coming to your house.

Here the obliques (आगरे *āgre*, oblique of आगरा *āgrā*; and आपके घर *āpke ghar*, oblique of आपका घर *āpkā ghar*) are again haunted by the ghosts of postpositions. To put it another way, the oblique case alone is the equivalent for the English 'to' in these sentences. It's significant that both sentences involve verbs of motion.

Finally, we find something very similar happening in the following sentences, which use आना *ānā* or जाना *jānā* with a sense of purpose:

वे आपसे मिलने आ रहे हैं ।

ve āpse milne ā rahe hai. They're coming to meet you.

हम फिल्म देखने जा रहे हैं ।

ham film dekhne jā rahe hai. We're going to see a film.

These sentences have a sense of *purpose* or *intention* which is expressed by the मिलने *milne* and देखने *dekhne* (infinitives ending -e) — as if here too some postposition had been dropped.

▶ About adverbs and postpositions

Now here are some more sentences using adverbs. These ones (again shown in bold text) describe place:

मनोज बाहर खड़ा है ।

Manoj bāhar kharā hai. Manoj is standing outside.

मीना अंदर बैठी है ।

Mīnā andar baiṭhī hai. Meena is sitting inside.

ऊपर देखो ।

ūpar dekho. Look up.

नीचे आओ ।

nīce āo. Come down.

The thing to notice here is that adverbs and postpositions work differently from each other. Let's take the pair बाहर *bāhar* and के बाहर *ke bāhar*, both meaning 'outside', as an example. बाहर *bāhar* on its own is an adverb that means 'outside' without reference to any other place: वह बाहर खड़ा है *vah bāhar kharā hai* 'he's standing outside'. But के बाहर *ke bāhar* is a postposition that means 'outside *in relation to* something': मकान के बाहर *makān ke bāhar* 'outside the house'. There are many such pairings: for example, the adverb ऊपर *ūpar* means 'up, upstairs' (ऊपर जाओ *ūpar jāo* 'go up' or 'go upstairs'), while the postposition के ऊपर *ke ūpar* means 'on top of, above' (मेज़ के ऊपर *mez ke ūpar* 'on top of the table').

हमारे मकान के बाहर

hamāre makān ke bāhar outside our house

इस कमरे के अंदर

is kamre ke andar inside this room

अलमारी के ऊपर

almāri ke ūpar on top of the cupboard

इस मेज़ के नीचे

is mez ke nīce under this table

There are many such postpositions consisting of two (or even three) words. Grammarians (who are always fond of long names for short things!) call them 'compound postpositions'.

के नज़दीक	<i>ke nazdīk</i>	near
के पास	<i>ke pās</i>	near; in the possession of
के अलावा	<i>ke alāvā</i>	as well as
के यहाँ	<i>ke yahā</i>	at the place of, at X's place
के लिए	<i>ke lie</i>	for
की तरफ़ / ओर	<i>kī taraf / or</i>	towards
की तरह	<i>kī tarah</i>	like

When using these with the pronouns मैं *maī* (मेरे *mere*), तू *tū* (तेरे *tere*), तुम *tum* (तुम्हारे *tumhāre*), हम *ham* (हमारे *hamāre*) and अपना *apnā* (अपने *apne*) the के/की *ke/kī* component is absent:

उनके यहाँ	<i>unke yahā</i>	at their place
मेरे यहाँ	<i>mere yahā</i>	at my place
मकान की ओर	<i>makān kī or</i>	towards the house
हमारी ओर	<i>hamārī or</i>	towards us

You'll find many more of these compound postpositions listed in the Hindi-English glossary under के *ke* and की *kī*.

Practise what you've learnt

Make up phrases (such as मेरे घर के पीछे *mere ghar ke piche* 'behind my house') from the following, remembering to make the first column oblique:

कौन <i>kaun</i> [oblique किस <i>kis</i> 'whom']	के लिए <i>ke lie</i> for
मेरा दोस्त <i>merā dost</i>	के बाद <i>ke bād</i> after
वह बड़ा पेड़ <i>vah barā per</i>	की तरह <i>kī tarah</i> like
सोमवार <i>somvār</i>	के पहले <i>ke pahle</i> before
हमारा स्कूल <i>hamārā skūl</i>	के पीछे <i>ke piche</i> behind
यह होटल <i>yah hoṭal</i>	की तरफ़ <i>kī taraf</i> towards

पुराना स्टेशन <i>purānā sṭeśan</i>	के नज़दीक <i>ke nazdīk</i> near
मेरा घर <i>merā ghar</i>	के नीचे <i>ke nice</i> under, below
ये लोग <i>ye log</i>	के यहाँ <i>ke yahā</i> at the place of
तुम्हारा घर <i>tumhārā ghar</i>	के चारों ओर <i>ke cārō</i> all around

Exercise 8a Translate:

- You are not cleverer than them. (clever: होशियार *hośiyār*)
- I (f.) am older than my brother but younger than you.
- My other sister is the cleverest.
- Some people say that Hindi is easier than English.
- Mother thinks that my sister is more beautiful than me.
- Father knows more than Mother but he can't say anything.
- Their house is bigger and more beautiful than ours.
- I am cleverer than you.
- Your language is more difficult than my language.

Exercise 8b Rewrite these sentences in the continuous tense, translating the rewritten version. (Raju is speaking throughout.)

- मैं रेडियो सुनता हूँ । मैं रेडियो सुन रहा हूँ ।
maī reḍiyo suntā hū̃. maī reḍiyo sun rahā hū̃.
 I listen to the radio. I am listening to the radio.
- हम लोग अपने दोस्तों को खाना खाने बुलाते हैं ।
ham log apne dostō ko khānā khāne bulāte hāi.
 - मैं खाना तैयार करता हूँ ।
maī khānā taiyār kartā hū̃.
 - वे लोग शाम को आते हैं ।
ve log śām ko āte hāi.
 - वे अपने बच्चों और दोस्तों को भी लाते हैं ।
ve apne baccō aur dostō ko bhī lāte hāi.
 - मेरी पत्नी कहती है कि उनके बच्चे मोती को मारते हैं ।
merī patnī kahtī hai ki unke bacce Motī ko mārte hāi.
 - दादी जी हमारी मदद नहीं करती हैं, सिर्फ रेडियो सुनती हैं ।
dādi jī hamārī madad nahī kartī hāi, sirf reḍiyo suntī hāi.

- १६ हमारा कुकर ['cooker'] ठीक से काम नहीं करता ।
hamārā kukar ['cooker'] *thīk se kām nahī kartā.*
- १७ हमारे दोस्त कहते हैं कि बाथरूम में पानी नहीं आ रहा है ।
hamāre dost kahte hai ki bāthrūm mē pānī nahī ā rahā hai.

Exercise 8c Answer the questions:

- १८ अपने खाली समय में आप क्या करते/करती हैं ?
apne *khāli samay mē āp kyā karte/kartī hai?*
- १९ आपको घर पर रहना या बाहर जाना ज़्यादा पसंद है ?
āpko ghar par rahnā yā bāhar jānā zyādā pasand hai?
- २० आप हिन्दी क्यों सीख रहे/रही हैं ?
āp hindī kyō sikh rahe/rahī hai?
- २१ क्या हिन्दी अँग्रेज़ी से ज़्यादा आसान है ?
kyā hindī āgrezī se zyādā āsān hai?
- २२ क्या आपके कुछ दोस्त भी हिन्दी बोलते हैं ?
kyā āpke kuch dost bhī hindī bolte hai?
- २३ आज आप क्या कर रहे/रही हैं ?
āj āp kyā kar rahe/rahī hai?
- २४ आप अपनी छुट्टियों में कहाँ जाते/जाती हैं ?
āp apnī chuṭṭiyō mē kahā jāte/jātī hai?
- २५ अभी आप क्या सोच रहे/रही हैं ?
abhī āp kyā soc rahe/rahī hai?

Glossary

- अंदर *andar* inside
अगला *aglā* next
अपना *apnā* one's own (my, your, his etc.)
आज रात को *āj rāt ko* tonight;
आज शाम को *āj sām ko* this evening
कब *kab* when?
की ओर *kī or* towards
की तरफ़ *kī taraf* towards
की तरह *kī tarah* like
के अंदर *ke andar* inside
के अलावा *ke alāvā* as well as
के ऊपर *ke ūpar* above, on top of
के नज़दीक *ke nazdīk* near
के नीचे *ke nice* below, under
के बाहर *ke bāhar* outside
के यहाँ *ke yahā* at the place of
के साथ *ke sāth* with, in the company of
खर्च *kharc* m. expenditure; खर्च करना *kharc karnā* to spend
गुजराती f. Gujarati
ज़रूरत *zarūrat* f. need; मुझको X की ज़रूरत है *mujhko X kī zarūrat hai* I need X
जीवन *jīvan* m. life
ज़्यादा *zyādā* more, much
तमिल *tamil* f. Tamil
ताश m. playing cards
तैयार *taiyār* ready, prepared;
तैयार करना *taiyār karnā* to prepare
थोड़ी देर *thoṛī der* f. a little while
- दुखी *dukhī* sad
दौड़ना *daṛnā* to run
धोना *dhonā* to wash
ध्यान रखना *dhyān rakhnā* to pay attention to, look after
नीचे *nice* down, downstairs
पास में *pās mē* nearby
पिछला *pichlā* previous, last
प्रिय *priy* dear; 'Dear...' (in informal correspondence)
बरतन *bartan* m. dish, utensil
बाप रे बाप ! *bāp re bāp!* Oh God!
भिजवाना *bhijvānā* to have sent, to cause to be sent
मदद *madad* f. help; किसी की मदद करना *kisī kī madad karnā* to help someone
माँजना *mājnā* f. to scour, clean
मुस्कराना *muskarānā* to smile
रात *rāt* f. night; रात का खाना *rāt kā khānā* m. dinner
लगना *lagnā* to seem
लाना *lānā* to bring
रोना *ronā* to cry, weep
लाना *lānā* to bring
सबसे *sabse* of all (in superlatives, e.g. सबसे अच्छा *sabse acchā* best, best of all)
सही *sahī* correct, true
सहेली *sahelī* f. female's female friend
हँसना *hāsnā* to laugh
हफ़ता *haftā* m. week
होशियार *hoṣiyār* clever

09

भविष्य में
bhaviṣya
in the future

In this unit you will learn

- how to talk about the future
- how to use 'if' expressions
- how to express doubts and possibilities

Language points

- future tenses
- conditional clauses
- subjunctive mood

1 The future tense

The future is quite simple in Hindi. We'll begin with 'I will do' and 'you will do', which together will give lots of potential for practice. You already know that 'to do' is करना *karṇā*, stem कर *kar* — now here are the future forms:

मैं करूँगा / करूँगी *mai karūṅā / karūṅī* I will do

आप करेंगे / करेंगी *āp karēṅe / karēṅī* You will do

So the future ending for मैं *mai* is *-ūṅā / -ūṅī*, and the आप *āp* ending is *-ēṅe / -ēṅī*.

► What will you do tomorrow?

This pair of dialogues uses the future tense of the verbs रहना *rahnā* 'to stay' and जाना *jānā* 'to go'.

राजू कल आप क्या करेंगे ?

जावेद कल मैं काम करूँगा । आप क्या करेंगे ?

राजू मैं घर पर रहूँगा ।

जावेद आप घर पर क्यों रहेंगे ? काम पर नहीं जाएँगे ?

राजू नहीं, काम पर नहीं जाऊँगा । कल छुट्टी है ।

Rājū *kal āp kyā karēṅe?*

Jāved *kal mai kām karūṅā. āp kyā karēṅe?*

Rājū *mai ghar par rahūṅā.*

Jāved *āp ghar par kyō rahēṅe? kām par nahī jāēṅe?*

Rājū *nahī, kām par nahī jāūṅā. kal chuṭṭī hai.*

गीता कल आप क्या करेंगी ?

उषा कल मैं काम करूँगी । आप क्या करेंगी ?

गीता मैं घर पर रहूँगी ।

उषा आप घर पर क्यों रहेंगी ? काम पर नहीं जाएँगी ?

गीता नहीं, काम पर नहीं जाऊँगी । कल छुट्टी है ।

Gītā *kal āp kyā karēṅī?*

Uṣā *kal mai kām karūṅī. āp kyā karēṅī?*

Gītā *mai ghar par rahūṅī.*

Uṣā āp ghar par kyō rahēgi? kām par nahī jāēgi?

Gītā nahī, kām par nahī jāūgi. kal chuṭṭī hai.

Raju/Geeta What will you do tomorrow?

Javed/Usha Tomorrow I'll work. What will you do?

Raju/Geeta I shall stay at home.

Javed/Usha Why will you stay at home? Won't you go to work?

Raju/Geeta No, I won't go to work. Tomorrow's a holiday.

▶ Practise what you've learnt

These questions are for you to answer:

- १ आज रात को आप क्या खाएँगे / खाएँगी ? (खाना to eat)
āj rāt ko āp kyā khāēge/khāēgi? khānā
- २ ... और क्या पिएँगे / पिएँगी ? (पीना to drink)
... aur kyā piēge/piēgi? pinā
- ३ आज आप क्या करेंगे / करेंगी ? (करना to do)
āj āp kyā karēge/karēgi? karnā
- ४ कल सुबह आप कहाँ जाएँगे / जाएँगी ? (जाना to go)
kal subah āp kahā jāēge/jāēgi? jānā
- ५ परसों आप किससे मिलेंगे / मिलेंगी ? (मिलना to meet)
parsō āp kisse milēge/milēgi? milnā

The future with 'they' and 'we' is the same as with आप āp — it ends -ēge / -ēgi.

वे लोग खाना बनाएँगे ।

ve log khānā banāēge. Those people will make food.

ये लोग बीयर लाएँगे ।

ye log bīyar lāēge. These people will bring beer.

हम लोग सिर्फ खाएँगे और पियेंगे !

ham log sirf khāēge aur piyēge! We will just eat and drink!

The future tense with 'he, she, it' (and also तू tū 'you') has the ending -ega / -egi —

वह घर जाएगा ।

vah ghar jāegā. He will go home.

वह घर आएगी ।

vah ghar āegī. She will come home.

कल कौनसा दिन होगा ?

kal kaunsā din hogā? What day will it be tomorrow?

कल सोमवार होगा ।

kal somvār hogā. Tomorrow will be Monday.

Finally, the future with तुम tum has the ending -oge / -ogi —

राजू, तुम चाय पियोगे ?

Rājū, tum cāy piyoge? Raju, will you have tea?

गीता, तुम मेरे साथ चलोगी ?

Gītā, tum mere sāth calogī? Geeta, will you come with me?

So here's the future tense in all its glory, shown in the verb बोलना bolnā 'to speak'.

मैं बोलूँगा / बोलूँगी

हम बोलेंगे / बोलेंगी

maī bolūṅā / bolūṅī

ham bolēge / bolēgi

तू बोलेगा / बोलेगी

तुम बोलोगे / बोलेगी

tū boleḡā / boleḡī

tum bologe / bologī

आप बोलेंगे / बोलेगी

āp bolēge / bolēgi

यह, वह बोलेगा / बोलेगी

ये, वे बोलेंगे / बोलेगी

yah, vah boleḡā / boleḡī

ye, ve bolēge / bolēgi

Once you've become familiar with the form of बोलना bolnā, practise the future by using it in other everyday verbs.

Reported speech and 'would'

In 'reported speech', the future tense gives the sense 'would':

राजू कह रहा था कि वह नाश्ता तैयार करेगा ।

Rājū kah rahā thā ki vah nāštā taiyār karega. Raju was saying that he would get breakfast ready.

गीता कह रही थी कि वह आराम करेगी ।

Gītā kah rahī thī ki vah ārām karegi. Geeta was saying that she would rest.

मनोज और राम कह रहे थे कि वे जल्दी नहीं उठेंगे।

Manoj aur Rām kah rahe the ki ve jaldī nahī̄ uṭhēge. Manoj and Ram were saying that they wouldn't get up early.

मोती सोच रहा था कि क्या मुझे भी नाश्ता मिलेगा?

Motī soc rahā thā ki kyā mujhe bhī nāśtā milegā? Moti was wondering if he'd get breakfast too.

► The days ahead

Manoj is helping Pratap with his Hindi by asking about the coming week.

मनोज प्रताप, तुम हफ्ते के दिनों के नाम बताओगे ?

प्रताप हाँ, ये हैं — सोमवार, मंगलवार, बुधवार, फिर ... फिर ...

मनोज गुरु...

प्रताप हाँ ! गुरुवार या बृहस्पतिवार, शुक्रवार, शनिवार, रविवार।

मनोज शाबाश ! कल कौनसा दिन होगा ?

प्रताप कल मंगलवार होगा।

मनोज परसों तुम क्या करोगे ?

प्रताप परसों, यानी बुधवार को, मैं पिताजी से मिलने जाऊँगा।

मनोज गुरुवार को तुम कहाँ जाओगे ?

प्रताप गुरुवार को मैं घर पर रहूँगा।

मनोज शुक्रवार को तुम क्या करोगे ?

प्रताप शुक्रवार को मैं अपनी पढ़ाई करूँगा।

मनोज और शनिवार को तुम आराम करोगे ?

प्रताप नहीं, शनिवार को मैं बाहर जाऊँगा और मज़े करूँगा !

Manoj Pratāp, tum hafte ke dinō ke nām batāoge?

Pratāp hā, ye hai — somvār, mangalvār, budhvār, phir... phir...

Manoj guru...

Pratāp hā! guruvār yā bṛhaspativār, śukravār, śanivār, ravivār.

Manoj śābāś! kal kaunsā din hogā?

Pratāp kal mangalvār hogā.

Manoj parsō tum kyā karoge?

Pratāp parsō, yānī budhvār ko, maī pitājī se milne jāūgā.

Manoj guruvār ko tum kahā jāoge?

Pratāp guruvār ko maī ghar par rahūgā.

Manoj śukravār ko tum kyā karoge?

Pratāp śukravār ko maī apnī parhāi karūgā.

Manoj aur śanivar ko tum ārām karoge?

Pratāp nahī, śanivār ko maī bāhar jāūgā aur maze karūgā!

Manoj Pratap, will you tell [me] the names of the days of the week?

Pratap Yes, they are... *somvār, mangalvār, budhvār*, then... then...

Manoj *guru...*

Pratap Yes! *guruvār* or *bṛhaspativār, śukravār, śanivār, ravivār*.

Manoj Bravo! What day will it be tomorrow?

Pratap Tomorrow will be Tuesday.

Manoj What will you do the day after tomorrow?

Pratap The day after tomorrow, that is on Wednesday, I'll go to meet Father.

Manoj Where will you go on Thursday?

Pratap On Thursday I'll stay at home.

Manoj What will you do on Friday?

Pratap On Friday I'll do my studying.

Manoj And on Saturday you'll rest?

Pratap No, on Saturday I'll go out and enjoy myself!

► Geeta's diary

Your next task is to fill Geeta's appointment diary for the coming week, based on what she tells you below (notice that she sometimes uses abbreviation for the names of the days). Write the activity using an infinitive verb — Monday has already been completed as an example of the format to use.

आज सोम है; आज मैं घर पर रहूँगी। कल, यानी मंगल को, हम लोग दिल्ली जाएँगे। परसों, यानी बुध को, हम अपने मकान के लिए कुछ चीज़ें खरीदने जाएँगे। गुरुवार को हम घर वापस आएँगे। शुक्रवार को मैं आराम करूँगी। शनिवार की रात को हम सीता के यहाँ जाएँगे। रविवार को मैं अगले हफ्ते की तैयारियाँ करूँगी।

āj som hai; āj maī ghar par rahūgi. kal, yāni mangal ko, ham log dilli jāēge. parsō, yāni budh ko, ham apne makān ke lie kuch cizē kharīdne jāēge. guruvār ko ham ghar vāpas āēge. sukravār ko maī ārām karūgi. śanivār ki rāt ko ham Sitā ke yahā jāēge. ravivār ko maī agle hafte ki taiyāriyā karūgi.

Today is Monday; today I'll stay at home. Tomorrow, i.e. on Tuesday, we'll go to Delhi. The day after, i.e. on Wednesday, we'll go to buy some things for our house. On Thursday we'll come back home. On Friday I'll rest. On Saturday night we'll go to Sita's. On Sunday I'll get ready for next week.



सोमवार somvār	घर पर रहना ghar par rahnā
मंगलवार mangalvār	
बुधवार budhvār	
गुरुवार guruvār	
शुक्रवार śukravār	
शनिवार śanivār	
रविवार ravivār	

2 ifs and maybes

The sentence आप घर जाएँगे *āp ghar jāēge* means 'you'll go home'. It's a positive statement of something that is clear, certain, definite. But if we remove the last syllable of जाएँगे *jāēge*, we are left with आप घर जाएँ *āp ghar jāē* — which means 'you should go home' (suggestion) or 'you might go home' (possibility) or even 'you may go home' (permission). We've cut off the *certainty* of the verb with its last syllable.

This form of the verb is called the 'subjunctive': it expresses a sense of uncertainty, possibility, permission, suggestion, and similar indefinite, imagined or tentative senses. As we've just seen, it's formed by lopping off the last syllable of the future tense; the distinction between masculine and feminine is lost as a result. You'll often find words like अगर *agar* 'if', शायद *śāyad* 'maybe, perhaps' or ज़रूर *zarūr* 'of course' lurking nearby. All the verbs in this next dialogue are in the subjunctive.

▶ Javed calls on Raju

- जावेद मैं अंदर आऊँ ?
 राजू जी हाँ, जी हाँ, आप ज़रूर आएँ !
 जावेद मैं कहाँ बैठूँ ?
 राजू आप इधर बैठें । मैं चाय बनाऊँ ?
 जावेद अगर आप चाहें । या हम बाहर जाएँ ?
 राजू नहीं, हम घर पर ही रहें ।
- Jāved* maī andar āū?
Rājū jī hā, jī hā, āp zarūr āē.
Jāved maī kahā baiṭhū?
Rājū āp idhar baiṭhē. maī cāy banāū?
Jāved agar āp cāhē. yā ham bāhar jāē?
Rājū nahī, ham ghar par hī rahē.
- Jāved* May I come in?
Raju Yes yes, of course you may come in! [Do come in!]
Jāved Where should I sit?
Raju Please sit over here. Should I make tea?
Jāved If you wish. Or should we go out?
Raju No, let's stay at home.

Sentences involving an 'if' are quite likely to use a subjunctive verb, but verb forms such as a future tense are also possible:

- अगर वह "हाँ" कहे तो हम शादी करेंगे ।
agar vah "hā" kahe to ham śādī karēge. If she says 'yes', then we'll marry. (Subjunctive *kahe* — don't count on her agreement.)

अगर वह “हाँ” कहेगी तो हम शादी करेंगे ।

agar vah 'hā' kahegī to ham śādī karēge. If she says 'yes', then we'll marry. (Future *kahegī* — book the photographer!)

These two sentences show how Hindi pairs an अगर *agar* clause with a तो *to* clause: 'If X, then Y'.

A suggestion or a command?

A subjunctive verb blurs the boundary between a suggestion and a command, offering a nicely diplomatic way of getting someone to comply with your wishes:

आप थोड़ी देर बैठे रहें ।

āp thoṛī der baiṭhe rahē. Kindly remain seated for a while.

कृपया गिलास में हाथ न धोएँ ।

kṛpayā gilās mē hāth na dhoē. Please do not wash your hands in the tumbler. (Restaurant sign.)

I want to... / I want you to...

Look closely at the difference between the following pair of sentences. How many people are involved in each one?

मैं कुछ कहना चाहता हूँ ।

māi kuch kahnā cāhtā hū. I want to say something.

मैं चाहता हूँ कि आप कुछ कहें ।

māi cāhtā hū ki āp kuch kahē. I want you to say something.

The first sentence involves 'Person A' doing both the wanting and the speaking; the construction uses चाहना *cāhnā* 'to want' with an infinitive verb (here कहना *kahnā* 'to say'). The second involves 'Person A' wanting 'Person B' to do something: the construction uses चाहना *cāhnā* 'to want' with a subjunctive verb (here कहें *kahē*). The two clauses are linked by कि *ki* 'that'. Here are two more examples:

मैं चाहता हूँ कि वे यहाँ रहें ।

māi cāhtā hū ki ve yahā rahē. I want them to stay here.

वे चाहते हैं कि मैं यहाँ रहूँ ।

ve cāhte hai ki māi yahā rahū. They want me to stay here.

▶ Practise what you've learnt

Over to you. Make sentences by combining a phrase from the left-hand list with a phrase from the right-hand list, giving meanings such as 'I want you to rest'. All the verbs in the right-hand list are subjunctive.

मैं चाहता हूँ कि ...

māi cāhtā hū ki ...

हम चाहते थे कि ...

ham cāhte hai ki ...

वे चाहते हैं कि ...

ve cahte hai ki ...

वह चाहता है कि ...

vah cāhtā hai ki ...

मैं चाहती थी कि ...

māi cāhtī thī ki ...

मेरी बहिन चाहती है कि ...

merī bahin cāhtī hai ki ...

... आप आराम करें ।

... āp ārām karē.

... तुम हमारे यहाँ ठहरो ।

... tum hamāre yahā ṭahro.

... तुम्हारा दोस्त भी आए ।

... tumhārā dost bhī āe.

... तुम जाने की तैयारियाँ करो ।

... tum jāne kī taiyāriyā karo.

... वह अपना काम करे ।

... vah apnā kām kare.

... तुम खाना बनाओ ।

... tum khānā banāo.

3 So that, in order that

The conjunction (or 'linking word') ताकि *tāki* means 'so that, in order that', and is always followed by a subjunctive verb:

मैं उठूँगा ताकि दूसरे लोग बैठें ।

māi uṭhūngā tāki dūsre log baiṭhē. I'll get up so that others may sit.

अभी आइए ताकि हम काम शुरू करें ।

abhi āie tāki ham kām śurū karē. Come right now so that we can start work.

जल्दी उठो ताकि देरी न हो ।

jaldī uṭho tāki derī na ho. Get up early so that there won't be any delay.

हम धीरे धीरे बोलेंगे ताकि वे हमारी बात समझें ।

ham dhire dhire bolēge tāki ve hamāri bāt samjhē. We'll speak slowly so that they understand what we say.

Did you know?

The official Indian name for India is भारत *bhārat* or भारतवर्ष *bhāratvarṣ*. Many people use हिन्दुस्तान *hindustān* instead, though this can sometimes be taken to imply 'northern India' only. The word हिन्द *hind* is now mostly limited to formulas such as जय हिन्द ! *jay hind!* ('Victory to India!' — once used as a nationalistic greeting) and to terms such as हिन्द महासागर *hind mahāsāgar* 'Indian Ocean'. Another common option is इंडिया *iṇḍiyā*, whose retroflex consonants show that it has been re-imported through English.

Words such as 'India', 'Hindi' and 'Hindu' all derive from the name of the Indus river; its Sanskrit name is सिंधु *sindhu*, but the Sanskrit 's' becomes 'h' in Persian. The word हिन्दी *hindī* is itself Persian in origin.

4 How long does it take?

To say 'how long something takes', Hindi uses the versatile verb लगना *lagnā*, here referring to the 'time taken':

एक घंटा लगता है ।

ek ghaṇṭā lagtā hai. It takes one hour.

दस मिनट लगते हैं ।

das miṇaṭ lagte hai. It takes ten minutes.

दो दिन लगेंगे ।

do din lagēge. It'll take two days.

Notice how the verb agrees with the unit of time — 'one hour' (singular) 'ten minutes' (plural), etc. To specify the *action done* within the particular time frame, add an infinitive plus में *mē*, as in किताब लिखने में *kitāb likhne mē* 'in writing the book':

किताब लिखने में एक साल लगेगा ।

kitāb likhne mē ek sāl lagegā. It'll take a year to write the book.

घर जाने में दो घंटे लगते हैं ।

ghar jāne mē do ghaṇṭe lagte hai. It takes two hours to get home.

यह काम खत्म करने में मुझे डेढ़ घंटा लगेगा ।

yah kām khatm karne mē mujhe ḍeṛh ghaṇṭā lagegā. It'll take me an hour and a half to finish this work.



Exercise 9a Match up the अगर *agar* (1–6) and तो *to* (A–F) clauses to make meaningful sentences, then translate them.

- १ अगर सब्जी-मंडी आज बंद हो ...
agar sabzī-maṇḍī āj band ho ...
- २ अगर तुम्हें रास्ता नहीं मालूम ...
agar tumhē rāstā nahī mālūm ...
- ३ अगर आप किसी शब्द का मतलब नहीं जानते ...
agar āp kisī śabd kā matlab nahī jānte ...
- ४ अगर गोलचक्कर पर पुलिसवाला न मिले ...
agar golcakkār par pulisvālā na mile ...
- ५ अगर होटल में कमरा न मिले ...
agar hoṭal mē kamrā na mile ...
- ६ अगर आप उस तंग गली में मुड़ेगे ...
agar āp us tang galī mē murēge ...

- A ... तो आप मेरे यहाँ रहें ।
... to āp mere yahā rahē.
- B ... तो थाने पर जाओ ।
... to thāne par jāo.
- C ... तो शब्दकोश में देखिए ।
... to śabdkoś mē dekhie.
- D ... तो नक्शा खरीदना ।
... to naqśā kharīdnā.
- E ... तो कल सुबह को सब्जी लेना ।
... to kal subah ko sabzī lenā.
- F ... तो बायें हाथ पर ढाबा दिखाई देगा ।
... to bāyē hāth par ḍhābā dikhāi degā.

Exercise 9b You have just arrived at a hotel where you will be staying for several days. Do as instructed:

- 7 Tell the hotel receptionist that you need a room for two people and that you will stay for three days.

- 8 Say that some friends will come to meet you this evening.
 9 Ask what will be available for breakfast (नाश्ते में *nāšte mē*).
 10 Ask whether dinner will be available as well.
 11 Ask how long it will take to go on foot from the hotel to the cinema.
 12 Tell the receptionist that you would like to phone London; ask if you can phone from your room.
 13 Say that next week you will go to Agra and Delhi.
 14 Ask if your friends can eat with you in the hotel tonight.

Exercise 9c Translate into Hindi:

- 15 Tomorrow is Saturday, so we'll go out.
 16 We were thinking that we would go to the cinema.
 17 My brother was saying that he would stay at home.
 18 If you wish, come with us.
 19 We'll go early so that we can get good seats [सीट *sīt* f.].
 20 If it's raining we'll go by car.

Glossary

अगर <i>agar</i> if	गिलास <i>gilās</i> m. tumbler
आराम <i>ārām</i> m. rest; आराम करना <i>ārām karnā</i> to rest	गुरुवार <i>guruvār</i> m. Thursday
इधर <i>idhar</i> here, over here; इधर-उधर <i>idhar-udhar</i> here and there, hither and thither	गोलचक्कर <i>golcakkār</i> m. roundabout
इमारत <i>imārat</i> f. building	घंटा <i>ghaṅṭā</i> m. hour
उठना <i>uṭhnā</i> to get up, rise	ठंड <i>ṭhaṇḍ</i> f. cold; ठंड लगना <i>ṭhaṇḍ lagnā</i> to feel cold
उधर <i>udhar</i> there, over there	थहरना <i>ṭhaharnā</i> to stay, remain
कृपया <i>kṛpayā</i> please (formal)	ताकि <i>tāki</i> so that, in order that
ओर <i>or</i> f. side, direction	तैयारी <i>taiyārī</i> f. preparation
के चारों तरफ़ <i>ke cārō taraf</i> all around	देरी <i>derī</i> f. delay
के सामने <i>ke sāmne</i> opposite	नक्शा <i>naqṣā</i> m. map, plan
गली <i>galī</i> f. lane, narrow street	नाश्ता <i>nāštā</i> m. breakfast
	पढ़ाई <i>parhāī</i> f. studies, studying

पारसों *parsō* two days away
(day after tomorrow; day before yesterday)

पहुँचना *pahūcnā* to reach, arrive
पुलिसवाला *pulisvālā* m. policeman

बंद *band* closed, shut

बीयर *biyār* f. beer

बुधवार *budhvar* m. Wednesday

बेहतर *behtar* better

मंगलवार *maṅgalvār* f. Tuesday

मज़ा *mazā* m. enjoyment, fun;
मज़े करना *maze karnā* to enjoy oneself, have fun

मतलब *matlab* m. meaning

मुड़ना *murṇā* to turn

रविवार *ravivār* m. Sunday

लगना *lagnā* time to be taken;
घर जाने में १० मिनट लगते हैं / एक घंटा लगता है *ghar jāne mē 10 minaṭ lagte hai / ek ghaṅṭā lagtā hai* It takes 10 minutes / one hour to get home

वापस *vāpas* 'back' in वापस आना/जाना/देना *vāpas ānā/jānā/denā* to come/go/give back

शनिवार *śanivār* m. Saturday

शब्द *śabd* m. word

शब्दकोश *śabdkoś* m. dictionary

शादी *śādī* f. wedding, marriage; शादी करना *śādī karnā* to marry

शाबाश *śābās* bravo

शुक्रवार *śukravār* m. Friday

सब्ज़ी *sabzī* f. vegetable(s); सब्ज़ी मंडी *sabzī maṇḍī* f. vegetable market

सब्ज़ीवाला *sabzīvālā* m. vegetable seller

सुबह *subah* f. morning

10

क्या हुआ ?
kya
what happened?

hua?

In this unit you will learn

- how to describe past events
- how to link connected actions in a sequence

Language points

- perfective tenses
- transitivity
- absolutes

1 The past tense

So far we've seen two kinds of past tense: 'imperfective' (describing *routine or habitual events* of the 'I used to' type), and 'continuous' (describing *actions in progress* of the 'I was doing' type). Here's an example of each to remind you:

मैं दौड़ता था ।

mai daur̥tā thā. I used to run.

मैं दौड़ रहा था ।

mai daur̥ rahā thā. I was running.

The new tense we're going to look at now is this:

मैं दौड़ा ।

mai daur̥ā. I ran.

This describes a *completed* action in the past, and is called the 'perfective' tense. It uses a 'perfective participle' consisting of verb stem plus *-ā / -e / -ī / -ī̄*. Thus दौड़ा *daur̥ā* 'ran', बोला *bolā* 'spoke', हँसा *hāsā* 'laughed', उठा *uthā* 'got up', पहुँचा *pahūcā* 'arrived', and so on.

Look carefully at the verb endings in the following three sentences, making sure you can see how they agree with their subjects (for example, the first one is feminine singular to agree with 'Meena'):

मीना घर पहुँची ।

Mīnā ghar pahūncī. Meena arrived home.

फिर मनोज और राज पहुँचे ।

phir Manoj aur Rājū pahūce. Then Manoj and Raju arrived.

बाद में गीता और सीता पहुँचीं ।

bād mē Gītā aur Sītā pahūcī̄. Later Geeta and Sita arrived.

Before going any further, practise using the verbs बोलना *bolnā* and उठना *uthnā* (or any others given above) with a range of different subjects, paying attention to the agreements of gender and number.

Coming and going

You're probably thinking this is all too easy. And you're right: it's time to introduce an exception! The participle from जाना *jānā* 'to go' is गया / गए / गई / गई — *gayā / gae / gai / gaī̄*. (Don't confuse this with गया *gāyā* etc., from गाना *gānā* to sing.)

मीना स्कूल गई, मनोज बाहर गया, राजू और राम बाज़ार गए,
गीता और सीता सिनेमा गई ।

Minā skūl gai, Manoj bāhar gayā, Rājū aur Rām bāzār gae, Gitā aur Sītā sinemā gai. Meena went to school, Manoj went out, Raju and Ram went to the market, Geeta and Sita went to the cinema.

Participles for the verb आना *ānā* 'to come' are आया, आए, आई, आई *āyā, āe, āī, āī*. Notice how the masculine singular आया *āyā* has a 'y' between the stem and the ending. All verbs with *-ā* stems do this.

What happened then?

The perfective from होना *honā* 'to be, to happen' is हुआ, हुए, हुई, हुई *huā, hue, huī, huī*, 'happened'.

तब क्या हुआ ?

tab kyā huā ? What happened then?

एक दुर्घटना हुई ।

ek durghaṭnā huī. An accident happened. (There was an accident.)

Practise what you've learnt

This is all quite easy to understand, but you'll only really learn it when you use it. So make up some short subject-plus-verb sentences using Meena and anyone else (as in the long sentence at the top of this page) as subjects, combined with the following verbs:

आना	<i>ānā</i>	to come
जाना	<i>jānā</i>	to go
उठना	<i>uṭhnā</i>	to get up
दौड़ना	<i>dauṛnā</i>	to run
पहुँचना	<i>pahūcnā</i>	to arrive
हँसना	<i>hāsnā</i>	to laugh

Now answer these questions with the data supplied on the right:

- | | | |
|---|-------------------------------|--------------|
| १ | मनोज कहाँ गया ? | घर |
| | <i>Manoj kahā gayā?</i> | <i>ghar</i> |
| २ | राजू और राम कहाँ गए ? | बाहर |
| | <i>Rājū aur Rām kahā gae?</i> | <i>bāhar</i> |

- | | | |
|---|-------------------------|---------------------|
| ३ | सीता कहाँ गई ? | दिल्ली |
| | <i>Sītā kahā gai?</i> | <i>dillī</i> |
| ४ | क्या हुआ ? | कुछ नहीं |
| | <i>kyā huā?</i> | <i>kuch nahī</i> |
| ५ | मीना कब पहुँची ? | कल |
| | <i>Minā kab pahūci?</i> | <i>kal</i> |
| ६ | दादीजी कब आई ? | परसों |
| | <i>dādījī kab āī?</i> | <i>parsō</i> |
| ७ | मनोज कब आया ? | मंगलवार को |
| | <i>Manoj kab āyā?</i> | <i>mangalvār ko</i> |

2 Transitivity

In the perfective, Hindi verbs follow two different patterns depending on whether they are 'intransitive' or 'transitive'. A transitive verb describes an action done to an object, as in 'We drank coffee' (in which the drinking was a process done by us to the coffee). We can test its transitivity by asking a question about the object: 'What did we drink?'. By contrast, an *intransitive* verb simply describes an action occurring, with no object being involved, as in 'we arrived', or 'I got up'; here we can't make questions like 'What did we arrive' or 'What did I get up', so these verbs don't pass the transitivity test.

The Hindi verbs we've used so far in this unit have all been intransitive; but it's time now to move on transitive verbs, which behave differently in the past tense. Look very closely at the constructions of the following four sentences (a hint: किताब *kitāb* is feminine, अखबार *akhbār* is masculine):

राजू ने किताब पढ़ी ।

Rājū ne kitāb paṛhī. Raju read a book.

राजू ने दोनों किताबें पढ़ीं ।

Rājū ne donō kitābē paṛhī. Raju read both books.

गीता ने अखबार पढ़ा ।

Gitā ne akhbār paṛhā. Geeta read a newspaper.

गीता ने दोनों अखबार पढ़े ।

Gitā ne donō akhbār paṛhe. Geeta read both newspapers.

Well, you should have noticed that the verbs agree with the 'book/books' and 'newspaper/newspapers' rather than with their readers! And also that the readers have sprouted an untranslatable postposition, ने *ne*. This is how transitive verbs always operate in the perfective. A verb that has no object for the verb to agree with stays in the masculine singular:

राम ने खाया । मीनू ने खाया ।

Rām ne khāyā. Mīnū ne khāyā. Ram ate. Meenu ate.

Because we're not told *what* they ate, the verb stays as खाया *khāyā*.

What happened at the party?

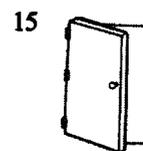
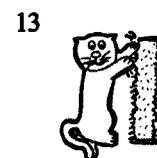
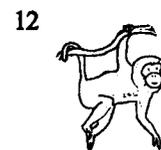
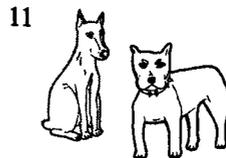
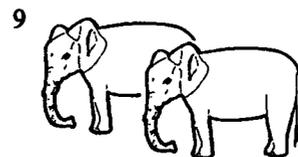
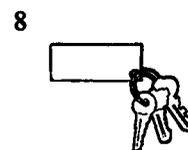
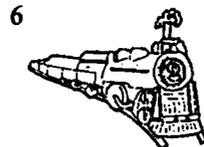
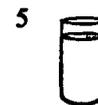
There was a party at the Sharmas' house. Complete the sentences with the appropriate form of the verb supplied on the right. The agreement of the verb will be with the *subject* if there's no ने *ne* construction, but with the *object* if there *is* a ने *ne* construction. Answers below.

- | | |
|--|----------------|
| १ गीता ने बढ़िया खाना ... | बनाना to make |
| <i>Gītā ne baṛhiyā khānā ...</i> | <i>banānā</i> |
| २ मीना की दो सहेलियाँ पार्टी में ... | आना to come |
| <i>Mīnā kī do saheliyāṅ pāṛṭī mẽ ...</i> | <i>ānā</i> |
| ३ मनोज के कई दोस्त भी ... | आना to come |
| <i>Manoj ke kai dost bhī ...</i> | <i>ānā</i> |
| ४ गीता की सहेली ने सितार ... | बजाना to play |
| <i>Gītā kī saheli ne sitār...</i> | <i>bajānā</i> |
| ५ फिर मोती ज़ोर से ... | भौंकना to bark |
| <i>phir Moti zor se ...</i> | <i>bhaūknā</i> |
| ६ राजू ने पाँच समोसे ... | खाना to eat |
| <i>Rājū ne pāc samose ...</i> | <i>khānā</i> |
| ७ सब लोग बड़ी देर तक ... | रहना to stay |
| <i>sab log baṛī der tak ...</i> | <i>rahnā</i> |
| ८ दूसरे दिन बच्चे देर से ... | उठना to get up |
| <i>dūsre din bacche der se ...</i> | <i>uṭhnā</i> |

Answers: 1 बनाया *banāyā*; 2 आई *āī*; 3 आए *āe*; 4 बजाया *bajāyā*; 5 भौंका *bhaūkā*; 6 खाए *khāe*; 7 रहे *rahe*; 8 उठे *uṭhe*.

How many did you see?

Make up sentences on the model of मैंने एक मकान देखा *maīne ek makān dekhā* 'I saw one house', to reflect the following objects:



Check the back of the book for the answers.

Some special pronouns...

Some pronouns have special oblique forms for the *ने* *ne* construction:

PRONOUN	USUAL OBLIQUE	SPECIAL FORM + <i>ने</i> <i>ne</i>
मैं <i>mai</i>	मुझ <i>mujh</i>	मैंने <i>maïne</i>
तू <i>tū</i>	तुझ <i>tujh</i>	तूने <i>tūne</i>
ये <i>ye</i>	इन <i>in</i>	इन्होंने <i>inhōne</i>
वे <i>ve</i>	उन <i>un</i>	उन्होंने <i>unhōne</i>

And some special verbs

Some very common verbs have irregular participles:

- करना *karnā* 'to do': किया, किए, की, कीं *kiyā, kie, kī, kī* 'did'
 देना *denā* 'to give': दिया, दिए, दी, दीं *diyā, die, dī, dī* 'gave'
 लेना *lenā* 'to take': लिया, लिए, ली, लीं *liyā, lie, lī, lī* 'took'
 पीना *pinā* 'to drink': पिया, पिए, पी, पीं *piyā, pie, pī, pī* 'drank'

▶ What did Geeta see?

Now answer the questions using the data supplied on the right (with which the verb must agree!):

- | | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| १ गीता ने क्या देखा ?
<i>Gītā ne kyā dekhā?</i> | एक नई फिल्म
<i>ek nai film</i> |
| २ राजू ने क्या खरीदा ?
<i>Rājū ne kyā kharidā?</i> | दो अखबार
<i>do akhbār</i> |
| ३ मोती ने क्या खाया ?
<i>Motī ne kyā khāyā?</i> | दस चपातियाँ
<i>das capātiyā</i> |
| ४ मीना ने क्या पढ़ा ?
<i>Mīnā ne kyā parhā?</i> | दो कहानियाँ
<i>do kahāniyā</i> |
| ५ हमने कितने कुरते खरीदे ?
<i>hamne kitne kurte kharide?</i> | चार
<i>cār</i> |
| ६ उन्होंने मेज़ पर क्या रखा ?
<i>unhōne mez par kyā rakhā?</i> | कुछ किताबें
<i>kuch kitābē</i> |
| ७ आपने दीवार पर क्या लिखा ?
<i>āpne divar par kyā likhā?</i> | अपना नाम
<i>apnā nam</i> |

८ तुमने क्या सुना ?
tumne kyā sunā?

कई बातें
kai bātē

९ तुमने कितनी भाषाएँ सीखीं ?
tumne kitnī bhāṣāē sikhī?

एक ही
ek hī

All verbs that take the *ने* *ne* construction are shown with ^N in the English-Hindi glossary (e.g. देखना *dekhnā*^N) at the end of the book. The construction itself may take some time to digest — like Moti's ten chapatties.

A particular object

Back in section 7.2 we saw that *को* *ko* is often added to an object that's particularized in some way. (Turn back to 7.2 now if you've forgotten this.) If *को* *ko* is added to the object of a *ने* *ne* verb, then the verb reverts to a masculine singular.

राम ने चपाती को खाया ।

Rām ne capātī ko khāyā. Ram ate the chapatti.

मैंने उनके बच्चों को देखा ।

maïne unke baccō ko dekhā. I saw their children.

उसने किताबों को पढ़ा ।

usne kitābō ko parhā. He/she read the books.

The verbs in these three sentences all end in *-ā* (खाया *khāyā*, देखा *dekhā*, पढ़ा *parhā*) because in each one the presence of *को* *ko* insulates the verb from its object.

3 Other perfective tenses

In English we differentiate time frames by saying 'I wrote, have written, had written, will have written' etc. Similarly in Hindi, all three kinds of perfective verbs can be used in different time frames by adding auxiliary verbs (है *hai*, था *thā* etc.):

A राजू ने चिट्ठी लिखी ।

Rājū ne ciṭṭhī likhī. Raju wrote a letter.

B राजू ने चिट्ठी लिखी है ।

Rājū ne ciṭṭhī likhī hai. Raju has written a letter.

- C राजू ने चिट्ठी लिखी थी ।
Rājū ne ciṭṭhī likhī thī. Raju had written a letter (or wrote it some time ago).
- D राजू ने चिट्ठी लिखी होगी ।
Rājū ne ciṭṭhī likhī hogī. Raju will have written a letter.
- E राजू ने चिट्ठी लिखी हो ।
Rājū ne ciṭṭhī likhī ho. Raju may have written a letter.

COMMENTARY

- A लिखी *likhī*, no auxiliary verb; it's the simple past.
- B लिखी है *likhī hai*, 'has written' (है *hai* is singular because चिट्ठी *ciṭṭhī* is singular), suggesting that the effect of the writing is still felt in the present.
- C लिखी थी *likhī thī* (both words are feminine singular, to agree with चिट्ठी *ciṭṭhī*), suggesting that the action happened some time earlier.
- D लिखी होगी *likhī hogī* 'will have written', either referring to some future time (such as 'Raju will have written a letter by Monday'), or making an assumption about the present (such as 'Presumably Raju will have written a letter by now').
- E लिखी हो *likhī ho* 'may have written', in which the subjunctive हो *ho* shows that the matter is open to some doubt.

The same range can be used with any perfective verb:

पिताजी मिठाई लाए हैं/ थे ।

pitāji miṭhāī lāe hai/ the. Father has/had brought sweets.

पिताजी मिठाई लाए होंगे/ हों ।

pitāji miṭhāī lāe hōge. Father will/may have brought sweets.

In the above, the verbs agree with पिताजी *pitāji* (masculine honorific plural) because लाना *lānā*, though transitive, is *not* a ने *ne* verb.

मोती ने दस चपातियाँ खाई हैं/ थीं ।

Motī ne das chapātiyā khāī hai/ thī. Moti has/had eaten ten chapatties.

मोती ने दस चपातियाँ खाई होंगी/हों ।

Motī ne das chapātiyā khāī hōgi/ hō. Moti will/may have eaten ten chapatties.

▶ Raju's version of the morning

Here's Raju's account of his morning, following an evening when he and Geeta had been to see a Hindi film starring Shahrukh Khan. Make sure you can understand all the verb agreements!



आज सुबह मैं पाँच बजे उठा ।
 थोड़ी देर के लिए मैं आँगन में
 बैठा । कल शाम को जब हम
 शाहरुख़ ख़ाँ की नई फिल्म
 देखने सिनेमा गए तो बारिश
 हुई थी लेकिन आज मैंने देखा
 कि आकाश साफ़ है ।* सुबह
 के समय चारों ओर शान्ति
 होती है । मुझे सुबह का समय
 बहुत पसंद है ।

मैंने अपने लिए चाय बनाई । चाय पीने के बाद मैंने अपनी पत्नी
 को जगाया । चाय बनाना तो दो मिनट का काम है लेकिन
 मेमसाहब को जगाना दूसरी बात है । आखिर में जब वह नीचे आई
 तो मैंने उसका नाश्ता तैयार किया । मैं तो नाश्ता कभी नहीं
 खाता, लेकिन गीता ज़रूर खाती है । मैंने उसके लिए दो टोस्ट
 बनाए । उसने चाय पी, आधा केला भी खाया । उसने शिकायत
 की कि चाय में चीनी ज़्यादा है ।* मैंने कहा कि तुम्हारी जिन्दगी
 में थोड़ी मिठास की ज़रूरत है ।*

*āj subah māi pāc baje uṭhā. thoṛī der ke lie māi āgan mē baiṭhā.
 kal sām ko jab ham Śāhrukh Khā ki nāī film dekhne sinemā gae
 to bāris hui thī lekin āj māine dekhā ki ākās sāf hai.* subah ke
 samay cārō or sānti hotī hai. mujhe subah kā samay bahut pasand
 hai.*

*māine apne lie cāy banāī. cāy pine ke bād māine apnī patnī ko
 jagāyā. cāy banāna to do minṭ kā kām hai lekin memsāhib ko
 jagānā dūsri bāt hai. ākhir mē jab vah nice āī to māine uskā nāštā
 taiyār kiyā. māī to nāštā kabhī nahī khātā, lekin Gītā zarūr khātī
 hai. māine uske lie do ṭoṣt banāe. usne cāy pī, ādhā kelā bhī
 khāyā. usne śikāyat kī ki cāy mē cinī zyādā hai.* māine kahā ki
 tumhāri zindagī mē thoṛī miṭhās kī zarūrat hai.**

This morning I got up at five o'clock. For a little while I sat in the courtyard. Yesterday evening when we went to the cinema to see Shahrukh Khan's new film it had rained; but today I saw that the sky was clear.* In the mornings it's peaceful all around. I'm very fond of the morning time.

I made tea for myself. After having tea I woke up my wife. Making tea is two minutes' work but waking up the memsahib is another matter. Finally, when she came down I got her breakfast ready. Me, I never eat breakfast, but Geeta does of course. I made two pieces of toast for her. She had tea and ate half a banana too. She complained that there was too much sugar in the tea.* I said that she needed a bit of sweetness in her life.*

These three sentences show the use of 'reported speech' in Hindi. Literally, they translate as 'Today I saw that the sky is clear'; 'She complained that "There's too much sugar in the tea"'; and 'I said, "In your life a bit of sweetness is needed"'.

Practise what you've learnt

Time for you to try your hand at the past tenses. Translate the following:

- 1 I got up early today.
- 2 My father woke me up at six o'clock.
- 3 He prepared breakfast for me.
- 4 Then I went out to buy a newspaper.
- 5 Near the shop I saw my uncle's car.
- 6 My uncle had gone into the shop.
- 7 My uncle saw me and asked me how I was.
- 8 He came home with me and I made coffee for him.
- 9 My father asked me where the newspaper was.
- 10 I said I hadn't brought the newspaper, I'd brought uncle.

► Geeta's version of the morning

आम तौर पर राजू मुझे देर से जगाता है लेकिन आज उसने मुझे जल्दी ही जगाया। मैं आराम से सो रही थी और शाहरुख ख़ाँ का सपना देख रही थी। इतना मीठा सपना था ! जब मैंने अपने पति की आवाज़ सुनी तो मैंने सोचा कि शाहरुख़ ही मुझे जगाने आया है। लेकिन यह तो सपना ही था। मैं नीचे रसोई में गई। मेरे पति

ने मेरे लिए दो टोस्ट बनाए थे। मैंने उसे कितनी बार बताया है कि मुझे टोस्ट पसंद नहीं लेकिन वह तो सुनता ही नहीं। चाय में उसने बहुत ज़्यादा चीनी डाली थी। मेरे सिर में दर्द था इसलिए मैंने दो गोलियाँ खाईं। राजू ने मुझे जगाने से पहले ही नाश्ता किया होगा क्योंकि मेरे साथ तो उसने कुछ नहीं खाया। मैंने उससे पूछा कि तुमने मुझे इतनी जल्दी क्यों जगाया, लेकिन उसने कोई जवाब नहीं दिया। शाहरुख़, तू कहाँ है ?

ām taur par Rājū mujhe der se jagātā hai lekin āj usne mujhe jaldī hī jagāyā. maī ārām se so rahī thī aur Śāhrukh Khāṅ kā sapnā dekh rahī thī. itnā mīṭhā sapnā thā! jab maīne apne pati kī āvāz sunī to maīne socā kī Śāhrukh hī mujhe jagāne āyā hai. lekin yah to sapnā hī thā. maī nice rasoī mẽ gai. mere pati ne mere lie do ṭoṣṭ banāe the. mainē use kitnī bār batāyā hai kī mujhe ṭoṣṭ pasand nahī lekin vah to suntā hī nahī. cāy mẽ usne bahut zyādā cīnī ḍālī thī. mere sir mẽ dard thā islie maīne do goliyā khāī. Rājū ne mujhe jagāne se pahle hī nāṣṭā kiyā hogā kyōki mere sāth to usne kuch nahī khāyā. maīne usse pūchā kī tumne mujhe itnī jaldī kyō jagāyā, lekin usne koī javāb nahī diyā. Śāhrukh, tū kahā hai?

Usually Raju wakes me late but today he woke me very early. I was sleeping peacefully and dreaming about Shahrukh Khan [an actor]. It was such a sweet dream! When I heard my husband's voice I thought Shahrukh himself had come to wake me. But this was just a dream. I went down into the kitchen. My husband had made two pieces of toast for me. How many times have I told him that I don't like toast, but him, he doesn't listen. He'd put far too much sugar in the tea. I had a headache so I took two pills. Raju must have had breakfast before waking me because he didn't eat anything with me. I asked him why he woke me up so early but he didn't answer. Shahrukh, where art thou?

And here are some questions about the two accounts:

- १ सबसे पहले कौन उठा ?
sabse pahle kaun uthā?
- २ किसने किसके लिए नाश्ता तैयार किया ?
kisne kiske lie nāṣṭā taiyār kiyā?
- ३ गीता को जगाने से पहले राजू ने क्या क्या किया ?
Gītā ko jagāne se pahle Rājū ne kyā kyā kiyā?

- ४ चाय के बारे में गीता की क्या शिकायत थी ?
cāy ke bare mẽ Gītā kī kyā śikāyat thī?
- ५ गीता ने नाश्ता कहाँ किया ?
Gītā ne nāštā kahā kiyā?
- ६ किसने गोलियाँ खाई, और क्यों ?
kisne goliyā khāī, aur kyō?
- ७ क्या राजू और गीता को जल्दी उठना पसंद है ?
kyā Rājū aur Gīta ko jaldī uṭhnā pasand hai?
- ८ जब गीता ने राजू की आवाज़ सुनी तो उसने क्या सोचा ?
jab Gītā ne Rājū kī āvāz sunī to usne kyā socā?
- ९ क्या शाहरूख ने गीता के साथ चाय पी ?
kyā Śāhrukh ne Gītā ke sāth cāy pī?

4 Sit and rest – linking two actions

English often links two successive actions with 'and', as in 'sit and rest'. But Hindi has a neat short cut for this. Instead of saying बैठो और आराम करो *baiṭho aur ārām karo* we can say बैठकर आराम करो *baiṭhkar ārām karo*, in which बैठकर *baiṭhkar* means literally 'having sat'.

This short verb form has a long name — the 'absolutive'. (The name means that the construction is complete in itself, and has no impact on the surrounding grammar.) It consists of the stem + कर *kar*, thus जाकर *jākar* 'having gone', देखकर *dekhkar* 'having seen', etc.

हाथ धोकर खाओ ।

hāth dhokar khāo. Wash your hands and eat.

बैठकर आराम करो ।

baiṭhkar ārām karo. Sit and rest.

सोचकर बोलो ।

sockar bolo. Think before you speak.

चाय पीकर जाइए ।

cāy pīkar jāie. Have some tea before you go.

A colloquial form of the absolutive has -के *-ke* instead of -कर *-kar* (आके *āke*, जाके *jāke*, देखके *dekhke*, बुलाके *bulāke*). The verb करना *karnā* always uses this -के *-ke* form: करके *karke* 'having done'.

हाथ धोके खाओ ।

hāth dhoke khāo. Wash your hands and eat.

अपना काम खत्म करके घर जाओ ।

apnā kām khatm karke ghar jāo. Finish your work and go home.

▶ What really happened that morning

Here's a third-person account of Raju and Geeta's morning. It contains several 'absolutive' expressions — how many can you spot?

आज उठकर राजू नीचे गया । फिर चाय बनाकर वह आँगन में बैठने गया । चाय पीकर वह अपने सपनों के बारे में सोचने लगा । सपने में उसने शाहरूख ख़ाँ को देखा था । दरवाज़े को तोड़कर शाहरूख घर में घुसा था, लेकिन राजू ने मेज़ पर से एक भारी शब्दकोश को उठाकर शाहरूख को ख़ूब पीटा था ।

सात बजे राजू ने गीता का नाम पुकारकर उसे जगाने की कोशिश की लेकिन गीता तो घोड़े बेचकर सो रही थी । तब राजू ने खुद चार-पाँच टोस्ट बनाकर खाए । फिर तीन-चार संतरे खाए । आठ बजे उसने गीता के कंधे को हिलाकर उसे जगाया । फिर उसके लिए चाय बनाकर दो टोस्ट भी बनाए । जँभाई लेकर गीता ने कहा कि "संतरा देना" तो राजू ने हँसकर कहा कि "मनोज ने जल्दी उठके सारे संतरे खाए होंगे, उसे तो संतरे बहुत पसंद हैं" ।

āj uṭhkar Rājū nice gayā. phir cāy banākar vah āgan mẽ baiṭhne gayā. cāy pīkar vah apne sapnō ke bare mẽ socne lagā. sapne mẽ usne Śāhrukh Khā ko dekhā thā. darvāze ko torkar Śāhrukh ghar mẽ ghusā thā, lekin Rājū ne mez par se ek bhāri śabdkoś ko uṭhākar Śāhrukh ko khūb pītā thā.

sāt baje Rājū ne Gītā kā nām pukārkar use jagāne kī kośīś kī lekin Gītā to ghore bekar so rahī thī. tab Rājū ne khud cār-pāc ṭoṣṭ banākar khāe. phir tīn-cār santare khāe. āṭh baje usne Gītā ke kandhe ko hilākar use jagāyā. phir uske lie cāy banākar do ṭoṣṭ bhī banāe. jābhāī lekar Gītā ne kahā kī 'santarā denā' to Rājū ne hāskar kahā kī 'Manoj ne jaldī uṭhke sāre santare khāe hōge, use to santare bahut pasand hai!'

Today Raju got up and went downstairs. Then he made tea and went to sit in the courtyard. After drinking his tea he began to

think about his dreams. He had dreamed of Shahrukh Khan. Shahrukh had broken down the door and come into the room, but Raju had picked up a heavy dictionary from on the table and had given Shahrukh a good thrashing.

At seven o'clock Raju called out Gita's name and tried to wake her, but she was sleeping deeply. Raju himself made four or five pieces of toast and ate them. Then he ate three or four oranges. At eight o'clock he shook Geeta's shoulder and woke her. Then he made tea for her, and two pieces of toast as well. Geeta yawned and said 'Give me an orange', and Raju laughed and said, 'Manoj must have got up early and eaten all the oranges, he loves oranges!'

Exercise 10a Link the paired sentences about Raju and Javed, following the model shown. Remember that whether *ने ne* is used will depend on the main verb: in the model sentence, *ने ne* is used when the main verb is पीना *pīnā*, but not when it's जाना *jānā*.

मैंने चाय पी । मैं घर गया । > मैं चाय पीकर घर गया ।
maīne cāy pī. maī ghar gayā. > maī cāy pīkar ghar gayā.

१ जावेद ने मुझे फोन किया । उसने कहा कि तबियत खराब है ।
Jāved ne mujhe fon kiyā. usne kahā ki tabiyat kharāb hai.

२ मैं जावेद के घर गया । मैं उसके कमरे में गया ।
maī Jāved ke ghar gayā. maī uske kamre mē gayā.

३ मैंने जावेद का हाल देखा । मैंने डाक्टर को बुलाया ।
maīne Jāved kā hāl dekhā. maīne dāktar ko bulāyā.

४ थोड़ी देर में डाक्टर आए । उन्होंने कहा कि जावेद बहुत ही कमज़ोर है ।
thoṛī der mē dāktar āe. unhōne kahā ki Jāved bahut hī kamzor hai.

५ डाक्टर ने जावेद को कुछ गोलियाँ दीं । उन्होंने उससे कहा कि रोज़ दो गोलियाँ लेना ।
dāktar ne Jāved ko kuch goliyāṅ dī. unhōne usse kahā ki roz do goliyāṅ lenā.

६ जावेद मुस्कराया । उसने डाक्टर से धन्यवाद कहा ।
Jāved muskarāyā. usne dāktar se dhanyavād kahā.

७ डाक्टर ने मेरी तरफ़ देखा । उन्होंने कहा कि "अच्छा, तो मैं चलता हूँ" ।

dāktar ne merī taraf dekhā. unhōne kahā ki 'acchā, to maī caltā hū'.

८ मैं ने कहा कि चाय पीजिए । फिर जाइए ।

maīne kahā ki cāy pījie. phir jāie.

९ डाक्टर हैंसे । उन्होंने कहा कि मैं चाय नहीं लूँगा, अपनी फ़ीस लूँगा !

dāktar hāse. unhōne kahā ki maī cāy nahī lūṅgā, apnī fīs lūṅgā!

Exercise 10b Translate into Hindi. (This is a longish piece; you may want to do it in two parts. You'll find the new vocabulary in the glossary on the following pages.)

Yesterday morning I got up at six o'clock. After having breakfast I phoned my brother. He was sleeping. When he heard my voice he said, 'Why did you wake me up so early?' I said, 'Don't you remember? Today we are going to Jaipur [जयपुर *jaypur*]!' He asked, 'What time are we going?' I answered, 'We'll catch the ten o'clock train. Get ready quickly!' He yawned and said that he'd had a dream in the night. In the dream an old woman had said to him, 'Don't go anywhere today! Stay right at home!' I laughed and said, 'This was just a dream! Get up, won't you! Get ready.'

The train moved out of the station at exactly ten o'clock. But after twenty or twenty-five minutes it stopped. The engine had broken down. It was a desolate place; there was no village or house nearby. In the July heat everyone got down from the train and waited for several hours in the shade of some small trees. The heat was terrible. At three o'clock another train came and stopped. This second train had come to bring the passengers back to Delhi.

We heard the story of the train on the radio. We'd taken that old woman's advice! We'll go to Jaipur tomorrow...

Glossary

अकेलापन *akelāpan* m. loneliness
 आकाश *ākāś* m. sky
 आम ¹ *ām* m. mango
 आम ² *ām* ordinary; आम तौर पर *ām taur par* usually
 आराम से *ārām se* comfortably, easily
 इंजन *injan* m. engine (train)
 इंतज़ार *intazār* m. waiting, expecting; का इंतज़ार करना *kā intazār karnā* to wait for
 इतना *itnā* so much, so
 उठाना *uṭhānā* to pick up, raise
 कंधा *kandhā* m. shoulder
 कमज़ोर *kamzor* weak
 कहीं *kahī* anywhere
 कुरता *kurtā* m. kurta, loose shirt
 केला *kelā* m. banana
 खत्म *khatm* finished; खत्म करना *khatm karnā* to finish
 खराब हो जाना *kharāb ho jānā* to break down
 खुद *khud* oneself (myself etc.)
 गाँव *gāv* m. village
 गोली *golī* f. tablet, pill; bullet
 घुसना *ghusnā* to enter, sneak in, break in
 घोड़ा *ghoṛā* m. horse; घोड़े बेचकर सोना *ghoṛe bekar sonā* to sleep like a log
 चपाती *capāti* f. chapati
 चारों ओर *cārō or* all around
 चिट्ठी *ciṭṭhī* f. letter, note
 चीनी *cīnī* f. sugar
 जँभाई *jābhāi* f. yawn

जागाना *jagānā* to awaken
 जल्दी *jaldī* quickly, early; f. hurry
 जीतना *jītnā* to win, conquer
 टोस्ट *toṣṭ* m. toast, piece of toast
 ठीक *ṭhik* exactly
 डालना *ḍālnā* to put, pour
 तकलीफ़ *taklif* f. suffering, pain, discomfort, inconvenience, trouble
 तब *tab* then
 तैयार *taiyār* ready, prepared; तैयार हो जाना *taiyār ho jānā* to get ready
 तोड़ना *toṛnā* to break, smash
 दर्द *dard* m. pain
 दाल *dāl* f. daal, lentil
 दीवार *divār*, दीवाल *divāl* f. wall
 दुर्घटना *durghatnā* f. accident
 देर *der* f. a while, length of time; delay; देर से *der se* late
 नहाना *nahānā* to bathe
 पकड़ना *pakarnā* to catch
 पार्टी *pāṛṭī* f. party
 पीटना *pītnā* to beat, thrash
 पुकारना *pukārnā* to call out
 पेट *peṭ* m. stomach
 प्यास *pyās* f. thirst; प्यास लगना *pyās lagnā* (thirst to strike) to feel thirsty
 फ़ीस *fīs* f. fee, fees
 बढ़िया *barhiyā* (invariable -ā) excellent, really good, fine
 बत्ती *battī* f. light, lamp
 बस *bas* f. bus

बाज़ार *bāzār* m. market, bazaar
 बार *bār* f. time, occasion; इस बार *is bār* this time; कितनी बार *kitnī bār* how many times?; कई बार *kāi bār* several times
 बारिश *bāriś* f. rain; बारिश होना *bāriś honā* to rain
 बुलाना *bulānā* to call, invite, summon
 बोटल *botal* f. bottle
 भयंकर *bhayankar* terrible
 भूख *bhūkh* f. hunger; भूख लगना *bhūkh lagnā* (hunger to strike) to feel hungry
 महसूस करना *mahsūs karnā* to feel
 मिठाई *miṭhāi* f. sweet, sweetmeat
 मिठास *miṭhās* f. sweetness

मीठा *miṭhā* sweet
 मेमसाहब *memsāhab* f. memsahib
 यात्री *yātri* m. traveller, passenger
 रसोई *rasoī* f. kitchen
 लौटना *lauṭnā* to return
 शांति *śānti* f. peace
 शिकायत *śikāyat* f. complaint; शिकायत करना *śikāyat karnā* to complain
 संतरा *santarā* m. orange
 सलाह *salāh* f. advice
 साया *sāyā* m. shade, shadow
 सिर *sir* m. head
 सुनसान *sunsān* desolate, empty
 हिलाना *hilānā* to move, shake
 हुआ *huā* [past tense of होना *honā*] 'happened'

▶ 1 A verb with many meanings

The verb लगना *lagnā* (literally 'to strike') carries a variety of meanings. Many of these relate to the experiencing of sensations such as heat or cold, hunger or thirst, which 'strike' or impinge on the person; but the range of usages is very wide. Here are some of them:

'To seem':

लगता है कि वह नहीं आएगी ।

lagtā hai ki vah nahī āegī. It seems she won't come.

तुम बहुत खुश नहीं लगते ।

tum bahut khūś nahī lagte. You don't seem too happy.

'Thirst/hunger/cold (etc.) to strike':

हमें गरमी/ठंड लग रही है ।

hamē garmī/ṭhaṇḍ lag rahī hai. We're feeling hot/cold.

मुझे प्यास/भूख लगी है ।

mujhe pyās/bhūkh lagī hai. I'm feeling thirsty/hungry.

'To strike one as good/bad etc.':

यह जगह मुझे बहुत अच्छी लगती है ।

yah jagah mujhe bahut acchī lagtī hai. I really like this place.

उनकी बातें हमें बुरी लगीं ।

unkī bātē hamē burī lagī. We were hurt by what they said.

'To begin' (here it follows an oblique infinitive such as होने *hone*):

बारिश होने लगी ।

bāris hone lagī. It began raining.

मैं सोचने लगा कि अब तो वह नहीं आएगी ।

maī socne lagī ki ab to vah nahī āegī. I began to think that she wouldn't come now.

'Time to be taken' (already seen in Unit 9; here the *unit of time* is the subject):

सितार सीखने में सात साल लगेंगे ।

sitār sikhne mē sāt sāl lagēge. Learning the sitar will take seven years.

In this unit you will learn

- how to say 'should' and 'must'
- how to describe things *being done*
- how to give directions

Language points

- obligation expressions
- passive verbs

कहा जाता है कि ...

kahā

it is said that...

2 Finding the way in Vilaspur

In this section we'll look at expressions that are useful for finding your way. Your first task is to familiarize yourself with the new words relating to 'directions' in the chapter glossary.

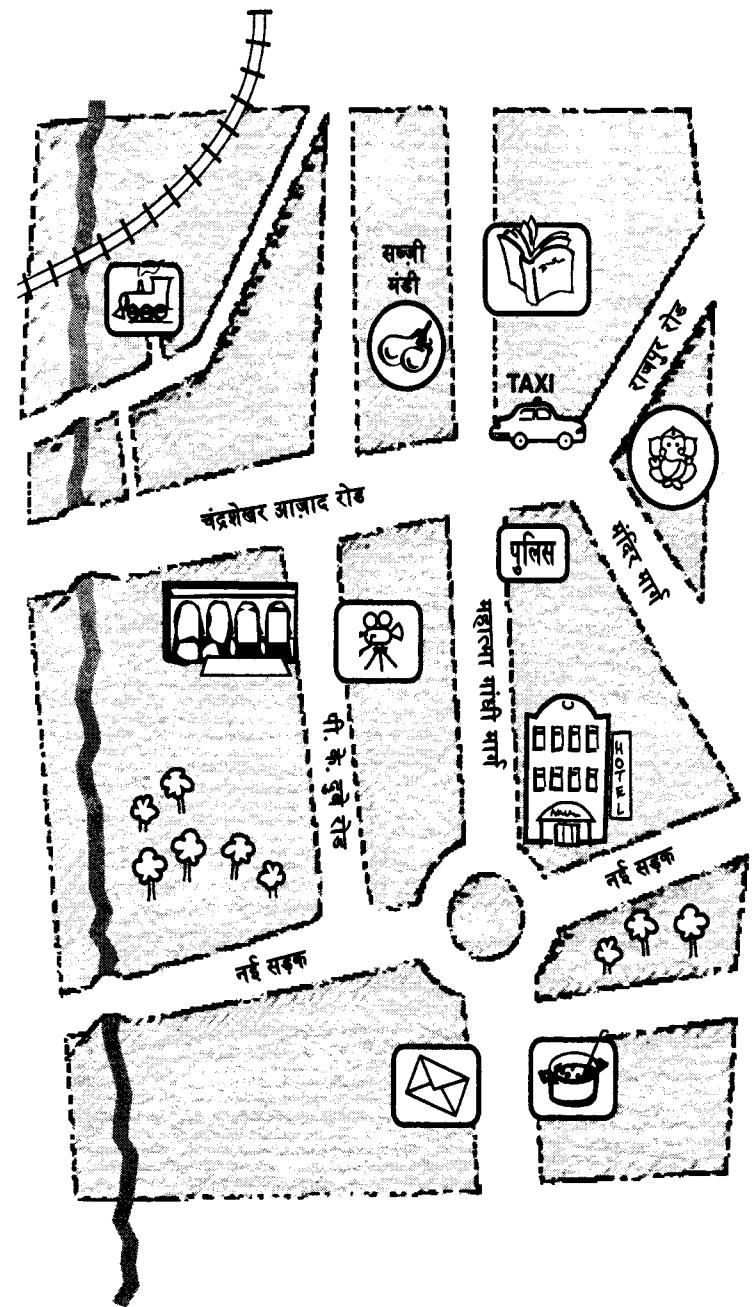
Then come with the Sharmas to the town of Vilaspur, shown in the map opposite; they're are going to stay at the Madhuban Hotel and have been given some directions for getting there from the station:

स्टेशन से निकलकर दाहिने मुड़िए। थोड़ी दूरी पर बायें हाथ पर एक तंग गली आएगी। इस गली में मुड़ना। आगे चलकर एक चौड़ी सड़क आएगी जिसे "चंद्रशेखर आज़ाद रोड" कहते हैं। बाएँ मुड़कर और सड़क को पार करके आप चलते जाएँ। दाहिने हाथ पर स्कूल दिखाई देगा। इसके बाद आप दाहिने मुड़िए। इस सड़क का नाम मुझे याद नहीं लेकिन बायें हाथ पर सिनेमा दिखाई देगा। फिर थोड़ी दूर जाकर एक दूसरी बड़ी सड़क आएगी जिसे शायद "नई सड़क" कहते हैं। बाएँ मुड़िए। फिर गोलचक्कर आएगा। गोलचक्कर के उस पार आपका मधुबन होटल दिखाई देगा।

स्टेशन से मधुबन होटल ज़्यादा दूर नहीं है। मुश्किल से आठ-दस मिनट का रास्ता है। अगर आपके पास बहुत सामान हो तो बेहतर है कि आप रिक्शा लें। रिक्शेवाले से कहें कि होटल "एम० जी० रोड" पर है। वह बीस-पच्चीस रुपये लेगा। आप उसे पच्चीस से ज़्यादा न दें।

ṣṭeśan se nikalkar dāhine muṛie. thoṛī dūri par bāyē hāth par ek taṅg galī āegī. is galī mẽ muraṇā. āge calkar ek cauṛī sarak āegī jise 'Candraśekhara Āzād roḍ' kahte hai. bāyē muṛkar aur sarak ko pāṛ karke āp calte jāē. dāhine hāth par skūl dikhāi degā. iske bād āp dāhine muṛie. is sarak kā nām mujhe yād nahī lekin bāyē hāth par sinemā dikhāi degā. phir thoṛī dūr jākar ek dūsri baṛī sarak āegī jise śāyad 'nai sarak' kahte hai. bāyē muṛie. phir golcakkara āegā. golcakkara ke us pāṛ āpkā madhubana hoṭal dikhāi degā.

ṣṭeśan se madhubana hoṭal zyādā dūr nahī hai. muškila se āṭh-das minaṭ kā rāstā hai. agar āpke pās bahut sāmān ho to behtar hai ki āp rikṣā lē. rikṣevāle se kahē ki hoṭal 'em. jī. roḍ' par hai. vah bīs-paccīs rupaye legā. āp use paccīs se zyādā na dē.



Emerging from the station, turn right. At a short distance you'll come to a narrow alley. Turn into this alley. Going straight on you'll reach a wide road which is called Chandrashekhar Azad Road. Turning left and crossing the road, keep going. A school will be seen on the right. After this turn right. I don't remember the name of this road but you'll see a cinema on your left. Then a little further on you'll come to another big road which is called maybe 'Nai Sarak' [New Road]. Turn left. Then you'll come to a roundabout. On the other side of the roundabout you'll see your Madhuban Hotel.

The Madhuban Hotel isn't far from the station. It's barely an eight- or ten-minute trip. If you've got a lot of luggage it would be better to take a rickshaw. Tell the rickshaw driver that the hotel is on 'M.G. Road'. The rickshaw driver will take 20 or 25 rupees. You shouldn't give him more than 25.

Play around with the map, describing journeys from place to place. Then...

True or false?

Are these statements right (सही *sahī*) or wrong (गलत *galat*)?

Answers below.

	सही <i>sahī</i>	गलत <i>galat</i>
१ मधुबन होटल के सामने एक स्कूल है । <i>madhuban hoṭal ke sāmne ek skūl hai.</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
२ सिनेमा थाने की बगल में है । <i>sinemā thāne kī bagal mẽ hai.</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
३ विलासपुर में तीन छोटे-से पुल हैं । <i>vilāspur mẽ tīn choṭe-se pul hai.</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
४ डाकघर के सामने एक ढाबा है । <i>ḍākghar ke sāmne ek ḍhābā hai.</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
५ सिनेमा गोल-चक्कर के बहुत पास है । <i>sinemā golcakkār ke bahut pās hai.</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
६ नई सड़क को "एम. जी. रोड" भी कहते हैं । <i>naī sarāk ko 'em. jī. roḍ' bhī kahte hai.</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

७ इस नक्शे में कुछ पेड़ दिखाई देते हैं । <i>is naqše mẽ kuch peḍ dikhāi dete hai.</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
८ गणेश मंदिर पश्चिम की तरफ है । <i>Gaṇeś mandir paścim kī taraf hai.</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
९ स्टेशन से पुस्तकालय तक एक घंटे का रास्ता है । <i>steśan se pustakālay tak ek ghaṅṭe kā rāstā hai.</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
१० स्टेशन से गणेश मंदिर पहुँचने में छह-सात मिनट से ज़्यादा नहीं लगेंगे । <i>steśan se Gaṇeś mandir pahūcne mẽ chah-sāt minaṭ se zyādā nahī lagēge.</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Answers: 2, 3, 4, 5, 7 and 10 are right.

► 3 It is said that... the passive is easy

A passive verb is one that concentrates on *what is done*, rather than the person who does it. In other words, its focus is the action, not the doer of the action. Thus 'we give money' is active, and 'money is given' is passive. 'Money is given by the government' is also passive, but it identifies the doer of the action with a 'by' phrase.

The passive is based on the perfective participle (e.g. दिया *diyā* 'given'). But whereas English forms its passive with 'to be', Hindi uses जाना *jānā* — literally 'to go':

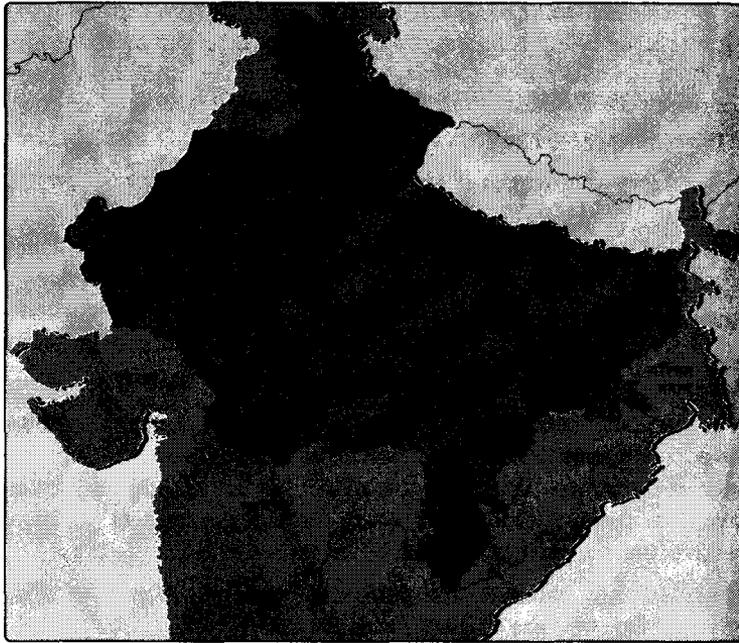
करना <i>karnā</i> to do	किया जाना <i>kiyā jānā</i> to be done
देना <i>denā</i> to give	दिया जाना <i>diyā jānā</i> to be given
रखना <i>rakhnā</i> to put	रखा जाना <i>rakhā jānā</i> to be put

होटल का इंतज़ाम किया जा रहा है ।
hoṭal kā intazām kiyā jā rahā hai. Arrangements for a hotel are being made.

आपको एक अच्छा कमरा दिया जाएगा ।
āpko ek acchā kamrā diyā jāegā. You will be given a good room.
आपका सामान टैक्सी में रखा गया है ।
āpkā sāmān ṭaiksī mẽ rakhā gayā hai. Your luggage has been put into the taxi.

India: states and languages

This map of northern India shows the ten states (shaded) where Hindi is the primary language.



Hindi is closely related to its neighbouring languages, such as Marathi (spoken in Maharashtra), Gujarati (Gujarat), Punjabi (Punjab), Bengali (West Bengal and Bangladesh), and so on. All these languages derive from Sanskrit, and share much vocabulary.

In South India — not shown here — are the four major languages of the 'Dravidian' family: Tamil (spoken in Tamil Nadu), Malayalam (Kerala), Kannada (Karnataka) and Telugu (Andhra Pradesh).

Now you have all the information you need to answer a few questions that involve passive verbs:

- १ तमिल कहाँ बोली जाती है?
tamil kahā bolī jāti hai?
- २ मराठी कहाँ बोली जाती है?
marāṭhī kahā bolī jāti hai?
- ३ केरल में कौनसी भाषा बोली जाती है?
keral mē kaunsi bhāṣā bolī jāti hai?

- ४ हिन्दी कितने प्रदेशों में बोली जाती है?
hindī kitne pradeśō mē bolī jāti hai?
- ५ दिल्ली और बिहार के बीच कौनसा प्रदेश पाया जाता है?
dilli aur bihār ke bīc kaunsa pradeś pāyā jāti hai?

Practise what you've learnt

Work out the passive infinitives of the following verbs (example: बनाना *banānā* to make, बनाया जाना *banāyā jānā* to be made).

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| खाना <i>khānā</i> to eat | डालना <i>dālānā</i> to pour |
| पीना <i>pinā</i> to drink | बताना <i>batānā</i> to tell |
| लाना <i>lānā</i> to bring | लेना <i>lenā</i> to take |
| लिखना <i>likhnā</i> to write | कहना <i>kahnā</i> to say |

(Answers: खाया जाना *khāyā jānā*, डाला जाना *dālā jānā*, पिया जाना *piyā jānā*, बताया जाना *batāyā jānā*, लाया जाना *lāyā jānā*, लिया जाना *liyā jānā*, लिखा जाना *likhā jānā*, कहा जाना *kahā jānā*.)

Now make up a sentence using each of these passive verbs!

Agreement all round

Notice how *all* parts of the verb (the participle, e.g. दिया *diyā*, the form of जाना *jānā*, and the auxiliary होना *honā*) must agree with the subject. The subject is shown here in **bold**:

उनको **पैसा** दिया जाता है ।

unko paisā diyā jāti hai. Money is given to them.

उनको अच्छी **सलाह** दी जाती है ।

unko acchī salāh dī jāti hai. Good advice is given to them.

उनको **कपड़े** दिए जाते हैं ।

unko kapre diē jāte hai. Clothes are given to them.

Any tense can have a passive verb

The passive can be used with all tenses etc.:

उनको पैसा दिया जाता है । [Present imperfective]

unko paisā diyā jāti hai. Money is given to them.

उनको पैसा दिया जा रहा है । [Present continuous]

unko paisā diyā jā rahā hai. Money is being given to them.

उन्हें पैसा दिया गया । [Perfective]

unko paisā diyā gayā. Money was given to them.

उन्हें पैसा दिया जाएगा । [Future]

unko paisā diyā jāegā. Money will be given to them.

उन्हें पैसा दिया जाए । [Subjunctive]

unko paisā diyā jāe. Money should be given to them.

The person by whom an action is done can be identified with *से* *se* (or, in more formal Hindi, with *के* द्वारा *ke dvārā*):

पैसा सरकार से (सरकार के द्वारा) दिया जाता है ।

paisā sarkār se (sarkār ke dvārā) diyā jātā hai. Money is given by the government.

What's the passive for?

We use a passive verb when the main focus is on the *action done* rather than the *person doing it*. In saying 'this money was found under the chair', we're more concerned with the *act of finding* than with the person who found it; if it had been the other way round, we would have said 'So-and-so found this money under the chair'. In other words, passives offer a way of making 'impersonal statements': instead of saying 'we use the passive' at the beginning of this paragraph, I could have adopted a more impersonal tone by saying 'the passive is used...'. The passive is used a lot in Hindi.

▶ Sharma ji in his shop

Read the passage about Sharma ji in his shop, then answer the questions.

शर्मा जी अपनी दुकान में बैठकर सोच रहे थे । उन्होंने गोपाल को बुलाकर कहा, "बेटा, यह सारा सामान छोटे कमरे में रखो । फिर दुकान की सफाई करो । मैं बहुत थका हूँ, थोड़ी देर के लिए घर जाकर सोऊँगा । आठ बजे दुकान को बंद करना । फिर बीस रुपये लो और धोबी के पास जाकर मेरे साफ़ कपड़े लाओ ।" पर गोपाल से कुछ नहीं सुना गया क्योंकि वह रेडियो को सुन रहा था ।

Śarmā jī apnī dukān mē baiṭhkar soc rahe the. unhōne Gopāl ko bulākar kahā, 'beṭā, yah sārā sāmān choṭe kamre mē rakho. phir

dukān kī safāi karo. maī bahut thakā hū, thoṛī der ke lie ghar jākar soūgā. āṭh baje dukān ko band karnā. phir bis rupaye lo aur dhobī ke pās jākar mere sāf kapṛe lāo.' par Gopāl se kuch nahī sunā gayā kyōki vah reḍiyo ko sun rahā thā.

Sharma ji was sitting in his shop thinking. He called Gopal and said, 'Son, put this new stuff in the little room. Then clean the shop. I'm very tired, I'll go home and sleep for a little while. Close the shop at eight o'clock. Then take twenty rupees and go to the dhobi and bring my clean clothes.' But none of this was heard by Gopal because he was listening to the radio.

- १ गोपाल को किससे बुलाया गया ?
Gopāl ko kisse ["by whom"] bulāyā gayā?
- २ सामान कहाँ रखा जाएगा ?
sāmān kahā rakhā jāegā?
- ३ कमरे की सफाई किससे की जाएगी ?
kamre kī safāi kisse kī jāegī?
- ४ दुकान को कितने बजे बंद किया जाएगा ?
dukān ko kitne baje band kiyā jāega?
- ५ शर्मा जी के साफ़ कपड़े कहाँ से लाए जाएँगे ?
Śarmā jī ke sāf kapṛe kahā se lāe jāēge?
- ६ गोपाल से शर्मा जी की बातें क्यों नहीं सुनी गई ?
Gopāl se Śarmā jī kī bātē kyō nahī sunī gāī?

Did you know?

Why is it that some Hindi words resemble their English equivalents so closely? There are various reasons: words can be 'borrowed' by one language from another one, or similar words from two different languages may share a common origin. A few examples may help make this clearer. Some words (such as बूट *būṭ* 'boot') have been borrowed by Hindi from English; others (such as लूट *lūṭ*) have been borrowed by English from Hindi; others again, such as नाम *nām* 'name', or कटना *kaṭnā* 'to be cut', sound similar in the two languages because they have a shared ancestry going far back into the history of the Indo-European language family.

4 You should read this — obligations

Way back in Unit 5 we saw that चाहिए *cāhie*, used with को *ko*, meant 'wanted, needed'. This construction relates to things, objects — 'I want a newspaper', and so on:

आपको क्या चाहिए ?

āpko kyā cāhie? What do you need/want?

मुझे (मुझको) आज का अखबार चाहिए ।

mujhe (mujhko) āj kā akhbār cāhie. I want today's newspaper.

When चाहिए *cāhie* follows an infinitive verb (such as जाना *jānā* 'to go') it has a completely different meaning: it means 'should, ought to'. Though the meaning of चाहिए *cāhie* has changed here, the word को *ko* remains an essential part of the construction

मुझको घर जाना चाहिए ।

mujhko ghar jānā cāhie. I should go home.

आपको ध्यान से सुनना चाहिए ।

āpko dhyān se sunnā cāhie. You should listen carefully.

उनको समझना चाहिए ।

unko samajhnā cāhie. They should understand.

हमको चलना चाहिए ।

hamko calnā cāhie. We should be on our way.

तुमको यहाँ रहना चाहिए ।

tumko yahā rahnā cāhie. You should stay here.

If there's a direct object involved, the infinitive verb agrees with it. In the next two sentences, the verbs बोलना *bolnā* 'to speak' and सीखना *sikhnā* 'to learn' have to agree with its feminine object, उर्दू *urdū* —

तुमको उर्दू बोलनी चाहिए ।

tumko urdū bolnī cāhie. You should speak Urdu.

हमको थोड़ी उर्दू सीखनी चाहिए ।

hamko thoṛī urdū sikhnī cāhie. We should learn a little Urdu.

You'll notice similar agreements in the following:

उन्हें मेरी बात सुननी चाहिए ।

unhē merī bāt sunnī cāhie. They should listen to what I say.

डाइवर को नक्शा खरीदना चाहिए ।

drāivar ko naqṣā kharidnā cāhie. The driver should buy a map.

राजू को ये खत पढ़ने चाहिए ।

Rājū ko ye khat paṛhne cāhie. Raju should read these letters.

आपको उनकी सलाह लेनी चाहिए ।

āpko unkī salāh lenī cāhie. You should take their advice.

Before going further, read the last four sentences again and make sure you understand what the infinitive verbs (सुननी *sunnī*, खरीदना *kharidnā*, पढ़ने *paṛhne* and लेनी *lenī* respectively) agree with.

When we were doing the ने *ne* construction in Unit 10, we saw that the postposition को *ko* 'insulates' the verb, preventing agreement — हमने चिट्ठियाँ पढ़ीं *hamne ciṭṭhiyāṅ paṛhī*, but हमने चिट्ठियों को पढ़ा *hamne ciṭṭhiyō ko paṛhā*, both meaning 'we read the letters'. Similarly with obligation expressions, the verb reverts to masculine singular when the direct object takes को *ko*. Confused? Look at the examples:

हमें चिट्ठियाँ पढ़नी चाहिए ।

hamē ciṭṭhiyāṅ paṛhni cāhie. We should read the letters.

becomes...

हमें चिट्ठियों को पढ़ना चाहिए ।

hamē ciṭṭhiyō ko paṛhnā cāhie. We should read the letters.

उन्हें मेरी बात सुननी चाहिए ।

unhē merī bāt sunnī cāhie. They should listen to what I say.

becomes...

उन्हें मेरी बात को सुनना चाहिए ।

unhē merī bāt ko sunnā cāhie. They should listen to what I say.

Finally, using चाहिए *cāhie* in the past is simplicity itself. Just add था, थे, थी, थीं *thā, the, thī, thī*.

हमको ये चिट्ठियाँ पढ़नी चाहिए थीं ।

hamko ciṭṭhiyāṅ paṛhni cāhie thī. We should have read these letters.

उन्हें मेरी बात सुननी चाहिए थी ।

unhē merī bāt sunnī cāhie thī. They should have listened to what I said.

▶ Your help is needed

The Sharmas need your advice on various matters. Please respond:

- १ गीता बहुत थकी है। उसको क्या करना चाहिए ?
Gītā bahut thakī hai. usko kyā karnā cāhie?
- २ मनोज के सिर में दर्द है। उसे क्या करना चाहिए ?
Manoj ke sir mẽ dard hai. use kyā karnā cāhie?
- ३ राजू ने देखा है कि फ़र्श गंदी है। उसको क्या करना चाहिए ?
Rājū ne dekhā hai ki fars̄ gandī hai. usko kyā karnā cāhie?
- ४ मीना को भूख लगी है। उसको क्या करना चाहिए ?
Mīnā ko bhūkh lagī hai. usko kyā karnā cāhie?
- ५ शर्मा परिवार का घर बहुत छोटा है। उन लोगों को क्या करना चाहिए ?
Śarmā parivār kā ghar bahut choṭā hai. un logō ko kyā karnā cāhie?

5 You must read this — stronger obligations

When 'I should' gives way to 'I have to' or 'I must', चाहिए *cāhie* gives way to stronger expressions. The first of these involves using the infinitive verb with है *hai*, as in मुझे जाना है *mujhe jānā hai* 'I have to go' or 'I am to go'.

Let us imagine that Raju's agenda for the day includes writing some letters, talking to Javed, and meeting his brother Mohan. He'd say:

मुझे पाँच खत लिखने हैं।

mujhe pāc khat likhne hai. I have to write five letters.

मुझे जावेद से कुछ बातें कहनी हैं।

mujhe Jāved se kuch bātē kahni hai. I have to say some things to Javed.

मुझे मोहन से मिलना है।

mujhe Mohan se milnā hai. I have to meet Mohan.

The sense of compulsion here isn't very strong: these are just ordinary things that are to be done in the normal course of events. The verb agreement follows the pattern of the चाहिए *cāhie* usage: लिखने हैं *likhne hai* agrees with पाँच खत *pāc khat*, etc.

What's on today

The Sharma children have several things to do today. Taking as your model the sentence मनोज को जल्दी उठना है *Manoj ko jaldī uṭhnā hai* 'Manoj has to get up early', go through their lists.

MANOJ	MEENA	RAM
get up early	make breakfast	read a story
read the paper	do some studying	write a letter
go to the shops	write two letters	make a picture
phone Nani ji	rest	sleep at 9 o'clock

A stronger sense of compulsion involves the verb पड़ना *paṛnā*, literally meaning 'to fall' but here meaning 'to be compelled to', 'to really have to'. It's used when circumstances beyond your control make the action essential — as when the children have broken their father's radio...

हमें पिताजी को बताना पड़ेगा।

hamē pitāji ko batānā paṛegā. We'll have to tell father.

हमें नया रेडियो खरीदना पड़ेगा।

hamē nayā reḍiyo kharidnā paṛegā. We'll have to buy a new radio.

पिताजी को हमें पैसे देने पड़ेंगे।

pitāji ko hamē paise dene paṛēge. Father will have to give us the money.

In the imperfective (पड़ता है *partā hai*, or पड़ता था *partā thā*), this same construction implies a compulsion that occurs *regularly* —

हमें रोज़ काम करना पड़ता है।

hamē roz kām karnā partā hai. We have to work every day.

मुझे सात बजे उठना पड़ता था।

mujhe sāt baje uṭhnā partā thā. I [always] had to get up at seven.

क्या तुम्हें अपने कपड़े खुद धोने पड़ते हैं ?

kyā tumhē apne kapṛe khud dhone paṛte hai? Do you have to wash your own clothes?

In the perfective (पड़ा *parā*), this same construction implies an *unexpected* compulsion, such as some kind of unforeseen event or emergency, as on discovering that Meena's car was stolen — complete with the children's toys! Keep an eye on the agreements: watch पड़ा *parā* changing to पड़ी *parī* or पड़े *parē* to match the object.

मुझे पुलिस को फ़ोन करना पड़ा ।

mujhe pulis ko fon karnā parā. I had to phone the police.

घर जाने के लिए हमें टैक्सी लेनी पड़ी ।

ghar jāne ke lie hamē taikṣī lenī parī. We had to take a taxi to get home.

मुझे बच्चों के लिए नए खिलौने ख़रीदने पड़े ।

mujhe baccō ke lie nae khilaune kharīdne parē. I had to buy new toys for the children.

Exercise 11a Someone's having a party on Sunday. Translate:

- About thirty people will be invited.
- The house will be cleaned on Saturday.
- The food will be made on Sunday morning.
- In the afternoon some relatives will be fetched from the station.
- Presents will be given to the children.
- Lamps will be lit in the garden at night.
- Music will be played too.
- The neighbours will also be invited.

Exercise 11b Things haven't gone too well at the Madhuban Hotel, and you need to get the following points across to the long-suffering receptionist. Use passive verbs for the parts in bold print.

- Today's food wasn't fresh — it seems it was **made** yesterday.
- Your friends came to visit you last night, but you were not **told** that they had come.
- Someone's dirty clothes were **put** in your room.
- This evening you saw that the door of your room hadn't been **closed** properly...
-and your luggage had been **opened**.
- You were not **given** hot water for bathing.
- You gave clothes for washing two days ago but they have not been **given back**.

16 Your driver was **told** that he would [say 'will'] have to sleep in the car.

▶ **Exercise 11c** Enjoy (and translate) the receptionist's thoughts.

ये लोग मुझे क्यों तंग करते हैं ? वे हर रोज़ किसी चीज़ की शिकायत करते हैं । लगता है उनको शिकायत करना बहुत पसंद है । मालूम नहीं वे किस देश से आए हैं । मेरे ख़याल से हमारे देश में आकर लोगों को हर चीज़ की शिकायत नहीं करनी चाहिए । उनको इस देश का आदर करना चाहिए । सच है कि उनके सामान को खोला नहीं जाना चाहिए था, लेकिन सारी दूसरी बातें तो मामूली-सी थीं । मुझे मैनेजर ['manager'] को इसके बारे में बताना चाहिए पर मैं उन्हें बताना नहीं चाहता । नहीं बताऊँगा । ये लोग भाड़ में जाएँ !

ye log mujhe kyō tang karte hai? ve har roz kisī ciz kī śikāyat karte hai. lagtā hai unko śikāyat karnā bahut pasand hai. mālūm nahī ve kis deś se āe hai. mere khyāl se hamāre deś mẽ ākar logō ko har ciz kī śikāyat nahī karnī cāhie. unko is deś kā ādar karnā cāhie. sac hai ki unke sāmān ko kholā nahī jānā cāhie thā, lekin sārī dūsri bātē to māmūli-sī thī. mujhe mainejar ko iske bāre mẽ batānā cāhie par māi unhē batānā nahī cāhtā. nahī batāūgā. ye log bhāṛ mẽ jāē!

Glossary

आगे <i>āge</i> ahead	गरम <i>garam</i> hot, warm
आदर <i>ādar</i> m. respect	चलते जाना <i>calte jānā</i> to keep going
इमारत <i>imārat</i> f. building	चौड़ा <i>caurā</i> wide, broad
उत्तर <i>uttar</i> north	जलाना <i>jalānā</i> to light
उर्दू <i>urdū</i> f. Urdu	टैक्सी <i>taikṣī</i> f. taxi
कहानी <i>kahānī</i> f. story	तंग <i>taṅg</i> narrow
के द्वारा <i>ke dvārā</i> by (in formal passive sentences)	तंग करना <i>tang karnā</i> to annoy, harass
ख़याल <i>khyāl</i> , m. opinion, thought, idea	तोहफ़ा <i>tohfā</i> m. gift, present
खिलौना <i>khilaunā</i> m. toy	थकना <i>thaknā</i> to get tired

थाना *thānā* m. police station
दक्षिण *dakṣiṇ* south
दवाखाना *davākhānā* m.

pharmacy, chemist's shop
दाहिना *dāhinā* right (not left)
देश *deś* m. country
धोबी *dhobī* m. washerman
नक्शा *naqṣā* m. map
निकलना *nikalnā* to emerge,
come/go out
पचास *pacās* fifty
पड़ना *paṛnā* to fall; to have to
(with preceding infinitive —
मुझे जाना पड़ेगा *mujhe jānā*
paṛegā 'I'll have to go')

पश्चिम *paścim* west
पार *pār* across; पार करना *pār*
karnā to cross; उस पार *us pār*
on the other side (of, के *ke*)

पुलिस *pulis* f. police
पुस्तकालय *pustakālay* m. library
पूर्व *pūrv* east
प्रदेश *pradeś* m. state, region
बजे *baje* o'clock
बटुआ *baṭuā* m. purse, wallet
बायाँ *bāyā* left (direction)

बुरा *burā* bad
भाड़ में जाए *bhār mē jāe* '(he/she)
can go to hell' (भाड़ *bhār* m.
grain-parching oven)
मंदिर *mandir* m. temple
मराठी *marāṭhī* f. Marathi,
language of Maharashtra
माफ़ी *māfi* f. forgiveness; माफ़ी
माँगना *māfi māṅnā* to
apologize
मामूली *māmūlī* ordinary
मार्ग *mārg* m. road, street (used
in street names)
मैला *mailā* dirty
रिक्शेवाला *rikṣevālā* m.
rickshaw driver
रिश्तेदार *riṣṭedār* m. relation,
relative
लगना *lagnā* to seem; to be felt
(of hunger, thirst etc.); to
take (time); to have an
effect; to begin (following
an oblique infinitive)
सरकार *sarkār* f. government
सामान *sāmān* m. goods,
furniture, luggage

तबियत और शैली
tabiyat
health and style

- In this unit you will learn**
- how to talk about getting things done by others
 - ways of adding nuance to what you say
 - terms for health matters

- Language points**
- relative clauses
 - causative verbs
 - compound verbs

▶ 1 'J-words' and relative clauses

Earlier we saw a set of 'question-words' beginning with *k-*.

कब *kab* when? कहाँ *kahā* where? कौन *kaun* who?

Now we meet a similar set of words, this time beginning with *j-*. These are used in 'relative clauses', where they introduce one clause that is 'related' or linked to a second one. Here are three members of this set:

जब *jab* when जहाँ *jahā* where जो *jo* who

जब *jab* is often partnered by तो *to* (or तब *tab* 'then') which ushers in a paired clause:

जब मैं छोटा था तो मुझे संगीत का बहुत शौक था ।
jab maī choṭā thā to mujhe sangīt kā bahut śauq thā. When I was little I was very fond of music.

जब लता जी गाती थीं तब पिताजी भी सुनते थे ।
jab Latā jī gātī thī tab pitājī bhī sunte the. When Lata ji sang, even Father used to listen.

जब संगीत शुरू होता था तो सब लोग नाचने लगते थे ।
jab sangīt śurū hotā thā to sab log nācne lagte the. When the music started everyone would begin to dance.

जहाँ *jahā* is often partnered by वहाँ *vahā* 'there':

जहाँ मैं रहता हूँ वहाँ कोई सिनेमा नहीं है ।
jahā maī rahtā hū, vahā koī sinemā nahī hai. Where I live, there's no cinema.

जहाँ सिनेमा पहले था वहाँ एक होटल बन रहा है ।
jahā sinemā pahle thā vahā ek hoṭal ban rahā hai. Where the cinema was previously, a hotel is being built.

जहाँ लोग सो रहे हों वहाँ रेडियो मत बजाना ।
jahā log so rahe hō vahā reḍiyo mat bajānā. Don't play the radio where people may be sleeping.

जो *jo* 'who/which/what' is often partnered by वह / वे *vah / ve*:

जो आदमी रेडियो में गाना गाता है वह सामने रहता है ।
jo ādmī reḍiyo mē gānā gātā hai vah sāmne rahtā hai. The man who sings on the radio lives opposite.

जो गाना तुमने गाया, वह हमें बहुत पसंद आया ।
jo gānā tumne gāyā, vah hamē bahut pasand āyā. We really liked the song you sang. ('The song you sang, it pleased us...')

जो लोग गाना सीखना चाहते हैं उनको यह गाना सुनना चाहिए ।
jo log gānā sikhnā cāhte hai unko yah gānā sunnā cāhie. People who want to learn to sing should listen to this song.

जो *jo* has the oblique जिस *jis* (singular) and जिन *jin* (plural):

जिसने यह फ़िल्म बनाई वह मेरा पुराना दोस्त है ।
jisne yah film banāi vah mera purānā dost hai. The person who made this film is my old friend.

जिस फ़िल्म में यह गाना आता है वह काफ़ी पुरानी है ।
jis film mē yah gānā ātā hai vah kāfī purānī hai. The film in which this song comes is quite old.

जिन लोगों ने "शोले" फ़िल्म देखी है वे उसे कभी नहीं भूलेंगे ।
jin logō ne "śole" film dekhi hai ve use kabhi nahī bhūlēge. People who have seen the film 'Sholay' will never forget it.

▶ Hiralal helps us out

Now a narrative about Hiralal the rickshaw driver helps us get used to relative clauses. In addition to a couple of English words used here ('artist', 'seat'), you will need these new words:

शानदार <i>śāndār</i> splendid	मुफ्त (का) <i>muft (kā)</i> cost-free
हीरा <i>hīrā</i> m. diamond	बारिश <i>bāriś</i> f. rain
चमकना <i>camaknā</i> to shine	ग़रीब <i>garīb</i> poor
सवारी <i>savārī</i> f. passenger, rider	मौसम <i>mausam</i> m. weather
जेब <i>jeb</i> f. pocket	पहाड़ <i>pahār</i> m. hill
थक जाना <i>thak jānā</i> to get tired	चढ़ाव <i>caḥāv</i> m. rise, incline

भारी *bhāri* heavy

चढ़ना *caṛhnā* to climb, get into vehicle

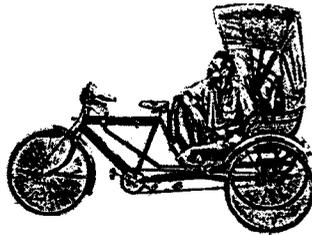
वज़न *vazan* m. weight

हो जाना *ho jānā* to become

उतरना *utarnā*, उतर जाना *utar jānā* to get down, alight

लेटना *leṭnā* to lie down

यह हीरालाल है, जो आगरे में रहता है। हीरालाल रिक्शेवाला है। जो रिक्शा हीरालाल चलाता है वह बहुत शानदार है। वह हीरे की तरह चमकता है! जिसने यह रिक्शा बनाया हो! वह बहुत बड़ा आर्टिस्ट होगा।²



जहाँ हीरालाल रहता है वहाँ बहुत-से दूसरे रिक्शेवाले भी रहते हैं। रिक्शे तो बहुत हैं लेकिन सवारियाँ कम आती हैं।³ जब एक भी सवारी नहीं आती तब हीरालाल की जेब खाली रहती है। जब जेब खाली रहती है तो पेट भी खाली रहता है। मुफ्त का खाना कहाँ मिलता है? ⁴ और जब बारिश होती है तब भी हीरालाल को काम करना पड़ता है। जो लोग गरीब हैं उनको हर मौसम में काम करना पड़ता है।

जहाँ पहाड़ या चढ़ाव हो वहाँ रिक्शा चलाना बहुत ही मुश्किल है। जब दो मोटे लोग अपने भारी सामान को लेकर ⁵ रिक्शे में चढ़ते हैं तो वज़न बहुत ज़्यादा हो जाता है। जब सवारियाँ उतर जाती हैं तो हीरालाल अपने रिक्शे की सीट पर लेटकर सोता है। जो लोग रिक्शे चलाते हैं उन्हें बहुत मेहनत करनी पड़ती है।

*yah Hirālāl hai, jo āgre mẽ rahtā hai. Hirālāl rikṣevālā hai. jo rikṣā Hirālāl calātā hai vah bahut śāndār hai. vah hīre kī tarah camaktā hai! jisne yah rikṣā banāyā ho! vah bahut baṛā ārtiṣṭ hogā.*²

*jahā Hirālāl rahtā hai vahā bahut-se dūsre rikṣevale bhī rahte hai. rikṣe to bahut hai lekin savāriyā kam āti hai.*³ *jab ek bhī*

*savāri nahī āti tab Hirālāl kī jeb khāli rahtī hai. jab jeb khāli rahtī hai to peṭ bhī khāli rahtā hai. muft kā khānā kahā miltā hai?*⁴ *aur jab bāris hotī hai tab bhī Hirālāl ko kām karnā pāṭā hai. jo log garīb hai unko har mausam mẽ kām karnā pāṭā hai.*

jahā pahār yā caṛhāv ho vahā rikṣā calānā bahut hī muṣkil hai. jab do moṭe log apne bhāri sāmān ko lekar⁵ rikṣe mẽ caṛhte hai to vazan bahut zyādā ho jātā hai. jab savāriyā utar jātī hai to Hirālāl apne rikṣe kī siṭ par leṭkar sotā hai. jo log rikṣe calāte hai unḥē bahut mehnat karnī pāṭī hai.

This is Hiralal, who lives in Agra. Hiralal is a rickshaw driver. The rickshaw that Hiralal drives is very fine. It shines like a diamond! Whoever made this rickshaw¹ must be a very great artist.²

Where Hiralal lives many other rickshaw-drivers live too. There are lots of rickshaws but few passengers come.³ When not a single passenger comes, Hiralal's pocket remains empty. When the pocket remains empty the stomach also remains empty. Where can one get free food?⁴ And when it rains, even then Hiralal has to work. People who are poor have to work in all weathers ['in every weather'].

Where there's a hill or a slope it's very difficult to drive a rickshaw. When two fat people get onto the rickshaw with their heavy luggage⁵ the weight gets too much. When the passengers get down Hiralal lies down on the seat of his rickshaw and sleeps. People who drive rickshaws have to work very hard.

1 जिसने यह रिक्शा बनाया हो *jisne ya rikṣā banāyā ho* — 'the person who made this rickshaw'; हो *ho* is subjunctive (see 9.2) to reflect the fact that the identity of the person is vague or unknown.

2 Remember that the future can express an assumption — 'he must be a very great artist' (lit. 'he will be...').

3 The noun सवारी *savāri* is feminine, even if the 'passenger' described is male.

4 मुफ्त का खाना कहाँ मिलता है? *muft kā khānā kahā miltā hai?* 'Where can you get food for free?' It's a rhetorical question — you can't get free food anywhere.

5 भारी सामान को लेकर *bhāri sāmān ko lekar* 'taking heavy luggage' i.e. having heavy luggage with them.

True or false?

Are these statements right (सही *sahī*) or wrong (गलत *galat*)?

Answers below.

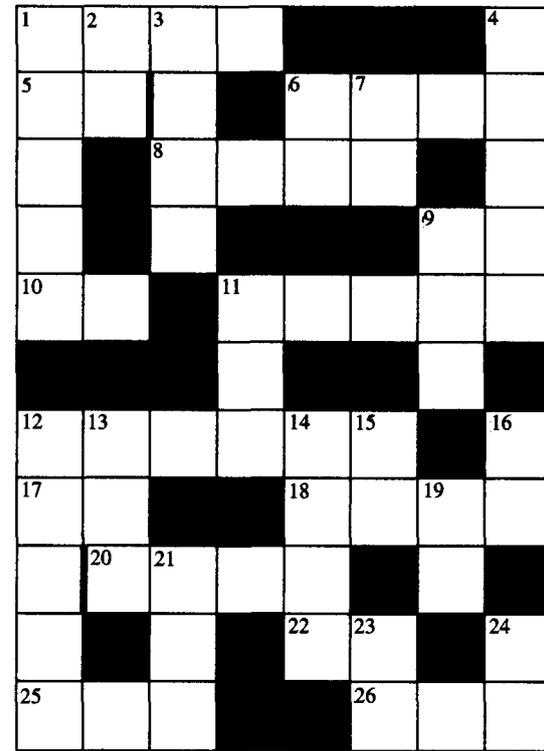
सही गलत
sahī galat

- १ हीरालाल दिल्ली से है ।
Hirālāl dillī se hai.
- २ उसके पास बहुत पैसा है ।
uske pās bahut paisā hai.
- ३ हीरालाल का रिक्शा काफ़ी सुंदर है ।
Hirālāl kā rikṣā kāfī sundar hai.
- ४ हीरालाल के घर के पास कोई दूसरा रिक्शेवाला नहीं रहता ।
Hirālāl ke ghar ke pās koī dūsrā rikṣevālā nahī रहता ।
- ५ सवारियों की कोई कमी नहीं है ।
savāriyō kī koī kamī nahī hai.
- ६ बारिश के मौसम में हीरालाल काम नहीं करता ।
bāriś ke mausam mē Hirālāl kām nahī kartā.
- ७ हीरालाल को खाना मुफ्त में मिलता है ।
Hirālāl ko khānā muft mē miltā hai.
- ८ जब हीरालाल थक जाता है तो वह सोता है ।
jab Hirālāl thak jātā hai to vah sotā hai.

Answers: Only 3 and 8 are right.

A crossword puzzle

And now for something completely different: a crossword puzzle. Because the basic unit of the Devanagari script is the *syllable* (and not the individual letter, as in roman-script languages), each square will contain a complete syllable: so the word सोमवार *somvar* 'Monday' would split up into four component units, सो | म | वा | र (*so | m | va | r*). You will need to look up one or two words in the English-Hindi vocabulary.

**ACROSS**

- 1 brave
5 political party, group
6 teacher (female)
8 Madhuban (hotel name)
9 always (archaic/formal)
10 then
11 Tuesday
12 newspaper seller
17 don't...!
18 ashtray
20 an Indian epic poem
22 straight
25 to bathe
26 singer

DOWN

- 1 ugly
2 condition, state
3 enemy
4 shopkeeper
6 now
7 concentration, attention
9 question
11 temple
12 American
13 danger
14 ancient city on Ganges
15 100,000
16 that is to say
19 lentils
21 to hit
23 thread
24 one

2 Getting things done – causatives

As you know, the Hindi for 'to make' is बनाना *banānā* (हम चाय बनाएँगे *ham cāy banāēge* 'we'll make tea'). Extend this to बनवाना *banvānā* and you have a verb that means 'to get made, to cause to be made'.

हम चाय बनवाएँगे ।

ham cāy banvāēge. We'll get tea made.

हम नौकर से चाय बनवाएँगे ।

ham naukar se cāy banvāēge. We'll get tea made by the servant.

These verbs with -वा- -vā- extensions are called 'causatives'. The word से *se* conveys the sense 'by': नौकर से *naukar se* 'by the servant'.

Some causatives are less obviously connected to their base verb. For example, धोना *dhonā* 'to wash' yields the causative धुलवाना *dhulvānā* 'to get washed', and सीना *sinā* 'to sew' has सिलवाना *silvānā* 'to get sewn'.

How many causatives can you spot in the following, in which Geeta talks about her annual preparations for Diwali?

सबसे पहले मैं दरज़ी से नए कपड़े सिलवाती हूँ । फिर धोबी को बुलवाकर मैं उससे सारे गंदे कपड़े धुलवाती हूँ । जो कपड़े मैंने खुद धोए हों उनको मैं धोबी से प्रेस ['press'] करवाती हूँ । फिर घर को अच्छी तरह से साफ़ करवाती हूँ और रात का खाना बनवाती हूँ । रात को हम दिये जलाते हैं, या उनको बच्चों से जलवाते हैं ।

sabse pahle maī darzī se nae kapṛe silvātī hū. phir dhobī ko bulvākar maī usse sāre gande kapṛe dhulvātī hū. jo kapṛe maīne khud dhoe hō unko maī dhobī se pres ['press'] karvātī hū. phir ghar ko acchī tarah se sāf karvātī hū aur rāt kā khānā banvātī hū. rāt ko ham diye jalāte haī, yā unko baccō se jalvāte haī.

First of all I get new clothes sewn by the tailor. Then I have the dhobi called and I get all the dirty clothes washed by him ['get him to wash...']. Whatever clothes I've washed myself I get ironed by him. Then I get the house cleaned thoroughly and I get dinner made. At night we light lamps, or get them lit by the children ['get the children to light them'].

There are seven causatives here (including two appearances of करवाना *karvānā* 'to get done, cause to be done'):

सिलवाना *silvānā* to get sewn (सीना *sinā* to sew)

बुलवाना *bulvānā* to get called, to summon (बुलाना *bulānā* to call)

धुलवाना *dhulvānā* to get washed (धोना *dhonā* to wash)

प्रेस करवाना *pres karvānā* to get pressed, ironed (प्रेस करना *pres karnā* to press, iron)

साफ़ करवाना *sāf karvānā* to get cleaned (साफ़ करना *sāf karnā* to clean)

बनवाना *banvānā* to get made (बनाना *banānā* to make)

जलवाना *jalvānā* to get lit (जलाना *jalānā* to light)

Verb triplets

You'll often find triplets of related verbs like these sets:

बनना	बनाना	बनवाना
<i>bannā</i> to be made	<i>banānā</i> to make	<i>banvānā</i> to get made
बोलना	बुलाना	बुलवाना
<i>bolnā</i> to speak	<i>bulānā</i> to call	<i>bulvānā</i> to summon
धुलना	धोना	धुलवाना
<i>dhulnā</i> to be washed	<i>dhonā</i> to wash	<i>dhulvānā</i> to get washed
जलना	जलाना	जलवाना
<i>jalnā</i> to burn	<i>jalānā</i> to light	<i>jalvānā</i> to get lit

Practise what you've learnt

Now it's your turn to use causatives. Translate these sentences using the verbs provided.

- We'll have the children taught Hindi by Sharma ji.
(सिखवाना *sikhvānā* to have taught)
- I got some food prepared by the servants.
(तैयार करवाना *taiyār karvānā* to get prepared)
- We have to get the car fixed.
(ठीक करवाना *thik karvānā* to get fixed)

- 4 I want to get some kurtas sewn by Masterji.
(सिलवाना *silvānā* to get sewn)
- 5 I got these letters written by someone.
(लिखवाना *likhvānā* to get written)

Did you know?

The popular Hindi film from Bombay brings a knowledge of the language to millions of people outside the Hindi-speaking area. Despite its nickname of 'Bollywood', the Hindi film industry has its own conventions — quite different from those of Hollywood.

▶ A visit to the doctor

Sadly, Raju has been feeling unwell. Can the doctor help?

- डाक्टर** आइए, आइए । क्या तकलीफ़ है आपको ?
- राजू** डाक्टर साहब, मेरा सारा शरीर दर्द कर रहा है ।।
- डाक्टर** आपकी तबियत कब से ख़राब है ?
- राजू** दो दिन से । परसों में काम पर जानेवाला था ² कि ³ सिर में दर्द होने लगा ।
- डाक्टर** लगता है आपको फ़्लू हो गया है ।⁴
- राजू** तो मुझे क्या करना चाहिए ?
- डाक्टर** सिर्फ़ आराम करना चाहिए ।
- राजू** कोई दवा या गोली तो दीजिए !
- डाक्टर** आपको किसी गोली-वोली ⁵ की ज़रूरत नहीं है । आराम ही इलाज है ।

ḍāḱṭar āie, āie. kyā taklif hai āpko?

Rājū ḍāḱṭar sāhab, merā sārā śarīr dard kar rahā hai.¹

ḍāḱṭar āpki tabiyat kab se kharāb hai?

Rājū do din se. parsō maī kām par jānevālā thā ² ki ³ sir meḍ dard hone lagā.

ḍāḱṭar lagtā hai āpko flū ho gayā hai.⁴

Rājū to mujhe kyā karnā cāhie?

ḍāḱṭar sirf ārām karnā cāhie.

Rājū koī davā yā golī dijie.

ḍāḱṭar āpko kisī golī-volī ⁵ kī zarūrāt nahī hai. ārām hī ilāj hai.

Doctor Come in, come in. What's your complaint?

Raju Doctor sahib, my whole body is aching.

Doctor How long has your health been bad?

Raju For two days. The day before yesterday I was just about to go to work when my head started to ache.

Doctor It seems you've caught flu.

Raju So what should I do?

Doctor You should just rest.

Raju Please give [me] some medicine or tablet!

Doctor You don't need any tablet or anything like that. Rest itself is the cure.

1 दर्द करना *dard karnā* 'to hurt'; also दर्द होना *dard honā* 'to have a pain' (मेरे सिर में दर्द हो रहा है *mere sir meḍ dard ho rahā hai* 'I have a headache').

2 मैं जानेवाला था *maī jānevālā thā* 'I was about to go'; -वाला *-vālā* added to a verb ending in *-ne* means 'about to'. गीता अभी जानेवाली है *Gitā abhī jānevālī hai* 'Geeta's just about to go', मैं अभी आपको फ़ोन करनेवाला था *maī abhī āpko fon karnevālā thā* 'I was just about to phone you'.

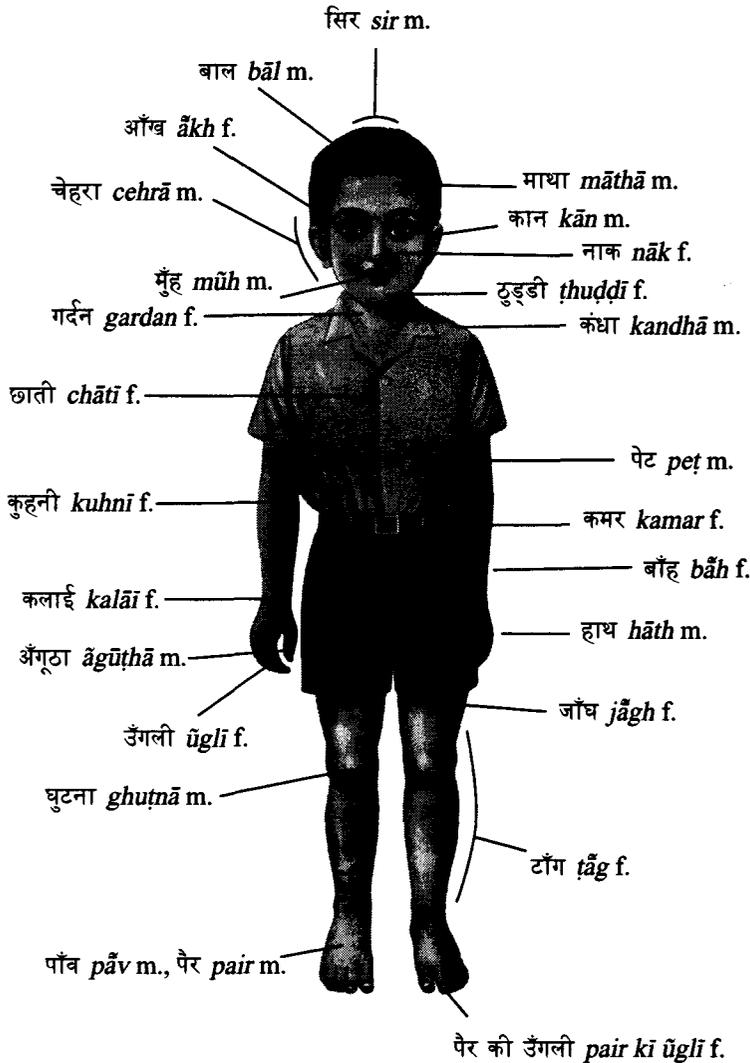
3 कि *ki* here means 'when, when suddenly' in this construction with -वाला *-vālā* (see note 2).

4 हो जाना *ho jānā* is the simplest way of saying 'to get' an illness etc. The patient takes को *ko*.

6 गोली-वोली *golī-volī* 'tablet or anything like that' — वोली *volī* is a meaningless echo-word. Echo-words, usually beginning *v-*, generalize the sense of the preceding word, opening out the range of meaning from something specific (here, medicine) to a broader category (here, any kind of medication). Compare the following: चाय-वाय *cāy-vāy* 'tea etc.', खाना-वाना *khānā-vānā* 'food, something to eat', पानी-वानी *pānī-vānī* 'water, something to drink'. The doctor's remark here has a disparaging touch: 'You don't need any tablet or any such nonsense!'

3 Parts of the body

In order to explain feelings of pain and sickness etc. you need to know the main parts of the body. Ram has helpfully agreed to pose for us (for a substantial fee):



The doctor asks you some questions

Role play: you go to the doctor because you've had a stomach ache, sickness and diarrhoea for two days. You have a headache but your temperature is normal. Your alcohol consumption is moderate; you usually sleep OK. You have been careful about your food, and the only water you drink is bottled water (बोतल का पानी *botal kā pānī*). Now, answer the doctor's questions:

१. आपकी तबियत कब से ख़राब है ?
āpkī tabiyat kab se kharāb hai? How long has your health been bad?
२. आपको बुखार तो नहीं है ?
āpko bukhār to nahī hai? You don't have fever, do you?
३. क्या सिर में दर्द है ?
kyā sir mē dard hai? Do you have a headache?
४. आप बाहर का खाना खाते/खाती हैं, बाज़ार में ?
āp bāhar kā khānā khāte/khātī hai, bāzār mē ? Do you eat food from outside, in the market?
५. आप नल का पानी पीते/पीती हैं ?
āp nal kā pānī pīte/pītī hai? Do you drink tap water?
६. उलटी हो रही है ?
ulṭī ho rahī hai? [Are you] Having vomiting attacks?
७. दस्त भी है ?
dast bhī hai? Is there diarrhoea too?
८. क्या आप शराब पीते/पीती हैं ?
kyā āp śarāb pīte/pītī hai? Do you drink alcohol?
९. क्या आपको नींद ठीक से आती है ?
kyā āpko nīnd thīk se ātī hai? Do you sleep properly?
१०. आप कितने बजे सोते/सोती हैं ?
āp kitne baje sote/sotī hai? What time do you sleep?
११. कितने घंटे सोते/सोती हैं ?
kitne ghaṅṭe sote/sotī hai? How many hours do you sleep?
१२. और कोई तकलीफ़ है आपको ?
aur koī taklif hai āpko? Do you have any other symptoms?

4 Shades of meaning

Different languages have different ways of adding shades of meaning to a statement. In English, for example, the basic verb 'to write' underlies the variations 'write down, write up, write out, write in' and so on. In Hindi, shades of meaning are often conveyed by a *pairing of two verbs*. Think of it being a bit like making lassi, the yoghurt drink: the first verb is the yoghurt that gives the basic meaning, while the second verb is the choice of sugar or salt that adds the flavouring. Here's an example with लिखना *likhnā* 'to write' as first verb, and लेना *lenā* 'to take' or देना *denā* 'to give' as second verb:

मेरा पता लिख लो ।

merā patā likh lo. Write down my address.

नहीं, तुम लिख दो ।

nahī, tum likh do. No, you write [it] out.

लिख लो *likh lo* — this combines the basic sense of लिखना *likhnā* 'to write' with a shade of meaning from लेना *lenā* 'to take'; लेना *lenā* here suggests that the action is a 'taking' one — something done *for the benefit of the person who does the action*. So the implied meaning is 'Take down my address [for your own use]'.

लिख दो *likh do* — this combines the basic sense of लिखना *likhnā* with a shade of meaning from देना *denā* 'to give'; देना *denā* here suggests that the action is a 'giving' one — something done *for the benefit of someone else*. So the implied meaning is 'Write it out for me'.

As well as लेना *lenā* and देना *denā*, another verb commonly used in this construction is जाना *jānā*, literally 'to go'. In harmony with its literal meaning of movement from one place to another, it colours a preceding verb with a sense of *completed action*, or a *change of state*:

अरे ! बिजली बंद हो गई !

are! bijlī band ho gai! Hey! The electricity's gone off!

अच्छा ? मैं तो सो गया था ।

acchā? māi to so gayā thā. Really? I'd gone to sleep.

बिजली बंद हो गई *bijlī band ho gai* — the main verb होना *honā* 'to be' changes to हो जाना *ho jānā* 'to become', because a *change of state* has taken place.

मैं सो गया था *māi so gayā thā* — the verb सोना *sonā* 'to sleep' changes to सो जाना *so jānā* 'to go to sleep', with the sense of 'go' very similar in both English and Hindi.

Verbs of this kind are called 'compound verbs'. (Hindi has a better name for them — रंजक क्रिया *ranjak kriyā* 'colouring verbs'.) There are many more combinations, some of which are given in the Grammar Summary, but लेना *lenā*, देना *denā* and जाना *jānā* are by far the most common.

The ने *ne* construction is only used with compound verbs if *both* verbs in the compound are ने *ne* verbs (i.e. ones that are marked with ^N in the glossary at the end of the book).

Finally, a word of warning: compound verbs give a specific sense of the way in which a *particular* action is done. It therefore follows that *a sentence that's negative or general won't use them*; if no one drinks the lassi, its taste is irrelevant! Look closely at the use of a compound verb in the first of these two sentences, then at the *dropping* of the compound in the second (which is negative):

राजू — मैंने खाना खा लिया है ।

Rājū — māine khānā khā liyā hai. I've had my meal.

गीता — अच्छा? मैंने तो नहीं खाया है ।

Gītā — acchā? māine to nahī khāyā hai. Really? I haven't.

Raju stresses that he's had (and enjoyed or benefited from) his meal, a sense given by लेना *lenā*. But Geeta hasn't eaten yet, so her reply has no scope for the implication that लेना *lenā* brings.

▶ I've already done this

The verb चुकना *cuknā* means 'to have finished doing, to have already done', and it's used in a structure identical to the one we've just been looking at — it follows the stem of the main verb:

मीना जा चुकी है ।

Mīnā jā cukī hai. Meena has already gone.

राम अपना काम कर चुका है ।

Rām apnā kām kar cukā hai. Ram has already done his work.

मनोज अपनी किताब पढ़ चुका है ।

Manoj apni kitāb paṛh cukā hai. Manoj has already read (or 'finished reading') his book.

राजू और गीता खाना खा चुके हैं ।

Rājū aur Gītā khānā khā cuke hai. Raju and Geeta have already eaten (or 'have finished eating').

You'll be glad to hear that the *ने ne* construction is *never* used here!

Did you manage to do this?

The same structure is used again with the verb पाना *pānā*. This literally means 'to find, obtain', but here it gives the meaning 'to manage to, to be able to' (compare सकना *saknā*, met in Unit 6).

कल मैं नहीं जा पाया ।

kal mai nahī jā pāyā. I didn't manage to go yesterday.

गीता टिकट नहीं खरीद पाई ।

Gītā ṭikaṭ nahī kharid pāi. Geeta wasn't able to buy a ticket.

क्या तुम यह काम अकेले कर पाओगे ?

kyā tum yah kām akele kar pāoge? Will you manage to do this work alone?

5 Style in Hindi

The language used in this book reflects ordinary unselfconscious speech. But like all languages, Hindi has a variety of styles — formal, informal, colloquial and so on. Formal Hindi uses a lot of loanwords from Sanskrit (India's main classical language) just as formal English uses words from Latin and Greek. For example, formal Hindi would use the Sanskrit loanword सहायता *sahāyātā* 'assistance' rather than the informal मदद *madad* 'help'; which is a loanword from Arabic and which has an entirely natural place in informal Hindi. Many Arabic and some Turkish words came to India as part of the Persian language, from about the 11th century onwards — they are far from being newcomers!

The formal style of the language is called शुद्ध हिन्दी *śuddh hindī* — 'pure Hindi'; but as this example of सहायता *sahāyātā* shows, it is itself dependent on Sanskrit loanwords, which means that any claims to linguistic 'purity' have to be taken with a pinch of salt. In formal Hindi, especially in the written language but also in some people's preferred speaking style also, one 'requires assistance', one does not 'need help'! When you start reading Hindi books and newspapers, you'll have to start adding Sanskritic vocabulary to the colloquial

base you're learning here. But be careful about using it too much in everyday conversational contexts, because it could make your Hindi sound very bookish. People who learn Hindi from grammar books alone, especially those of the traditional variety, end up 'requiring assistance'!

Today, informal Hindi uses words from a rich variety of sources, especially English, whose relentless spread throughout the world can be seen as a threat to so many languages. Go shopping with Geeta and you'll hear *lots* of familiar words. Here we catch up with her buying shoes in a shop in 'fashionable' South Extension, Delhi:

गीता आपके पास ग्रीन कलर का जूता है ?

दुकानदार हाँ मैडम, देखिए, ये शूज़ ग्रीन कलर के हैं । और बहुत ही रीज़नेबुल हैं ।

गीता नहीं, यह स्टाइल मैं लाइक नहीं करती ।

दुकानदार पर इसकी लेदर बहुत ही सॉफ्ट है ! और क्वालिटी भी देखिए इसकी ! ट्राई तो कीजिए !

Gītā āpke pās grīn kalar kā jūtā hai?

dukāndār hā mādam, dekhie, ye šūz grīn kalar ke hai. aur bahut hī rīzanebul hai.

Gītā nahī, yah sṭāil mai lāik nahī kartī.

dukāndār par iski ledar bahut hī sāft hai! aur kvāliṭī bhī dekhie iski! trāi to kijie!

Geeta Do you have a green colour shoe?

Shopkeeper Yes madam, please look, these shoes are green. And they're very reasonable.

Geeta No, I don't like this style.

Shopkeeper But its leather is very soft. And see its quality too! Try it at least!

... and so on! As a learner of Hindi, you may find it rather depressing that it has allowed itself to be so heavily influenced by a language that is so foreign to its own character. But between the two extremes of heavily Sanskritized and heavily Anglicized versions of the language, Hindi remains a superbly subtle and vibrant language, full of expressiveness and life!

6 Numbers

Here are the cardinal numbers. You'll find it easier to get familiar with the higher ones (above 20) if you read them in 'decade' sequences such as 21, 31, 41 etc.

० शून्य *sūnya*

१ एक	११ ग्यारह	२१ इक्कीस	३१ इकत्तीस	४१ इकतालीस
1 <i>ek</i>	11 <i>gyārah</i>	21 <i>ikkīs</i>	31 <i>ikattīs</i>	41 <i>iktālīs</i>
२ दो	१२ बारह	२२ बाईस	३२ बत्तीस	४२ बयालीस
2 <i>do</i>	12 <i>bārah</i>	13 <i>bāis</i>	33 <i>battīs</i>	43 <i>bayālīs</i>
३ तीन	१३ तेरह	२३ तेईस	३३ तैंतीस	४३ तैंतालीस
3 <i>tīn</i>	13 <i>terah</i>	23 <i>teis</i>	33 <i>taītīs</i>	43 <i>taītālīs</i>
४ चार	१४ चौदह	२४ चौबीस	३४ चौतीस	४४ चवालीस
4 <i>cār</i>	14 <i>caudah</i>	24 <i>caubīs</i>	34 <i>caūtīs</i>	44 <i>cavālīs</i>
५ पाँच	१५ पंद्रह	२५ पच्चीस	३५ पैतीस	४५ पैतालीस
5 <i>pāc</i>	15 <i>pandrah</i>	25 <i>paccīs</i>	35 <i>paitīs</i>	45 <i>paitālīs</i>
६ छह	१६ सोलह	२६ छब्बीस	३६ छत्तीस	४६ छियालीस
6 <i>chah</i>	16 <i>solah</i>	26 <i>chabbīs</i>	36 <i>chattīs</i>	46 <i>chiyālīs</i>
७ सात	१७ सत्रह	२७ सत्ताईस	३७ सैंतीस	४७ सैंतालीस
7 <i>sāt</i>	17 <i>satrah</i>	27 <i>sattāis</i>	37 <i>saitīs</i>	47 <i>saitālīs</i>
८ आठ	१८ अठारह	२८ अट्ठाईस	३८ अड़तीस	४८ अड़तालीस
8 <i>āth</i>	18 <i>āthārah</i>	28 <i>aṭṭhāis</i>	38 <i>artīs</i>	48 <i>artālīs</i>
९ नौ	१९ उन्नीस	२९ उनतीस	३९ उनतालीस	४९ उनचास
9 <i>nau</i>	19 <i>unnīs</i>	29 <i>untīs</i>	39 <i>untālīs</i>	41 <i>uncās</i>
१० दस	२० बीस	३० तीस	४० चालीस	५० पचास
10 <i>das</i>	20 <i>bīs</i>	30 <i>tīs</i>	40 <i>cālīs</i>	50 <i>pacās</i>
५१ इक्यावन	६१ इकसठ	७१ इकहत्तर	८१ इक्यासी	९१ इक्यानवे
51 <i>ikyāvan</i>	61 <i>iksath</i>	71 <i>ik'hattar</i>	81 <i>ikyāsī</i>	91 <i>ikyānve</i>
५२ बावन	६२ बासठ	७२ बहत्तर	८२ बयासी	९२ बानवे
52 <i>bāvan</i>	62 <i>bāsath</i>	72 <i>bahattar</i>	82 <i>bayāsī</i>	92 <i>bānve</i>
५३ तिरपन	६३ तिरसठ	७३ तिहत्तर	८३ तिरासी	९३ तिरानवे
53 <i>tirpan</i>	63 <i>tirsath</i>	73 <i>tihattar</i>	83 <i>tirāsī</i>	93 <i>tirānve</i>

५४ चौवन	६४ चौंसठ	७४ चौहत्तर	८४ चौरासी	९४ चौरानवे
54 <i>cauvan</i>	64 <i>caūsath</i>	74 <i>cauhattar</i>	84 <i>caurāsī</i>	94 <i>caurānve</i>
५५ पचपन	६५ पैसठ	७५ पचहत्तर	८५ पचासी	९५ पचानवे
55 <i>pacpan</i>	65 <i>pāisath</i>	75 <i>pac'hattar</i>	85 <i>pacāsī</i>	95 <i>pacānve</i>
५६ छप्पन	६६ छियासठ	७६ छिहत्तर	८६ छियासी	९६ छियानवे
56 <i>chappan</i>	66 <i>chiyāsath</i>	76 <i>chihattar</i>	86 <i>chiyāsī</i>	96 <i>chiyānve</i>
५७ सत्तावन	६७ सरसठ	७७ सतहत्तर	८७ सत्तासी	९७ सत्तानवे
57 <i>sattāvan</i>	67 <i>sarsath</i>	77 <i>sat'hattar</i>	87 <i>sattāsī</i>	97 <i>sattānve</i>
५८ अट्टावन	६८ अड़सठ	७८ अठहत्तर	८८ अट्टासी	९८ अट्टानवे
58 <i>aṭṭāvan</i>	68 <i>arsath</i>	78 <i>aṭhhattar</i>	88 <i>aṭṭhāsī</i>	98 <i>aṭṭhānve</i>
५९ उनसठ	६९ उनहत्तर	७९ उन्यासी	८९ नवासी	९९ निन्यानवे
59 <i>unsath</i>	69 <i>unhattar</i>	79 <i>unyāsī</i>	89 <i>navāsī</i>	99 <i>innyānve</i>
६० साठ	७० सत्तर	८० अस्सी	९० नब्बे	१०० सौ
60 <i>sāth</i>	70 <i>sattar</i>	80 <i>assī</i>	90 <i>nabbe</i>	100 <i>sau</i>

1.5	डेढ़ <i>ḍeṛh</i>
2.5	ढाई <i>dhāi</i>
1000	हज़ार <i>hazār</i>
100,000	लाख <i>lākh</i>
10,000,000	करोड़ <i>karor</i> (100 lakh, written 100,00,000)
150	डेढ़ सौ <i>ḍeṛh sau</i>
1500	डेढ़ हज़ार <i>ḍeṛh hazār</i>
150,000	डेढ़ लाख <i>ḍeṛh lākh</i>
250	ढाई सौ <i>dhāi sau</i>
2500	ढाई हज़ार <i>dhāi hazār</i>
250,000	ढाई लाख <i>dhāi lākh</i>

7 Time

Telling the time involves the following words:

बजे *baje* o'clock

बजना *bajnā* to chime, resound

डेढ़ *ḍeṛh* one and a half

ढाई *dhāi* two and a half

पौन, पौना *paun, paune* three quarters

सवा *savā* one and a quarter

साढ़े *sārhe* plus a half (with 3 and upwards)

पौन बजा है । *paun bajā hai.* It's a quarter to one.

एक बजा है । *ek bajā hai.* It's one o'clock.

डेढ़ बजा है । *ḍeṛh bajā hai.* It's half past one.

दो बजे हैं । *do baje hai.* It's two o'clock.

ढाई बजे हैं । *dhāi baje hai* It's half past two.

सवा सात बजे हैं । *savā sāt baje hai.* It's a quarter to seven.

पौने दस बजे हैं । *paune das baje hai.* It's a quarter to ten.

साढ़े ग्यारह बजे हैं । *sārhe gyārah baje hai.* It's half past eleven.

हम दो बजे मिलेंगे । *ham do baje milēge.* We'll meet at two o'clock.

मैं डेढ़ बजे तक आऊँगा । *mai ḍeṛh baje tak āūgā.* I'll come by half past one.

दस बज रहे हैं । *das baj rahe hai.* It's just ten (ten is striking).

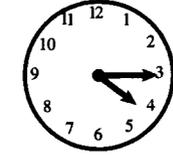
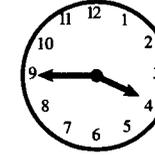
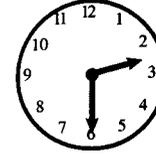
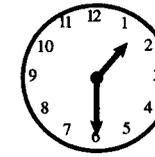
दस बजनेवाले हैं । *das bajnevāle hai.* It's nearly ten (ten's about to strike).

Minutes before and after the hour are expressed by बजने में *bajne mē* and बजकर *bajkar* respectively.

एक बजने में बीस मिनट हैं । *ek bajne mē bīs mināṭ hai.* It's 12.40.

आठ बजकर बीस मिनट हैं । *āṭh bajkar bīs mināṭ hai.* It's 8.20.

What's the time?



पौन बजा है

paun bajā hai

एक बजा है

ek bajā hai

डेढ़ बजा है

ḍeṛh bajā hai

दो बजे हैं

do baje hai

ढाई बजे हैं

dhāi baje hai

साढ़े चार बजे हैं

sārhe cār baje hai

पौने चार बजे हैं

paune cār baje hai

सवा चार बजे हैं

savā cār baje hai

Months

India still uses its traditional calendar (with lunar months) for festival dates, and you can find plenty of web-based information on this by typing 'Hindu Calendar' into a search engine. But the 'western' (or global) calendar is usually preferred for mundane functions.

The month names are spelt in Hindi with dental consonants: this reflects their Portuguese ancestry (words from English being generally spelt with retroflexes).

जनवरी	फ़रवरी	मार्च	अप्रैल	मई	जून
<i>janvarī</i>	<i>farvarī</i>	<i>mārc</i>	<i>aprail</i>	<i>mai</i>	<i>jūn</i>

जुलाई	अगस्त	सितंबर	अक्तूबर	नवंबर	दिसंबर
<i>julāi</i>	<i>agast</i>	<i>sitambar</i>	<i>aktūbar</i>	<i>navambar</i>	<i>disambar</i>

Exercise 12a Answer the questions about Hiralal:

- १ जो रिक्शा हीरालाल चलाता है, उसको किसने बनाया होगा ?
jo rikṣā Hīrālāl calātā hai, usko kisne banāyā hogā?
- २ जहाँ हीरालाल रहता है वहाँ और कौन रहता है ?
jahā Hīrālāl rahtā hai vahā aur kaun rahtā hai?
- ३ जिस शहर में हीरालाल रहता है, उसका नाम क्या है ?
jis śahar mē Hīrālāl rahtā hai, uskā nām kyā hai?
- ४ जब बारिश होती है तो क्या हीरालाल घर जाता है ?
jab bāriś hotī hai to kyā Hīrālāl ghar jātā hai?
- ५ रिक्शे का वज़न कब बहुत ज़्यादा हो जाता है ?
rikṣe kā vazan kab bahut zyādā ho jātā hai?
- ६ हीरालाल की जेब कब ख़ाली रहती है ?
Hīrālāl kī jeb kab khālī rahtī hai?
- ७ जो लोग रिक्शे चलाते हैं उनकी ज़िन्दगी कैसी होती है ?
jo log rikṣe calāte hāi unkī zindagī kaisī hotī hai?

Exercise 12b Complete the sentences meaningfully:

- ८ जो लोग भारत के बारे में कुछ सीखना चाहते हैं, उनको ...
jo log bhārat ke bāre mē kuch sīkhnā cāhte hāi, unko...
- ९ जब मैंने पहली बार ताज महल को देखा, मैंने सोचा कि ...
jab maīne pahli bār tāj mahal ko dekhā, maīne socā ki...
- १० जहाँ मेरे रिश्तेदार रहते हैं, वहाँ ...
jahā mere riśtedār rahte hāi, vahā...
- ११ जो आदमी मेरे साथ काम करता है उसकी ...
jo ādmī mere sāth kām kartā hai uskī...
- १२ जो आदमी मेरे घर के सामने रहता है वह ...
jo ādmī mere ghar ke sāmne rahtā hai vah...
- १३ जिन लोगों के पास बहुत पैसा है, वे ...
jin logō ke pās bahut paisā hai, ve...
- १४ जो कपड़े मैंने कल ख़रीदे ...
jo kapṛe maīne kal kharīde...

Exercise 12c Translate:

- 15 When I go to Agra I often stay at Raju's place.
- 16 The man who teaches us Hindi is Raju's brother.
- 17 The present I gave to Ram today was quite cheap.
- 18 When I gave it to him he showed it to his mother.
- 19 When Raju's mother saw my present she began to laugh.
- 20 I'll never forget the question she asked Raju about me.
- 21 The answer Raju gave will always remain in my memory.

Exercise 12d Here's a short letter to Manoj from a friend in the USA. Translate it, keeping an eye out the compound verbs.

प्रिय मनोज,

तुम्हारा खत मिल गया, शुक्रिया। एक साल से कोई खत नहीं आया था तो मैं सोचने लगा था कि मेरे दोस्त मनोज को क्या हो गया है ?

यहाँ सब ठीक है। मेरे भाई की शादी हो गई है। उसने दिल्ली में एक छोटा-सा मकान किराये पर लिया है।

मेरे पिताजी कहते हैं कि अब तुम भी शादी कर लो। पर मैंने उनको साफ़ बता दिया है कि मैं अभी शादी नहीं करूँगा। अभी जवान हूँ। जब तीस साल का हो जाऊँगा तो शायद इन बातों के बारे में सोचना शुरू करूँगा। लेकिन पिताजी मेरी बात नहीं सुनना चाहते। अभी थोड़ी देर पहले वे फिर से शादी के बारे में बात करने लगे। मैं थोड़ा नाराज़ हो गया। मैंने कहा, "हाँ पापा, मैं ने सुन लिया!"

अपना ई-मेल का पता मुझे बता देना।

तुम्हारा

मोटू

priy Manoj,

tumhārā khat mil gayā, śukriyā. ek sāl se koī khat nahī āyā thā to maī socne lagā thā ki mere dost Manoj ko kyā ho gayā hai?

yahā sab thīk hai. mere bhāi kī śādī ho gāi hai. usne dillī mē ek choṭa-sā makān kirāye par liyā hai.

mere pitāji kahte hāi ki ab tum bhī śādī kar lo. par maīne unko sāf kah diyā hai ki maī abhī śādī nahī karūgā. abhī javān hū. jab tis sāl kā ho jāūgā to śāyad in bātō ke bāre mē

socnā surū karūgā. lekin pitājī merī bāt nahī sunna cāhte.
 abhī thoṛī der pahle ve phir se śādī ke bāre mē bāt karne lage.
 maī thoṛā nārāz ho gayā. maīne kahā, 'hā pāpā, maīne sun liyā!'
 apnā i-mel ka patā mujhe batā denā.
 tumhārā
 Moṭū.

Glossary

अँगूठा āgūthā m. thumb
 आँख ākh f. eye
 उँगली ūgli f. finger
 उगना ugnā to grow (of plants)
 उतरना, उतर जाना utarnā, utar
 jānā to get down, alight
 उलटी ulṭī f. vomiting, sickness
 कटना kaṭnā to be cut
 कमर kamar f. waist
 कलाई kalāī f. wrist
 करवाना karvānā to cause to be
 done, to get done
 कान kān m. ear
 कि ki when, when suddenly; or
 कुहनी kuhni f. elbow
 खेल khel m. game
 गरीब garīb poor
 गर्दन gardan f. neck
 गाल gāl f. cheek
 घास ghās f. grass
 घुटना ghuṭnā m. knee
 चढ़ना caṛhnā to climb; to get
 into vehicle
 चढ़ाव caṛhāv m. rise, incline
 चमकना chamaknā to shine
 चुकना cuknā to have already
 done (with verb stem: वह जा
 चुका है vah jā cukā hai 'He's
 already gone')
 छाती chāṭī f. chest
 जब jab when
 जलना jalnā to burn
 जलवाना jalvānā to cause to burn
 जवान javān young
 जहाँ jahā where
 जाँच jāgh f. high
 जेब jeb f. pocket
 जैसा... वैसा jaisā... vaisā as [one
 thing], so [another]
 टाँग ṭāṅg f. leg
 टूटना ṭūṭnā to break
 ठुड़ी ṭhuddī f. chin
 ताज महल tāj mahal m. Taj Mahal
 दस्त dast m. diarrhoea; दस्त
 आना dast ānā to have
 diarrhoea
 दाँत dāt m. tooth
 दिया diyā m. lamp
 दिल dil m. heart
 धुलना dhulnā to be washed
 धुलवाना dhulvānā to cause to be
 washed
 नल nal m. tap, pipe
 नाक nāk f. nose
 नींद nīd f. sleep; नींद आना nīd
 ānā (sleep to come) to get
 to sleep
 नौकर naukar m. servant
 पता patā m. address;
 whereabouts

पहाड़ pahār m. hill
 पाँव pāv m. foot, leg
 पाना pānā to find, obtain; to be
 able, to manage to (with
 verb stem: मैं नहीं जा पाया
 maī nahī jā pāyā 'I didn't
 manage to go')
 पैर pair m. foot; पैर की उँगली
 pair kī ūgli f. toe
 प्रेस करना pres karnā to iron
 बनवाना banvānā to cause to be
 made
 बहुत ज़्यादा bahut zyādā very
 great, too much
 बाँह bāh f. arm, upper arm
 बाल bāl m. hair
 बुलवाना bulvānā to cause to be
 called
 भरना bharnā to be filled
 भारी bhārī heavy
 माथा māthā m. forehead
 मुफ्त (का) muft (kā) free; मुफ्त में
 muft mē for nothing, free
 मुँह mūh m. mouth; face
 मौसम mausam m. weather

रिक्शा riksā m. rickshaw
 सेटना letnā to lie down
 वज़न vazan m. weight
 विदेश videsh abroad; विदेशी
 videsī m. foreigner;
 adj. foreign
 शरीर śarīr m. body
 शानदार śāndār splendid,
 magnificent
 शुद्ध śuddh pure
 शोला śolā m. flame; शोले
 śole 'Sholay', the title of a
 cult Hindi film (1975)
 सवारी savārī f. passenger, rider
 सहायता sahāyṭā f. assistance
 सामने sāmne opposite
 सिखवाना sikhvānā to cause to
 be taught
 सिलवाना silvānā to cause to be
 sewn
 सीना sīnā to sew
 हर har every, each
 हराम harām forbidden
 हीरा hīrā m. diamond
 हो जाना ho jānā to become

Bear in mind that there will often be several possible ways of answering questions and translating sentences! In the case of questions addressed to the reader, sample answers are given.

Unit 1

What's this?

- १ जी नहीं, मोती बिल्ली नहीं, कुत्ता है।
jī nahī, Motī billī nahī, kuttā hai.
- २ जी हॉ, गीता डाक्टर है।
jī hā, Gītā ḍāktar hai.
- ३ जी नहीं, मैं डाक्टर नहीं, अध्यापक हूँ।
jī nahī, maī ḍāktar nahī, adhyāpak hū.
- ४ जी हॉ, राजू और गीता हिन्दुस्तानी हैं।
jī hā, Rājū aur Gītā hindustānī hai.
- ५ जी हॉ, हिन्दी बहुत आसान है।
jī hā, hindī bahut āsān hai!

1a

- जावेद यह क्या है ? *Jāved: yah kyā hai?*
 मनोज यह मेरा रेडियो है। *Manoj: yah merā reḍiyo hai.*
 जावेद वह लड़का कौन है ? *Jāved: vah laṛkā kaun hai?*
 मनोज वह मेरा भाई है। *Manoj: vah merā bhāī hai.*
 जावेद उसका नाम क्या है ? *Jāved: uskā nām kyā hai?*
 मनोज उसका नाम राम है। *Manoj: uskā nām Rām hai.*

- जावेद वह लड़की कौन है ? *Jāved: vah laṛkī kaun hai?*
 मनोज उसका नाम मीना है। *Manoj: uskā nām Mīnā hai.*
 जावेद क्या वह बीमार है ? *Jāved: kyā vah bīmār hai?*
 मनोज जी नहीं, वह बीमार नहीं है, वह ठीक है। *Manoj: jī nahī, vah bīmār nahī hai, vah thīk hai.*

1b

- १ जी नहीं, सुरेश शादी-शुदा नहीं है।
jī nahī, Sureś śādī-śudā nahī hai.
- २ जी हॉ, वह हिन्दुस्तानी है।
jī hā, vah hindustānī hai.
- ३ जी नहीं, वह अध्यापक नहीं है, विद्यार्थी है।
jī nahī, vah adhyāpak nahī hai, vidyārthī hai.
- ४ उसका पूरा नाम सुरेश खन्ना है।
uskā pūrā nām Suresh Khannā hai.
- ५ जी हॉ, उमा हिन्दुस्तानी है।
jī hā, Umā hindustānī hai.
- ६ जी नहीं, वह डाक्टर नहीं है, वह अध्यापक है।
jī nahī, vah ḍāktar nahī hai, vah adhyāpak hai.
- ७ जी नहीं, वह शादी-शुदा नहीं है।
jī nahī, vah śādī-śudā nahī hai.
- ८ जी हॉ, वह सुखी है।
jī hā, vah sukhī hai.
- ९ जी नहीं, विनोद अँग्रेज़ नहीं है, वह अमरीकन है।
jī nahī, Vinod āgrez nahī hai, vah amrīkan hai.
- १० जी नहीं, वह अध्यापक नहीं है, वह डाक्टर है।
jī nahī, vah adhyāpak nahī hai, vah ḍāktar hai.
- ११ उसका पूरा नाम विनोद कुमार है।
uskā pūrā nām Vinod Kumār hai.
- १२ जी हॉ, वह शादी-शुदा है।
jī hā, vah śādī-śudā hai.

- १३ जी नहीं, सुरेश हिन्दुस्तानी है लेकिन विनोद अमरीकन है ।
jī nahī, Sureś hindustānī hai lekin Vinod amrikan hai.
- १४ जी नहीं, विनोद शादी-शुदा है लेकिन उमा शादी-सुदा नहीं है ।
jī nahī, Vinod śādī-śudā hai lekin Umā śādī-śudā nahī hai.
- १५ जी नहीं, उमा अध्यापक है लेकिन सुरेश विद्यार्थी है ।
jī nahī, umā adhyāpak hai lekin Sureś vidyārthī hai.

Unit 2

Role play

- १ जी हॉँ, मैं गीता हूँ । *jī hā, mai Gītā hū.*
- २ मेरा पूरा नाम गीता शर्मा है । *merā pūrā nām Gītā Śarmā hai.*
- ३ जी हॉँ, मैं शादी-शुदा हूँ । *jī hā, mai śādī-śudā hū.*
- ४ राकेश मेरा भाई है । *Rākeś merā bhāi hai.*
- ५ सीता मेरी बहिन है । *Sītā merī bahin hai.*
- ६ जी नहीं, मेरी बहिन बीमार है । *jī nahī, merī bahin bimār hai.*
- ७ जी नहीं, मेरा भाई ठीक है । *jī nahī, merā bhāi thīk hai.*
- ८ जी नहीं, मैं बीमार नहीं हूँ, मैं ठीक हूँ । *jī nahī, mai bimār nahī hū, mai thīk hū.*

Ordinal numbers quiz

- १ जी हॉँ, पहला लड़का मोटा है ।
jī hā, pahlā laṛkā moṭā hai.
- २ पहला लड़का गणेश है ।
pahlā laṛkā Gaṇeś hai.
- ३ जी नहीं, तीसरा लड़का खुश नहीं है ।
jī nahī, tisrā laṛkā khūś nahī hai.
- ४ पाँचवाँ लड़का राजेश है ।
pācvaṅ laṛkā Rājeś hai.
- ५ जी हॉँ, चौथा लड़का बहुत पतला है ।
jī hā, cauthā laṛkā bahut patlā hai.
- ६ चौथा लड़का दिनेश है ।
cauthā laṛkā Dineś hai.

- ५ जी नहीं, दूसरा लड़का महेश नहीं, सुरेश है ।
jī nahī, dūsrā laṛkā Maheś nahī, Sureś hai.

2a

- १ मेरा नाम मनोज है । राजू और गीता शर्मा मेरे माता-पिता हैं ।
merā nām Manoj hai. Rājū aur Gītā Śarmā mere mātā-pitā hai.
- २ मीना मेरी छोटी बहिन है और राम मेरा छोटा भाई है ।
Mīnā merī choṭī bahin hai aur Rām merā choṭā bhāi hai.
- ३ मोती हमारा कुत्ता है । वह बहुत प्यारा है ।
Motī hamārā kuttā hai. vah bahut pyārā hai.
- ४ यह मीना है । यह ठीक है । यह छोटी है ।
yah Mīnā hai. yah thīk hai. yah choṭī hai.
- ५ हमारा मकान बहुत बड़ा नहीं है । सिर्फ पाँच कमरे हैं ।
hamārā makān bahut baṛā nahī hai. sirf pāc kamre hai.
- ६ वह लड़का मेरा दोस्त है । उसका नाम प्रताप है ।
vah laṛkā merā dost hai. uskā nām Pratāp hai.
- ७ जावेद साहब हमारे पड़ोसी हैं ।
Jāved sāhab hamāre paṛosī hai.

2b

- ८ ये लड़के बहुत प्यारे हैं । *ye laṛke bahut pyāre hai.*
- ९ ये कुत्ते हमारे नहीं हैं । *ye kutte hamāre nahī hai.*
- १० वे लड़के कौन हैं ? *ve laṛke kaun hai?*
- ११ ये आदमी कौन हैं ? *ye ādmi kaun hai?*
- १२ मेरे दोस्त पंजाबी हैं । *mere dost panjābī hai.*
- १३ क्या ये कुत्ते आपके हैं ? *kyā ye kutte āpke hai?*
- १४ वे औरतें कौन हैं ? *ve auratē kaun hai?*
- १५ हमारे बेटे अच्छे लड़के हैं । *hamāre betē acche laṛke hai.*
- १६ मेरी बेटियाँ बीमार हैं । *merī betiyā bimār hai.*
- १७ क्या ये किताबें महँगी हैं ? *kyā ye kitābē mahāgi hai?*
- १८ ये मेज़ें गंदी हैं । *ye mezē gandī hai.*

2c

- १९ आप कौन हैं ? *āp kaun hai?*
 २० आपका नाम क्या है ? *āpkā nām kyā hai?*
 २१ आपके माता-पिता बहुत अच्छे लोग हैं । *āpke mātā-pitā bahut acche log hai.*
 २२ आपका भाई सुंदर नहीं है । *āpkā bhāi sundar nahī hai.*
 २३ आप दोनों लड़के लंबे हैं । *āp donō larke lambe hai.*
 २४ आप कैसे हैं ? *āp kaise hai?*
 २५ तुम्हारा नाम क्या है ? *tumhārā nām kyā hai?*
 २६ क्या तुम ठीक हो ? *kyā tum thīk ho?*
 २७ तुम नाराज़ नहीं हो ? *tum nārāz nahī ho?*
 २८ तुम कैसी हो ? *tum kaisī ho?*

Unit 3

Some questions for you

- १ सिर्फ एक आदमी है । *sirf ek ādmi hai.*
 २ यह लंबा आदमी है । *yah lambā ādmi hai.*
 ३ मेज़ छोटी है । *mez choṭī hai.*
 ४ दो लड़कियाँ हैं । *do larṅkiyā hai.*
 ५ कुल मिलाकर तीन लोग हैं । *kul milākar tin log hai.*
 ६ जी नहीं, एक लड़की लंबी है, दूसरी छोटी है । *jī nahī, ek larṅki lambī hai, dūsri choṭī hai.*
 ७ दो चूहे हैं । *do cūhe hai.*
 ८ सिर्फ एक कुर्सी है । *sirf ek kursī hai.*
 ९ जी नहीं, चूहे छोटे हैं । *jī nahī, cūhe choṭe hai.*
 १० सिर्फ एक तोता है । *sirf ek totā hai.*

Where's the cat?

- १ बिल्ली बड़ी कुर्सी पर है । *billī baṛī kursī par hai.*
 २ कुत्ता छोटी कुर्सी पर है । *kuttā choṭī kursī par hai.*
 ३ तस्वीर में दो कुर्सियाँ हैं । *tasvīr mē do kursiyā hai.*

- ४ तस्वीर में सिर्फ एक बिल्ली है । *tasvīr mē sirf ek billī hai.*
 ५ छोटी कुर्सी पर कुत्ता है । *choṭī kursī par kuttā hai.*
 ६ बड़ी कुर्सी पर बिल्ली है । *baṛī kursī par billī hai.*
 ७ मेज़ पर कुछ किताबें हैं । *mez par kuch kitābē hai.*
 ८ जी हाँ, दोनों बहुत प्यारे हैं ! *jī hā, donō bahut pyāre hai!*

House for rent

- १ घर आगरे में है ।
ghar āgre mē hai.
 २ नहीं, वह नया है ।
nahī, vah nayā hai.
 ३ चार कमरे हैं -- दो बड़े और दो छोटे ।
cār kamre hai — do baṛe aur do choṭe.
 ४ हाँ, सब कमरों में खिड़कियाँ हैं ।
hā, sab kamrō mē khiṛkiyā hai.
 ५ बड़े कमरों में पंखे हैं ।
baṛe kamrō mē pankhe hai.
 ६ बाहर बगीचा है । बगीचे में कुछ पेड़ हैं ।
bāhar bagicā hai. bagice mē kuch peṛ hai.
 ७ नहीं, दुकानें पास में हैं ।
nahī, dukānē pās mē hai.
 ८ किराया ५००० रुपये है ?
kirāyā 5000 hai.

Two tasks for you

- १ गीता वाराणसी से है । *Gītā vārāṇasī se hai.*
 २ जी हाँ, गीता शादी-शुदा है । *jī hā, Gītā śādī-śudā hai.*
 ३ जी हाँ, राजू दिल्ली से है । *jī hā, Rājū dillī se hai.*
 ४ जी नहीं, राजू डाक्टर नहीं, अध्यापक है । *jī nahī, Rājū ḍāktar nahī, adhyāpak hai.*
 ५ जी नहीं, यह घर दिल्ली में नहीं, आगरे में है । *jī nahī, yah ghar dillī mē nahī, āgre mē hai.*

- ६ घर में पाँच कमरे हैं । *ghar mẽ pāc kamre hai.*
 ७ बड़े कमरे में एक मेज़ है । *baṛe kamre mẽ ek mez hai.*
 ८ कम्प्यूटर मेज़ पर है । *kampyūtar mez par hai.*
 ९ किताबें फ़र्श पर हैं । *kitābē farś par hai.*
 १० बगीचे में कुछ लंबे पेड़ हैं । *bagīce mẽ kuch lambe peṛ hai.*

3a

- १ मेरी किताबें मेज़ पर पड़ी हैं ।
merī kitābē mez par paṛī hai.
 २ आपका भाई बगीचे में बैठा है ।
āpkā bhāi bagīce mẽ baiṭhā hai.
 ३ मैं बड़े कमरे में खड़ा हूँ ।
maī baṛe kamre mẽ khaṛā hū.
 ४ आपकी किताबें छोटी अलमारी में हैं ।
āpkī kitābē choṭī almārī mẽ hai.
 ५ उसका मकान यहाँ से दूर नहीं है ।
uskā makān yahā se dūr nahī hai.
 ६ आपके परिवार में कितने लोग हैं ?
āpke parivār mẽ kitne log hai?
 ७ आपके पति के पास कितना पैसा है ?
āpke pati ke pās kitnā paisā hai?
 ८ आज आपकी पत्नी कैसी हैं ? और आप कैसे हैं ?
āj āpkī patnī kaisī hai? aur āp kaise hai?
 ९ बच्चे घर पर नहीं हैं, स्कूल पर हैं ।
bacce ghar par nahī hai, skūl par hai.
 १० क्या यह छोटी लड़की तुम्हारी बहिन है ?
kyā yah choṭī laṛkī tumhārī bahin hai?

3b

- ११ मेरा पूरा नाम श्रीमती गीता शर्मा है ।
merā pūrā nām śrīmatī Gītā Śarmā hai.
 १२ जी हाँ, मैं डाक्टर हूँ ।
jī hā, maī dākṭar hū.

- १३ जी नहीं, मेरे पति अध्यापक हैं ।
jī nahī, mere pati adhyāpak hai.
 १४ जी हाँ, वे घर पर हैं । *jī hā, ve ghar par hai.*
 १५ मेरे पति दिल्ली से हैं, लेकिन मैं वाराणसी से हूँ ।
mere pati dillī se hai, lekin maī vārāṇasī se hū.
 १६ हमारे मकान में पाँच कमरे हैं ।
hamāre makān mẽ pāc kamre hai.
 १७ हमारे परिवार में तीन बच्चे हैं ।
hamāre parivār mẽ tīn bacce hai.
 १८ जी नहीं, वह बगीचे में है ।
jī nahī, vah bagīce mẽ hai.
 १९ जी नहीं, उसका स्कूल यहाँ से दूर नहीं है ।
jī nahī, uskā skūl yahā se dūr nahī hai.
 २० दूसरे बच्चे भी बगीचे में हैं ।
dūsre bacce bhī bagīce mẽ hai.
 २१ जी हाँ, कुत्ता हमारा है ।
jī hā, kuttā hamārā hai.
 २२ उसका नाम मोती है ।
uskā nām Motī hai.
 २३ जी हाँ, हमारे पास गाड़ी है ।
jī hā, hamāre pās gārī hai.
 २४ जी हाँ, मेरे पास कम्प्यूटर है ।
jī hā, mere pās kampyūtar hai.

Unit 4

Practise what you've learnt

- १ मत जाओ । आओ, बैठो ।
mat jāo! āo, baiṭho.
 २ बताओ, तुम कैसे हो ?
batāo, tum kaise ho?
 ३ समोसा खाओ, पानी पियो ।
samosā khāo, pānī piyo.

- ४ यह दूसरा समोसा भी लो ।
yah dūsārā samosā bhī lo.
- ५ मोती को समोसा न दो ।
Motī ko samosā na do.
- ६ और खाओ !
aur khāo!
- ७ खाली प्लेट मेज़ पर रखो ।
khālī pleṭ meḷ par rakho.
- ८ अरे ! सिग्रेट न पियो !
are! sigreṭ na piyo!
- ९ और चाय लो ।
aur cāy lo.

4a

- १ घर में शराब मत पियो / पीजिए ।
ghar mẽ śarāb mat piyo / pijie.
- २ ध्यान से सुनो / सुनिए ।
dhyān se suno / sunie.
- ३ यह पत्र मनोज को भेजो / भेजिए ।
yah patr Manoj ko bhejo / bhejie.
- ४ घर जाओ / जाइए ।
ghar jāo / jāie.
- ५ मुझको उसका नाम बताओ / बताइए ।
mujhko uskā nām batāo / batāie.
- ६ ये दो समोसे खाओ / खाइए ।
ye do samose khāo / khāie.
- ७ सितार बजाओ / बजाइए ।
sītār bajāo / bajāie.
- ८ मेरे पड़ोसी से पूछो / पूछिए ।
mere paṛosī se pūcho / pūchie.
- ९ यह पैसा मेरी पत्नी को दो / दीजिए ।
yah paisā merī patnī ko do / dijie.

- १० आज गाड़ी मत चलाओ / चलाइए ।
āj gārī mat calāo / calāie.
- ११ धीरे धीरे बोलो / बोलिए ।
dhīre dhīre bolo / bolie.

4b

- १२ राम से पूछिए । *Rām se pūchie.* Ask Ram.
- १३ बच्चों को मत बताना । *baccō ko mat batānā.* Don't tell the children.
- १४ चाचा जी से हिन्दी बोलो । *cācā jī se hindī bolo.* Speak Hindi with uncle.
- १५ मनोज से बात कीजिए । *Manoj se bāt kijie.* Talk to Manoj.
- १६ गीता से पैसा माँगना । *Gitā se paisā māḡnā.* Ask Gita for money.

4c

- १७ मेरा भाई दिल्ली में रहता है । मेरी बहिन दिल्ली में रहती है ।
merā bhāi dillī mẽ rahtā hai. merī bahin dillī mẽ rahtī hai.
- १८ मैं हिन्दी समझता हूँ । हम हिन्दी समझते हैं ।
maī hindī samajhtā hū. ham hindī samajhte hē.
- १९ लड़का गाड़ी बहुत तेज़ चलाता है । लड़की गाड़ी बहुत तेज़ चलाती है ।
laṛkā gārī bahut tez calātā hai. laṛkī gārī bahut tez calātī hai.
- २० मेरा पति हिन्दी बोलता है । मेरी पत्नी हिन्दी बोलती है ।
merā pati hindī boltā hai. merī patnī hindī boltī hai.
- २१ कौन अँग्रेज़ी बोलता है ? कौन अँग्रेज़ी बोलती है ?
kaun āgrezī boltā hai? kaun āgrezī boltī hai?

Unit 5

5a (sample answers)

- १ बहुत अच्छी है, धन्यवाद ।
bahut acchī hai, dhanyavād.
- २ जी हाँ, घर में सब लोग ठीक हैं ।
jī hā, ghar mẽ sab log ṭhik hai.

- ३ मुझको चावल चाहिए ।
mujhko cāval cāhie.
- ४ पाँच किलो दीजिए ।
pāc kilo dijie.
- ५ चीनी भी चाहिए । दो किलो देना ।
cīnī bhī cāhie. do kilo denā.
- ६ हाँ, एक टिकिया साबुन ।
hā, ek ṭikiyā sābun.
- ७ नहीं, वह सब नहीं चाहिए ।
nahī, vah sab nahī cāhie.
- ८ यहाँ से काफी दूर है, लेकिन मेरे पास गाड़ी है ।
yahā se kāfī dūr hai, lekin mere pās gārī hai.
- ९ जी नहीं, ये मेरी नहीं हैं ।
jī nahī, ye merī nahī hai.
- १० जी नहीं, गाड़ी दुकान के बहुत पास खड़ी है ।
jī nahī, gārī dukān ke bahut pās kharī hai.

5b

- ११ मुझको तीन समोसे चाहिए ।
mujhko tīn samose cāhie.
- १२ उनको यह मकान पसंद नहीं है, छोटा मकान पसंद है ।
unko yah makān pasand nahī hai, choṭā makān pasand hai.
- १३ मुझको यह कमरा पसंद नहीं है, कोई दूसरा कमरा दिखाइए ।
mujhko yah kamrā pasand nahī hai, koī dūsrā kamrā dikhāie.
- १४ आप कहाँ रहते हैं ? हम पुरानी दिल्ली में रहते हैं ।
āp kahā rahte hai? ham purānī dillī mẽ rahte hai.
- १५ आपका मकान मेरे मकान से बहुत दूर नहीं है । कल आना ।
āpkā makān hamāre makān se bahut dūr nahī hai. kal ānā.
- १६ मुझको मालूम है कि मेरे अध्यापक यहाँ नहीं रहते ।
mujhko mālūm hai ki mere adhyāpak yahā nahī rahte.
- १७ मुझको मालूम है कि आपके अध्यापक कहाँ रहते हैं ।
mujhko mālūm hai ki āpke adhyāpak kahā rahte hai.

- १८ दिल्ली में मकान बहुत महँगे होते हैं ।
dillī mẽ makān bahut mahāge hote hai.
- १९ दादा जी बहुत सुन्दर हिन्दी बोलते हैं ।
Dādā jī bahut sundar hindī bolte hai.
- २० हमको ये काले जूते नहीं चाहिए ।
hamko ye kāle jūte nahī cāhie.

Unit 6

You can go

- १ हम सिनेमा जा सकते हैं ।
ham sinemā jā sakte hai.
- २ चाचा जी घर पर रह सकते हैं ।
cācā jī ghar par rah sakte hai.
- ३ मैं अध्यापक से पूछ सकता हूँ ।
maī adhyāpak se pūch saktā hū.
- ४ बच्चे बगीचे में खेल सकते हैं ।
bacce bagīce mẽ khel sakte hai.
- ५ मैं अखबार पढ़ सकती हूँ ।
maī akhbār paṛh saktī hū.
- ६ हम बच्चों को सब कुछ बता सकते हैं ।
ham baccō ko sab kuch batā sakte hai.
- ७ तुम शराब नहीं पी सकते हो ।
tum śarāb nahī pī sakte ho.
- ८ वह कुछ नहीं कह सकता है ।
vah kuch nahī kah saktā hai.

Turning 'I want' into 'let me'

- १ मुझको अमरीका जाने दीजिए ।
mujhko amrikā jāne dijie.
- २ मुझको गाड़ी चलाने दीजिए ।
mujhko gārī calāne dijie.
- ३ मुझको खाना खाने दीजिए ।
mujhko khānā khāne dijie.

- ४ मुझको काम करने दीजिए ।
mujhko kām karne dijie.
- ५ मुझको आपसे बात करने दीजिए ।
mujhko āpse bāt kare dijie.
- ६ उसको सिगरेट पीने दीजिए ।
usko sigreṭ pīne dijie.
- ७ हमको अध्यापक से कुछ कहने दीजिए ।
hamko adhyāpak se kuch kahne dijie.
- ८ उसको हिन्दी सीखने दीजिए ।
usko hindī sikhne dijie.
- ९ बच्चों को समोसे खाने दीजिए ।
baccō ko samose khāne dijie.
- १० हमको यहाँ रहने दीजिए ।
hamko yahā rahne dijie.

6a

- १ फलवाला फल बेचता है !
phalvālā phal bectā hai!
- २ अखबारवाला अखबार बेचता है !
akhbārvālā akhbār bectā hai!
- ३ दूधवाला दूध बेचता है !
dūdhvālā dūdh bectā hai!
- ४ अध्यापक पढ़ाता है ।
adhyāpak paṛhātā hai.
- ५ स्कूल में बच्चे पढ़ते हैं ।
skūl mē bacce paṛhte hai.
- ६ घर पर बच्चे खेलते हैं ।
ghar par bacce khelte hai.
- ७ ड्राइवर गाड़ी चलाता है ।
drāivar gāṛī calātā hai.
- ८ दुकानदार माल बेचता है ।
dukāndār māl bectā hai.

6b (sample answers)

- ९ मैं लन्दन में रहता हूँ । *maī landan mē rahtā hū.*
- १० मैं हिन्दी पढ़ाता हूँ । *maī hindī paṛhātā hū.*
- ११ जी नहीं, मैं सितार नहीं बजाता, सिर्फ सुनता हूँ ! *jī nahī, maī sitār nahī bajātā, sirf suntā hū!*
- १२ मैं कई अखबार पढ़ता हूँ । *maī kai akhbār paṛhtā hū.*
- १३ मैं चार भाषाएँ बोलता हूँ । *maī cār bhāṣāē boltā hū.*

6c

- १४ जगदीश मनोज का अखबार पढ़ता है ।
Jagdiś Manoj kā akhbār paṛhtā hai.
- १५ मेरे दो भाई एक बड़े दफ्तर में काम करते हैं ।
mere do bhāī ek baṛe daftar mē kām karte hai.
- १६ मेरी बहिन मेरे भाई की गाड़ी चलाती है ।
merī bahin mere bhāī kī gāṛī calātī hai.
- १७ वह सिर्फ हिन्दी बोलता है, अंग्रेज़ी नहीं बोलता ।
vah sirf hindī boltā hai, āngreżī nahī boltā.
- १८ हमारे अध्यापक तीन भाषाएँ बोलते हैं ।
hamāre adhyāpak tīn bhāṣāē bolte hai.
- १९ उसके बच्चे बगीचे में क्रिकेट खेलते हैं ।
uske bacce bagīche mē krikeṭ khelte hai.
- २० हमारे माता-पिता गोश्त नहीं खाते हैं ।
hamāre mātā-pitā gošt nahī khāte hai.
- २१ आप कहाँ काम करते हैं ? आप कहाँ रहते हैं ?
āp kahā kām karte hai? āp kahā rahte hai?
- २२ आपका छोटा भाई क्या करता है ?
āpka choṭā bhāī kyā kartā hai?
- २३ आपकी माता जी कितनी भाषाएँ बोलती हैं ?
āpkī mātā jī kitnī bhāṣāē boltī hai?

Unit 7

Some questions about Jagdish's memories

- १ जगदीश जी वाराणसी में रहते थे ।
Jagdiś jī vārāṇasī mẽ rahte the.
- २ उनके परिवार में सात बच्चे थे ।
unke parivār mẽ sāt bacce the.
- ३ उनकी बहिन स्कूल जाना चाहती थीं, लेकिन उस ज़माने में बहुत कम लड़कियाँ स्कूल जाती थीं ।
unkī bahinē skūl jānā cāhtī thī, lekin us zamāne mẽ bahut kam laṛkiyā skūl jātī thī.
- ४ उनका स्कूल उनके घर से काफी दूर था ।
unkā skūl unke ghar se kāfī dūr thā.
- ५ जी नहीं, वे पैदल नहीं जाते थे, साइकिल से जाते थे ।
jī nahī, ve paidal nahī jāte the, sāikil se jāte the.

7a

- १ जगदीश मनोज का अखबार पढ़ता था ।
Jagdiś Manoj kā akhbār parhṭā thā.
- २ मेरे दो भाई एक बड़े दफ्तर में काम करते थे ।
mere do bhāi ek bare daftar mẽ kām karte the.
- ३ मेरी बहिन मेरे भाई की गाड़ी चलाती थी ।
merī bahin mere bhāi kī gārī calāti thī.
- ४ वह सिर्फ हिन्दी बोलता था, अंग्रेज़ी नहीं बोलता था ।
vah sirf hindī boltā thā, āgrezī nahī boltā thā.
- ५ हमारे अध्यापक तीन भाषाएँ बोलते थे ।
hamāre adhyāpak tīn bhāṣāē bolte the.
- ६ उसके बच्चे बगीचे में क्रिकेट खेलते थे ।
uske bacce bagīche mẽ krikeṭ khelte the.
- ७ हमारे माता-पिता गोश्त नहीं खाते थे ।
hamāre mātā-pitā gośt nahī khāte the.
- ८ आप कहाँ काम करते थे ? आप कहाँ रहते थे ?
āp kahā kām karte the? āp kahā rahte the?

- ९ आपका छोटा भाई क्या करता था ?
āpka choṭā bhāi kyā kartā thā?
- १० आपकी माता जी कितनी भाषाएँ बोलती थीं ?
āpkī mātā jī kitnī bhāṣāē boltī thī?

7b

- 11 In Jagdish's family only the boys used to go to school.
- 12 His school was very far from his house.
- 13 At school everyone called him 'Master ji', not just the children.
- 14 In his job the actual pay wasn't very good.
- 15 Jagdish's mother only spoke Hindi.
- 16 In those days the children, at least, were very happy.
- 17 There wasn't actually a garden, but there were lots of places for playing in.
- 18 As for the children, they used to sleep on the roof.
- 19 In his childhood, Raju was very fond of writing letters.
- 20 The Prime Minister was kind, but he used to have a lot of work.

7c

हम लोग वाराणसी के पास एक छोटे गाँव में रहते थे । मेरे पिताजी स्कूल में अध्यापक थे । लेकिन वे नता बनना चाहते थे । वे प्रधान मंत्री बनने के सपने देखते थे । मेरी माँ उनको "प्रधान मंत्री जी" ही कहती थीं । हमारा घर गंगा के निकारे पर था । हम नदी के किनारे बहुत खेलते थे ।

उस ज़माने में हम हमेशा बड़े शहरों के बारे में बात करते थे । मैं अपने भाइयों और दोस्तों से कहता था कि बड़े लोग बड़े शहरों में ही रहते हैं । मैं भी बड़ा आदमी बनना चाहता था, मैं भी बड़े शहर में रहना चाहता था । मैं अब लंदन में रहता हूँ और मुझे मालूम है कि बड़े शहर की ज़िन्दगी कैसी होती है ... मैं एक छोटे गाँव में रहना चाहता हूँ !

ham log vārāṇasī ke pās ek choṭe gāv mẽ rahte the. mere pitāji skūl mẽ adhyāpak the. lekin ve netā bannā cāhte the. ve pradhān mantri banne ke sapne dekhte the. merī mā unko 'pradhān mantri jī' hī kahtī thī. hamārā ghar gangā ke kināre par thā. ham nadi ke kināre bahut khelte the.

us zamāne mẽ ham hameśā baṛe śāharō ke bāre mẽ bāt karte the. maī apne bhāiyō aur dostō se kahtā thā ki baṛe log baṛe śāharō mẽ hī rahte hai. maī bhī baṛā ādmī bannā cāhtā thā, maī bhī baṛe śāhar mẽ rahnā cāhtā thā. maī ab landan mẽ rahtā hū aur mujhe mālūm hai ki baṛe śāhar kī zindagī kaisī hotī hai...maī ek choṭe gāv mẽ rahnā cāhtā hū!

Unit 8

Four children

- १ जी हाँ, ओम शंकर से बड़ा है ।
jī hā, Om Śankar se baṛā hai.
- २ दो बच्चे रीता से छोटे हैं ।
do bacce Rītā se choṭe hai.
- ३ सबसे बड़ा लड़का शिव है ।
sabse baṛā laṛkā Śiv hai.
- ४ सबसे छोटा लड़का शंकर है ।
sabse choṭā laṛkā Śankar hai.
- ५ ओम सिर्फ एक बच्चे से बड़ा है ।
Om sirf ek bacce se baṛā hai.
- ६ जी नहीं, रीता शिव से छोटी है ।
jī nahī, Rītā Śiv se choṭī hai.
- ७ जी हाँ, रीता ओम से छोटी नहीं है ।
jī hā, Rītā Om se choṭī nahī hai.
- ८ जी नहीं, रीता शंकर से बड़ी है ।
jī nahī, Rītā Śankar se baṛī hai.
- ९ मुझे तो सभी तस्वीरें बहुत पसंद हैं !
mujhe to sabhī tasvīrē bahut pasand hai!

Practise what you've learnt

- १ जावेद पत्र लिख रहा है ।
Jāved patr likh rahā hai.
- २ दो लड़कियाँ ताश खेल रही हैं ।
do laṛkiyā tāś khel rahī hai.
- ३ कोई आदमी खाना तैयार कर रहा है ।
koī ādmī khānā taiyār kar rahā hai.

- ४ कुत्ता सो रहा है ।
kuttā so rahā hai.
- ५ सीता फ़ोन पर बात कर रही है ।
Sītā fon par bāt kar rahī hai.
- ६ गीता और राजू शराब पी रहे हैं ।
Gītā aur Rājū śarāb pi rahe hai.
- ७ राम बरतन माँज रहा है ।
Rām bartan māṅ rahā hai.
- ८ उषा दौड़ रही है ।
Uṣā daur rahī hai.

8a

- १ आप उनसे ज़्यादा होशियार नहीं हैं ।
āp unse zyādā hośiyār nahī hai.
- २ मैं अपने भाई से बड़ी हूँ लेकिन आपसे छोटी हूँ ।
maī apne bhāī se baṛī hū lekin āpse choṭī hū.
- ३ मेरी दूसरी बहिन सबसे होशियार है ।
merī dūsarī bahin sabse hośiyār hai.
- ४ कुछ लोग कहते हैं कि हिन्दी अंग्रेज़ी से ज़्यादा आसान है ।
kuch log kahte hai ki hindi āgrezī se zyādā āsān hai.
- ५ माँ सोचती हैं कि मेरी बहिन मुझसे ज़्यादा सुंदर है ।
mā soctī hai ki merī bahin mujhse zyāda sundar hai.
- ६ पिताजी माताजी से ज़्यादा जानते हैं लेकिन वे कुछ नहीं कह सकते हैं ।
pitāji mātāji se zyādā jānte hai lekin ve kuch nahī kah sakte hai.
- ७ उनका मकान हमारे मकान से ज़्यादा बड़ा और सुंदर है ।
unkā makān hamāre makān se zyādā baṛā aur sundar hai.
- ८ मैं आपसे ज़्यादा होशियार हूँ ।
maī āpse zyādā hośiyār hū.
- ९ आपकी भाषा मेरी भाषा से ज़्यादा मुश्किल है ।
āpkī bhāṣā merī bhāṣā se zyādā muškil hai.

8b

- १० हम लोग अपने दोस्तों को खाना खाने बुला रहे हैं ।
ham log apne dostō ko khānā khāne bulā rahe hai. We're inviting our friends for a meal.
- ११ मैं खाना तैयार कर रहा हूँ ।
mai khānā taiyār kar rahā hū. I am preparing the food.
- १२ वे लोग शाम को आ रहे हैं ।
ve log sām ko ā rahe hai. They are coming in the evening.
- १३ वे अपने बच्चों और दोस्तों को भी ला रहे हैं ।
ve apne baccō aur dostō ko bhī lā rahe hai. They're bringing their children and friends too.
- १४ मेरी पत्नी कह रही है कि उनके बच्चे मोती को मार रहे हैं ।
merī patnī kah rahī hai ki unke bacce Motī ko mār rahe hai. My wife is saying that their children are hitting Moti.
- १५ दादी जी हमारी मदद नहीं कर रही हैं, सिर्फ रेडियो सुन रही हैं ।
dādi jī hamārī madad nahī kar rahī hai, sirf reḍiyo sun rahī hai. Grandma isn't helping us, she's only listening to the radio.
- १६ हमारा कुकर ठीक से काम नहीं कर रहा है ।
hamārā kukar thīk se kām nahī kar rahā hai. Our cooker isn't working properly.
- १७ हमारे दोस्त कह रहे हैं कि बाथरूम में पानी नहीं आ रहा है ।
hamāre dost kah rahe hai ki bāthrūm mē pānī nahī ā rahā hai. Our friends are saying that there isn't any water ['coming'] in the bathroom.

8c (sample answers)

- १८ अपने खाली समय में मैं अपने दोस्तों से मिलता हूँ ।
apne khālī samay mē mai apne dostō se miltā hū.
- १९ मुझे दोनों पसंद हैं – घर पर रहना भी और बाहर जाना भी !
mujhe donō pasand hai — ghar par rahnā bhī aur bāhar jānā bhī. (Note भी...भी *bhī...bhī* 'both...and'.)
- २० क्योंकि मेरे बहुत-से हिन्दुस्तानी दोस्त हैं ।
kyōki mere bahut-se hindustānī dost hai.

- २१ जी नहीं, मेरे खयाल में दोनों भाषाएँ काफ़ी मुश्किल हैं !
jī nahī, mere khyāl se donō bhāṣāē kāfī muškil hai!
- २२ जी हाँ, मेरे हिन्दुस्तानी दोस्त हिन्दी बोलते हैं ।
jī hā, mere hindustānī dost hindī bolte hai.
- २३ आज मैं यह किताब लिख रहा हूँ !
āj mai yah kitāb likh rahā hū!
- २४ अपनी छुट्टियों में मैं भारत या ग्रीस [Greece] जाता हूँ ।
apnī chuṭṭiyō mē mai bhārat yā grīs jātā hū.
- २५ मैं अभी सोच रहा हूँ कि यह पाठ [lesson] बहुत लंबा है !
mai abhī soc rahā hū ki yah pāṭh bahut lambā hai!

Unit 9

Practise what you've learnt (sample answers)

- १ आज रात को मैं हिन्दुस्तानी खाना खाऊँगा ।
āj rāt ko mai hindustānī khānā khāūgā.
- २ मैं शायद बीयर पिऊँगा ।
mai śāyad biyar piūgā.
- ३ आज मैं काम करूँगा और अपने बड़े बेटे से मिलने जाऊँगा ।
āj mai kām karūgā aur apne bāre betē se milne jāūgā.
- ४ कल सुबह मैं ब्रिटिश लाइब्रेरी [British Library] जाऊँगा ।
kal subah mai britīś lāibrerī jāūgā.
- ५ अगर आप परसों लंदन आएँगे/आएँगी, तो आपसे ही मिलूँगा !
agar āp parsō landan āēge/āēgi, to āpse hī milūgā!

Geeta's diary

- सोमवार घर पर रहना *somvār ghar par rahnā*
- मंगलवार दिल्ली जाना *mangalvār dilli jānā*
- बुधवार कुछ चीज़ें खरीदना *budhvār kuch cizē kharīdnā*
- गुरुवार घर वापस आना *gurvār ghar vāpas ānā*
- शुक्रवार आराम करना *śukravār ārām karnā*
- शनिवार सीता के यहाँ जाना *śanivār Sitā ke yahā jānā*
- रविवार अगले हफ़्ते की तैयारियाँ करना *ravivār agle hafte kī taiyāriyā karnā*

9a

- 1E If the vegetable market is closed, get ['take'] the vegetables tomorrow morning.
- 2D If you don't know the way, buy a map.
- 3C If you don't know the meaning of some/any word, look in a dictionary.
- 4B If you don't find a policeman at the roundabout, go to the police station.
- 5A If you don't get a room at the hotel, stay at my place.
- 6F If you turn into that narrow lane you'll see the café on your left ['the café will appear...'].

9b

- ७ दो लोगों के लिए कमरा चाहिए । हम दो दिन रहेंगे ।
do logō ke lie kamrā cāhie. ham do din rahēge.
- ८ आज शाम को हमारे कुछ दोस्त हमसे मिलने आएँगे ।
āj śam ko hamāre kuch dost hamse milne āēge.
- ९ नाश्ते में क्या मिलेगा ? *nāšte mẽ kyā milegā?*
- १० क्या रात का खाना भी मिलेगा ? *kyā rāt kā khānā bhī milegā?*
- ११ यहाँ से सिनेमा जाने में कितना समय लगेगा ? हम पैदल जाना चाहते हैं । *yahā se sinemā jāne mẽ kitnā samay lagegā? ham paidal jānā cāhte hai.*
- १२ मैं लंदन फ़ोन करना चाहता हूँ । क्या मैं अपने कमरे से ही फ़ोन कर सकता हूँ ?
maī landan fon karnā cāhtā hū. kyā maī apne kamre se hī fon kar saktā hū?
- १३ अगले हफ़्ते हम लोग आगरे और दिल्ली जाएँगे ।
agle hafte ham log āgre aur dilli jāēge.
- १४ क्या आज रात को हमारे दोस्त हमारे साथ खाना खा सकते हैं ?
kyā āj rāt ko hamāre dost hamāre sāth khānā khā sakte hai?

9c

- १५ कल शनिवार है, इसलिए हम बाहर जाएँगे ।
kal śanivār hai, islie ham bāhar jāēge.

- १६ हम सोच रहे थे कि हम सिनेमा जाएँगे ।
ham soc rahe the ki ham sinemā jāēge.
- १७ मेरा भाई कह रहा था कि वह घर पर रहेगा ।
merā bhāi kah rahā thā ki vah ghar par rahegā.
- १८ अगर आप चाहें तो आप भी हमारे साथ आइए ।
agar āp cāhē to āp bhī hamāre sāth āie.
- १९ हम जल्दी जाएँगे ताकि अच्छी सीटें मिलें ।
ham jaldī jāēge tāki acchī siṭē milē.
- २० अगर बारिश हो रही है तो हम गाड़ी से जाएँगे ।
agar bāriś ho rahi hai to ham gārī se jāēge.

Unit 10

Practise what you've learnt

- १ मनोज घर गया । *Manoj ghar gayā.*
- २ राजू और राम बाहर गए । *Rājū aur Rām bāhar gae.*
- ३ सीता दिल्ली गई । *Sitā dilli gai.*
- ४ कुछ नहीं हुआ । *kuch nahī huā.*
- ५ मीना कल पहुँची । *Minā kal pahūci.*
- ६ दादीजी परसों आई । *Dādīji parsō āi.*
- ७ मनोज मंगलवार को आया । *Manoj mangalvār ko āyā.*

How many did you see?

- १ मैंने दो किताबें देखीं । *maīne do kitābē dekhī.*
- २ मैंने एक सिग्रेट देखा । *maīne ek sigreṭ dekhā.*
- ३ मैंने एक अख़बार देखा । *maīne ek akhbār dekhā.*
- ४ मैंने दो गाड़ियाँ देखीं । *maīne do gārīyā dekhī.*
- ५ मैंने एक गिलास देखा । *maīne ek gilās dekhā.*
- ६ मैंने एक ट्रेन देखी । *maīne ek tren dekhī.*
- ७ मैंने दो जूते देखे । *maīne do jūte dekhe.*
- ८ मैंने तीन चाबियाँ देखीं । *maīne tin cābiyā dekhī.*
- ९ मैंने दो हाथी देखे । *maīne do hāthī dekhe.*

- १० मैंने एक मकान देखा । *maīne ek makān dekhā.*
 ११ मैंने दो कुत्ते देखे । *maīne do kutte dekhe.*
 १२ मैंने एक बंदर देखा । *maīne ek bandar dekhā*
 १३ मैंने एक बिल्ली देखी । *maīne ek billi dekhī.*
 १४ मैंने एक क़मीज़ देखी । *maīne ek qamiz dekhī.*
 १५ मैंने एक दरवाज़ा देखा । *maīne ek darvāzā dekhā.*
 १६ मैंने तीन बोटलें देखीं । *maīne tīn botalē dekhī.*

What did Geeta see?

- १ गीता ने एक नई फ़िल्म देखी । *Gītā ne ek nāī film dekhī.*
 २ राजू ने दो अख़बार ख़रीदे । *Rājū ne do akhbār kharīde.*
 ३ मोती ने दस चपातियाँ खाईं । *Motī ne das chapātiyā khāī.*
 ४ मीना ने दो कहानियाँ पढ़ीं । *Mīnā ne do kahāniyā pṛhī.*
 ५ हमने चार कुरते ख़रीदे । *hamne cār kurte kharīde.*
 ६ उन्होंने मेज़ पर कुछ किताबें रखीं । *unhōne mez par kuch kitābē rakhī.*
 ७ मैंने दीवार पर अपना नाम लिखा । *maīne divār par apnā nām likhā.*
 ८ मैंने कई बातें सुनीं । *maīne kai batē sunī.*
 ९ मैंने एक ही भाषा सीखी । *maīne ek hī bhāṣā sikhī.*

Geeta's version of the morning

- १ राजू पहले उठा ।
Rājū pahle uṭhā.
 २ राजू ने गीता के लिए नाश्ता तैयार किया ।
Rājū ne Gītā ke lie nāstā taiyār kiya.
 ३ गीता को जगाने से पहले राजू आँगन में बैठा और चाय पी ।
Gītā ko jagāne se pahle Rājū āngan mẽ baiṭhā aur cāy pī.
 ४ गीता की शिकायत यह थी कि राजू ने चाय में बहुत ज़्यादा चीनी डाली थी ।
Gītā kī śikāyat yah thī ki Rājū ne cāy mẽ bahut zyādā cīni dāli thī.

- ५ गीता ने नाश्ता रसोई में किया ।
Gītā ne nāstā rasoī mẽ kiya.
 ६ गीता ने गोलियाँ खाईं । उसके सिर में दर्द था ।
Gītā ne goliyā khāī. uske sir mẽ dard thā.
 ७ नहीं, सिर्फ़ राजू को जल्दी उठना पसंद है, गीता को नहीं ।
nahī, sirf Rājū ko jaldī uṭhnā pasand hai, Gītā ko nahī.
 ८ उसने सोचा कि शाहरुख़ आया था ।
usne socā ki Śāhrukh āyā thā.
 ९ शायद गीता के सपने में ही !
śāyad Gītā ke sapne mẽ hī!

10a

- १ जावेद ने मुझे फ़ोन करके बताया कि तबियत ख़राब है ।
Jāved ne mujhe fon karke batāyā ki tabiyat kharāb hai.
 २ मैं जावेद के घर जाकर उसके कमरे में गया ।
maī Jāved ke ghar jākar uske kamre mẽ gaya.
 ३ जावेद का हाल देखकर मैंने डाक्टर को बुलाया ।
Jāved kā hāl dekhkar maīne dāktar ko bulāyā.
 ४ थोड़ी देर में आकर डाक्टर ने कहा कि जावेद बहुत ही कमज़ोर है ।
thoṛī der mẽ ākar dāktar ne kahā ki Jāved bahut hī kamzor hai.
 ५ जावेद को कुछ गोलियाँ देकर डाक्टर ने कहा कि रोज़ दो गोलियाँ लेना ।
Jāved ko kuch goliyā dekar dāktar ne kahā ki roz do goliyā lenā.
 ६ जावेद ने मुस्कराकर डाक्टर से धन्यवाद कहा ।
Jāved ne muskarākar dāktar se dhanyavād kahā.
 ७ डाक्टर ने मेरी तरफ़ देखकर कहा कि “अच्छा, तो मैं चलता हूँ ।”
dāktar ne merī taraf dekhkar kahā ki ‘acchā, to maī caltā hū’.
 ८ मैंने कहा कि चाय पीकर जाइए ।
maīne kahā ki cāy pīkar jāie.
 ९ डाक्टर ने हँसकर कहा कि मैं चाय नहीं लूँगा, अपनी फ़ीस लूँगा !
dāktar ne hāskar kahā ki maī cāy nahī lūṅgā, apnī fis lūṅgā!

कल सुबह मैं छह बजे उठा। नाश्ता करके मैंने अपने भाई को फोन किया। वह सो रहा था। मेरी आवाज़ सुनकर उसने कहा, “तुमने मुझे इतनी जल्दी क्यों जगाया?” मैंने कहा, “तुमको याद नहीं? आज हम जयपुर जा रहे हैं!” उसने पूछा, “हम कितने बजे जा रहे हैं?” मैंने जवाब दिया, “हम दस बजे की गाड़ी पकड़ेंगे। तुम जल्दी तैयार हो जाओ!” उसने जैभाई लेकर कहा कि रात में उसने सपना देखा था। सपने में एक बूढ़ी औरत ने उससे कहा था कि आज तुम कहीं मत जाना! घर पर ही रहना! मैंने हँसकर कहा, “यह तो सपना ही था। उठो न! तैयार हो जाओ।”

गाड़ी ठीक दस बजे स्टेशन से चलने लगी। पर बीस-पच्चीस मिनट बाद वह रुकी। इंजन खराब हो गई थी। सुनसान जगह थी; पास में कोई गाँव या मकान नहीं था। जुलाई की गरमी में सारे यात्रियों ने गाड़ी से उतरकर कई घंटों तक कुछ छोटे पेड़ों के साये में इंतज़ार किया। भयंकर गरमी थी। तीन बजे एक दूसरी गाड़ी आकर रुकी। यह दूसरी गाड़ी यात्रियों को वापस दिल्ली ले आने आई थी।

गाड़ी की कहानी हमने रेडियो पर ही सुनी। हमने उस बूढ़ी औरत की सलाह ली थी! हम जयपुर कल जाएँगे...

kal subah maī chah baje uṭhā. nāstā karke maīne apne bhāi ko fon kiyā. vah so rahā thā. merī āvāz sunkar usne kahā, ‘tumne mujhe itnī jaldī kyō jagāyā?’ maīne kahā, ‘tumko yād nahī? āj ham jaypur jā rahe hai!’ usne pūchā, ‘ham kitne baje jā rahe hai?’ maīne javāb diyā, ‘ham das baje kī gārī pakarēge. tum jaldī taiyār ho jāo!’ usne jābhāi lekar kahā ki rāt mẽ usne sapnā dekhā thā. sapne mẽ ek būrhi aurat ne usse kahā thā ki āj tum kahī mat jānā! ghar par hī rahnā! maīne hāskar kahā, ‘yah to sapnā hī thā. uṭho na! taiyār ho jāo.’

gārī thik das baje sṭeśan se calne lagī. par bis-paccīs mināt bād vah ruki. injan kharāb ho gāi thī. sunsān jagah thī; pās mẽ koī gāv yā makān nahī thā. julāi kī garmī mẽ sare yātriyō

ne gārī se utarkar kai ghanṭō tak kuch choṭe peṛō ke sāye mẽ intazār kiyā. bhayankar garmī thī. tīn baje ek dūsri gārī ākar ruki. yah dūsri gārī yātriyō ko vāpas dilli le āne āi thī. gārī kī kahāni hamne reḍiyo par hī sunī. hamne us būrhi aurat kī salāh lī thī! ham jaypur kal jāēge...

Unit 11

India: states and languages

- 1 तमिल तमिलनाडु में बोली जाती है।
tamil tamilnāḍu mẽ bolī jāti hai.
- 2 मराठी महाराष्ट्र में बोली जाती है।
marāṭhī mahārāṣṭra mẽ bolī jāti hai.
- 3 केरल में मलयालम बोली जाती है।
keral mẽ malayālam bolī jāti hai.
- 4 हिन्दी दस प्रदेशों में बोली जाती है।
hindī das pradesō mẽ bolī jāti hai.
- 5 दिल्ली और बिहार के बीच उत्तर प्रदेश पाया जाता है।
dilli aur bihār ke bic uttar prades pāyā jāti hai.

Sharma ji in his shop

- 1 गोपाल को शर्मा जी से बुलाया गया।
Gopāl ko Śarmā jī se bulāyā gayā.
- 2 सामान छोटे कमरे में रखा जाएगा।
sāmān choṭe kamre mẽ rakhā jāegā.
- 3 कमरे की सफ़ाई गोपाल से की जाएगी।
kamre kī safāi Gopāl se kī jāegī.
- 4 दुकान को आठ बजे बंद किया जाएगा।
dukān ko āṭh baje band kiyā jāegā.
- 5 शर्मा जी के साफ़ कपड़े धोबी के यहाँ से लिए जाएँगे।
Śarmā jī ke sāf kapṛe dhobī ke yahā se lāe jāēge.
- 6 क्योंकि गोपाल रेडियो सुन रहा था!
kyōki Gopāl reḍiyo sun rahā thā!

Your help is needed

- १ गीता को आराम करना चाहिए ।
Gītā ko ārām karnā cāhie.
- २ मनोज को गोली लेनी चाहिए और पानी पीना चाहिए ।
Manoj ko golī lenī cāhie aur pānī pinā cāhie.
- ३ राजू को फ़र्श को साफ़ करना चाहिए ।
Rājū ko fars ko sāf karnā cāhie.
- ४ मीना को कुछ खाना चाहिए ।
Mīnā ko kuch khānā cahie.
- ५ उन लोगों को नया घर लेना (या ख़रीदना) चाहिए ।
un logō ko nayā ghar lenā (yā kharīdnā) cāhie.

11a

- १ कोई तीस लोग बुलाए जाएँगे ।
koī tis log bulāe jāēge.
- २ शुक्रवार को घर को साफ़ किया जाएगा ।
śukravār ko ghar ko sāf kiyā jāegā.
- ३ रविवार की सुबह को खाना बनाया जाएगा ।
ravivār kī subah ko khānā banāyā jāegā.
- ४ दोपहर को कुछ रिश्तेदारों को स्टेशन से लाए जाएँगे ।
dopahar ko kuch riśtedārō ko ṣṭeśan se lāe jāēge.
- ५ बच्चों को तोहफे दिए जाएँगे ।
baccō ko tohfe die jāēge.
- ६ रात को बगीचे में बत्तियाँ जलाई जाएँगी ।
rāt ko bagīce mē battiyā jalāī jāēgi.
- ७ संगीत भी बजाया जाएगा ।
sangīt bhī bajāyā jāegā.
- ८ पड़ोसियों को भी बुलाया जाएगा ।
paṛosiyō ko bhī bulāyā jāegā.

11b

- ९ आज का खाना ताज़ा नहीं था । लगता है वह कल ही बनाया गया था ।

- १० कल रात को हमारे दोस्त हमसे मिलने आए थे लेकिन हमें नहीं बताया गया कि वे आए हैं ।
kal rāt ko hamāre dost hamse milne āe the lekin hamē nahī batāyā gayā ki ve āe hai.
- ११ किसी के गंदे कपड़े मेरे कमरे रखे गए थे ।
kisī ke gande kapṛe mere kamre mē rakhe gae the.
- १२ आज शाम को मैंने देखा कि हमारे कमरे के दरवाज़े को ठीक से बंद नहीं किया गया था ।
āj śām ko maīne dekhā ki hamāre kamre ke darvāṛe ko ṭhik se band nahī kiyā gayā thā.
- १३ एक बात और — हमारे सामान को खोला गया था ।
ek bāt aur — hamāre sāmān ko kholā gayā thā!
- १४ हमको नहाने के लिए गरम पानी नहीं दिया गया ।
hamko nahāne ke lie garam pānī nahī diyā gayā.
- १५ मैंने परसों कुछ कपड़े दिए थे धोने के लिए, लेकिन अभी तक वे वापस नहीं दिए गए ।
maīne parsō kuch kapṛe die the dhone ke lie, lekin abhī tak ve vāpas nahī die gae.
- १६ मेरे ड्राइवर को बताया गया कि उसे गाड़ी में ही सोना होगा ।
mere drāivar ko batāyā gayā ki use gārī mē hī sonā hogā.

11c

Why do these people hassle me? Everyday they complain about something. It seems they're very fond of complaining. I don't know which country they're from ['they've come from']. In my opinion when people come to our country they shouldn't complain about everything. They should respect this country. It's true that their luggage shouldn't have been opened, but all the other matters were quite minor. I should tell the manager about this but I don't want to tell him. I won't tell him. These people can go to hell!

ब ¹	ह ²	ड ³	र			ड ⁴
द ⁵	ल	श		अ ⁶	धा ⁷	पि का
सू ⁸		म ⁹	धु	ब	न	न
र		न				स दा
त ¹⁰	ब		मं ¹¹	ग	ल	वा र
			दि			ल
अ ¹²	ख ¹³	बा	र	वा ¹⁴	ला ¹⁵	या ¹⁶
म ¹⁷	त			रा ¹⁸	ख ¹⁹	नी
री ²⁰	रा ²¹	मा	य	ण		ल
क		र		सी ²²	घा ²³	र ²⁴
म ²⁵	हा	ना		गा ²⁶	य	क

Practise what you've learnt

- हम शर्मा जी से बच्चों को हिन्दी सिखवाएँगे ।
ham Śarmā jī se baccō ko hindī sikhvāēge.
- मैंने नौकरों से कुछ खाना बनवाया ।
maīne naukarō se kuch khānā banvāyā.
- हमें गाड़ी को ठीक करवाना है ।
hamē gārī ko ṭhik karvānā hai.
- मैं मास्टरजी से कुछ करते सिलवाना चाहता हूँ ।
maī māstarjī se kuch kurte silvānā cāhtā hū.
- मैंने इन पत्रों को किसी से लिखवाया ।
maīne in patrō ko kisi se likhvāyā.

The doctor asks you some questions

- मेरी तबियत दो दिन से खराब है ।
merī tabiyat do din se kharāb hai.
- जी नहीं, बुखार नहीं है ।
jī nahī, bukhār nahī hai.
- जी हाँ, सिर में दर्द है ।
jī hā, sir mē dard hai.
- जी नहीं, मैं बाहर का खाना कभी नहीं खाता हूँ ।
jī nahī, maī bāhar kā khānā kabhī nahī khātā hū.

- जी नहीं, मैं बोतल का पानी ही पीता हूँ ।
jī nahī, maī botal kā pānī hī pitā hū.
- जी हाँ, उलटी हो रही है ।
jī hā, ulṭī ho rahī hai.
- हाँ, दस्त भी है ।
hā, dast bhī hai.
- मैं शराब पीता तो हूँ लेकिन बहुत ज़्यादा नहीं ।
maī śarāb pitā to hū lekin bahut zyādā nahī.
- आम तौर पर नींद ठीक से आती है ।
ām taur par nīd ṭhik se ātī hai.
- मैं ग्यारह-बारह बजे सोता हूँ ।
maī gyārah-bārah baje sotā hū.
- मैं कम से कम [at least] सात घंटे सोता हूँ ।
maī kam se kam [at least] sāt ghaṇṭe sotā hū.
- जी नहीं, और कोई तकलीफ़ नहीं है ।
jī nahī, aur koī taklīf nahī hai.

12a

- किसी बड़े आर्टिस्ट ने उसको बनाया होगा ।
kisī bare ārtiṣṭ ne usko banāyā hogā.
- जहाँ हीरालाल रहता है वहाँ कई दूसरे रिक्शेवाले भी रहते हैं ।
jahā Hīrālāl rahtā hai vahā kai dūsre rikṣevāle bhī rahte hai.
- उस शहर का नाम आगरा है ।
us śahar kā nām āgrā hai.
- जी नहीं, बारिश में भी हीरालाल को काम करना पड़ता है ।
jī nahī, bārīś mē bhī Hīrālāl ko kām karnā partā hai.
- रिक्शे का वजन तब बहुत ज़्यादा हो जाता है जब मोटे लोग अपने भारी सामान को लेकर रिक्शे में चढ़ते हैं ।
rikṣe kā vazan tab bahut zyādā ho jātā hai jab moṭe log apne bhāri sāmān ko lekar rikṣe mē cāḍhte hai.
- हीरालाल की जेब तब खाली रहती है जब कोई सवारी नहीं आती ।
Hīrālāl kī jeb tab khālī rahtī hai jab koī savārī nahī ātī.

- ७ जो लोग रिक्शे चलाते हैं उनकी ज़िन्दगी मुश्किल होती है ।
jo log rikše calāte hai unki zindagī muškil hotī hai.

12b (sample answers)

- ८ जो लोग भारत के बारे में कुछ सीखना चाहते हैं उनको हिन्दी सीखनी चाहिए ।
jo log bhārat ke bāre mẽ kuch sikhñā cāhte hai unko hindi sikhñi cāhie.
- ९ जब मैंने पहली बार ताज महल को देखा तो मैंने सोचा कि मैं भी एक ऐसी इमारत बनाऊँगा !
jab maïne pahli bār tāj mahal ko dekhā to maïne socā ki mai bhī ek aisi imārat banāūngā!
- १० जहाँ मेरे रिश्तेदार रहते हैं, वहाँ पहुँचने में कई घंटे लगते हैं ।
jahā mere ristēdār rahte hai, vahā pahūcne mẽ kai ghañṭe lagte hai.
- ११ जो आदमी मेरे साथ काम करता है उसकी पत्नी मेरी पत्नी की सहेली है ।
jo ādmī mere sāth kām kartā hai uski patnī merī patnī ki sahelī hai.
- १२ जो आदमी मेरे घर के सामने रहता है वह कोई बड़ा नेता है ।
jo ādmī mere ghar ke sāmne rahtā hai vah koī barā netā hai.
- १३ जिन लोगों के पास बहुत पैसा है वे ही लंदन में बड़ा मकान खरीद सकते हैं ।
jin logō ke pās bahut paisā hai ve hī landan mẽ barā makān kharīd sakte hai.
- १४ जो कपड़े मैंने कल खरीदे उनको तुमने कहाँ रखा ?
jo kapre maïne kal kharīde unko tumne kahā rakhā?

12c

- १५ जब मैं आगरे जाता हूँ तो अक्सर राजू के यहाँ रहता हूँ ।
jab mai āgre jātā hū to aksar Rājū ke yahā rahtā hū.
- १६ जो आदमी हमको हिन्दी पढ़ाता है वह राजू का भाई है ।
jo ādmī hamko hindi parhātā hai vah Rājū kā bhāī hai.
- १७ जो तोहफ़ा मैंने आज राजू को दिया वह काफी सस्ता था ।

jo tohfā maïne āj Rājū ko diyā vah kāfi sastā thā.

- १८ जब मैंने उसे उसको दिया तो उसने उसे अपनी माँ को दिखाया ।
jab maïne use usko diyā to usne use apni mā ko dikhāyā.
- १९ जब राजू की माँ ने मेरा तोहफ़ा देखा तो वे हँसने लगीं ।
jab Rājū kī mā ne merā tohfā dekhā to ve hāsne lagī.
- २० जो सवाल उन्होंने राजू से मेरे बारे में पूछा मैं उसको कभी नहीं भूलूँगा ।
jo savāl unhōne Rājū se mere bāre mẽ pūchā usko mai kabhi nahī bhulūngā.
- २१ जो जवाब राजू ने दिया वह हमेशा याद रहेगा ।
jo javāb Rājū ne diyā vah hamesā yād rahegā.

12d

Dear Manoj,

I got your letter, thanks. I hadn't had a letter for a year so I'd begun wondering what had happened to my friend Manoj.

Everything's fine here. My brother has married. He's rented a small house in Delhi.

My father says I should get married too now. But I've told him clearly that I won't get married yet. I'm still young. When I turn thirty then maybe I'll start thinking about these things. But Father doesn't want to listen to what I say. Just a little while ago he again began talking about marriage. I got a bit angry. I said, 'Yes Papa, I heard!'

Tell me your email address.

Yours, Motu

KEY

- m. masculine
f. feminine
pl. plural
m., f. used for both sexes
m./f. used in either gender

DICTIONARY ORDER

The order of the characters in the Devanagari script follows the chart given in the introduction. Vowels precede consonants; nasalized vowels precede unnasalized vowels; plain consonants precede conjunct consonants.

- अँगूठा *āgūthā* m. thumb
अँग्रेज़ *āgrez* m., f. English person
अँग्रेज़ी *āgrezī* f. English (language); and adj.
अंदर *andar* inside
अखबार *akhbār* m. newspaper
अखबारवाला *akhbārvālā* m. newspaper seller
अकेला *akelā* alone
अकेलापन *akelāpan* m. loneliness
अगर *agar* if
अगला *aglā* next

- अच्छा *acchā* good, nice
अध्यापक *adhyāpak* m. teacher
अध्यापिका *adhyāpikā* f. teacher
अपना *apnā* one's own (my, etc.)
अभी *abhī* right now; still
अमरीकन *amrikan* American
अरे *are* hey! Oh!
अलमारी *almārī* f. cupboard
अस्पताल *aspatāl* m. hospital
आँख *ākh* f. eye
आँगन *āgan* m. courtyard
आकाश *ākāś* m. sky
आगे *āge* ahead

- आज *āj* today; आजकल *ājkal* nowadays, these days; आज रात को *āj rāt ko* tonight; आज शाम को *āj sām ko* this evening
आठ *āth* eight
आदमी *ādmi* m. man
आदर *ādar* m. respect
आदरणीय *ādarāṇiy* respected (used for 'Dear...' in formal correspondence)
आधा *ādhā* m. half
आना *ānā* to come
आप *āp* you
आपका *āpkā* your, yours
आम *ām*¹ m. mango
आम *ām*² ordinary; आम तौर पर *ām taur par* usually
आराम *ārām* m. rest; आराम करना *ārām karnā* to rest; आराम से *ārām se* comfortably, easily
आवाज़ *āvāz* f. voice; sound
आशा *āsā* f. hope
आसान *āsān* easy
इंजन *injan* m. engine (train)
इंतज़ार *intazār* m. waiting, expecting; का इंतज़ार करना *kā intazār karnā* to wait for
इतना *itnā* so much, so
इतिहास *itihās* m. history
इधर *idhar* here, over here
इमारत *imārat* f. building
इलाज *ilāj* m. cure, treatment
इसका *iskā* his, her/hers, its
इसलिए *islie* so, because of this

- उँगली *ūglī* f. finger
उगना *ugnā* to grow (of plants)
उठना *uṭhnā* to get up, rise
उठाना *uṭhānā* to pick up, raise
उतरना, उतर जाना *utarnā, utar jānā* to get down, alight
उत्तर *uttar* north
उधर *udhar* there, over there
उम्र *umra, umar* f. age
उर्दू *urdū* f. Urdu
उल्टी *ulṭī* f. vomiting, sickness
उसका *uskā* his, her/hers, its
ऊपर *ūpar* up, upstairs
ऋण *ṛṇ* m. debt
एक *ek* one; a
ऐसा *aisā* such, of this kind
ओ *o* oh!
ओर *or* f. side, direction
और *aur* and; more
औरत *aurat* f. woman
कंधा *kandhā* m. shoulder
कई *kai* several
कटना *kaṭnā* to be cut
कपड़ा *kapṛā* m. cloth; garment
कब *kab* when?
कभी *kabhī* ever; कभी कभी *kabhī kabhī* sometimes; कभी नहीं *kabhī nahī* never
कम *kam* little, less
कमज़ोर *kamzor* weak
कमर *kamar* f. waist
कमरा *kamrā* m. room
कमी *kamī* f. lack, shortage
कमीज़ *qamiz* f. shirt
कम्प्यूटर *kampyūtar* m. computer

- करना *karnā* to do
 करवाना *karvānā* to get done (by someone else)
 कराची *karācī* f. Karachi
 कल *kal* yesterday; tomorrow
 कलम *qalam* m./f. pen
 कलाई *kalāi* f. wrist
 कहना *kahnā* to say
 कहाँ *kahā* where?
 कहानी *kahānī* f. story
 कहीं *kahī* anywhere, somewhere
 का-की-के *kā-kī-ke* [shows possession, like English apostrophe 's]
 काठमांडु *kāthmāṇḍu* m. Kathmandu
 कान *kān* m. ear
 काफ़ी *kāfi* ¹ f. coffee
 काफ़ी *kāfi* ² quite, very; enough
 काम *kām* m. work; job, task;
 काम करना *kām karnā* to work; to function
 काला *kālā* black
 कालेज *kālej* m. college
 कि *ki* that (conjunction); कि *ki* when, when suddenly; or
 कितना *kitnā* how much/many?
 किताब *kitāb* f. book
 किनारा *kinārā* m. bank, edge
 किलो *kilo* m. kilo, kilogram
 किराया *kirāyā* m. rent; fare
 किसी *kisī* oblique of कोई *koī*
 की ओर *kī or* towards
 की तरफ़ *kī taraf* towards
- की तरह *kī tarah* like
 कुछ *kuch* some; something; कुछ और *kuch aur* some more; कुछ नहीं *kuch nahī* nothing
 कुरता *kurtā* m. kurta, loose shirt
 कुहनी *kuhni* f. elbow
 कुत्ता *kuttā* m. dog
 कुरता *kurtā* m. kurta
 कुरसी *kursī* f. chair
 कुल मिलाकर *kul milākar* all together, in total
 कृपया *kṛpayā* please (formal)
 के अंदर *ke andar* inside
 के अलावा *ke alāvā* as well as
 के ऊपर *ke ūpar* above, on top of
 के चारों तरफ़ *ke cārō taraf* all around
 के द्वारा *ke dvārā* by (in formal passive sentences)
 के नज़दीक *ke nazdik* near
 के नीचे *ke nice* below, under
 के पास *ke pās* near; in the possession of
 के बाहर *ke bāhar* outside
 के यहाँ *ke yahā* at the place of
 के लिए *ke lie* for
 के साथ *ke sāth* with, in the company of
 के सामने *ke sāmne* opposite
 केला *kelā* m. banana
 कैसा *kaisā* how?
 को *ko* to; [also marks an individualized direct object: पानी को पियो *pānī ko piyo* 'Drink the water']

- कोई *koī* some, any, a; (with number) about; कोई दूसरा *koī dūsrā* some other, another; कोई नहीं *koī nahī* nobody
 कौन *kaun* who?
 कौनसा *kaunsā* which?
 क्या *kyā* what?; and question marker
 क्यों *kyō* why?
 क्योंकि *kyōki* because
 क्रिकेट *kriket* m. cricket
 खड़ा *kharā* standing
 खत *khat* m. letter (correspondence)
 खत्म *khatm* finished; खत्म करना *khatm karnā* to finish
 खयाल *khyāl*, m. opinion, thought, idea
 खराब *kharāb* bad; खराब हो जाना *kharāb ho jānā* to break down
 खरीदना *kharidnā* to buy
 खर्च *kharc* m. expenditure; खर्च करना *kharc karnā* to spend
 खाली *khālī* empty, free, vacant
 खाना *khānā* ¹ m. food
 खाना *khānā* ² to eat
 खिड़की *khirkī* f. window
 खिलौना *khilaunā* m. toy
 खुद *khud* oneself (myself, etc.)
 खुश *khus* pleased, happy
 खूब *khūb* a lot, freely
 खेल *khel* m. game
 खेलना *khelnā* to play (a game)
 खोलना *kholnā* to open
 गंगा *gangā* f. Ganges
- गंदा *gandā* dirty
 गरम *garam* hot, warm
 गरमी *garmi* f. heat; गरमियाँ *garmiyā* f.pl. summer
 गरीब *garīb* poor
 गर्दन *gardan* f. neck
 गली *gali* f. lane, narrow street
 गाँव *gāv* m. village
 गाड़ी *gārī* f. car; train, vehicle
 गाना *gānā* m. song, singing
 गाना *gānā* to sing
 गाल *gāl* f. cheek
 गिलास *gilās* m. tumbler
 गुजराती *gujarati*
 गुरुवार *gurutvār* m. Thursday
 गोलेचक्कर *golcakkār* m. roundabout
 गोली *golī* f. tablet, pill; bullet
 गोश्त *gošt* m. meat
 घंटा *ghaṇṭā* m. hour
 घर *ghar* m. house, home
 घास *ghās* f. grass
 घुटना *ghuṭnā* m. knee
 घुसना *ghusnā* to enter, sneak in
 घूमना *ghūmnā* to turn, revolve
 घोड़ा *ghorā* m. horse; घोड़े बेचकर सोना *ghore becker sonā* to sleep like a log
 चढ़ना *carhnā* to climb, get into vehicle
 चढ़ाव *carhāv* m. rise, incline
 चपाती *capātī* f. chapati
 चमकना *camaknā* to shine
 चम्मच *cammac* m. spoon

चलना *calnā* to move, blow,
flow; चलते जाना *calte jānā* to
keep going
चलाना *calānā* to drive
चश्मा *caśmā* m. glasses,
spectacles
चाकू *cāqū* m. knife, penknife
चाचा *cācā* m. uncle (father's
younger brother)
चाबी *cābī* f. key
चाय *cāy* f. tea
चार *cār* four; चारों ओर *cārō* or
all around
चालू करना *cālū karnā* to turn on
चावल *cāval* m. rice
चाहना *cāhnā* to want, wish
चाहिए *cāhie* (is) wanted,
needed
चिंता *cintā* f. anxiety
चिट्ठी *ciṭṭhī* f. letter, note
चीज़ *ciz* f. thing
चीनी *cīnī* f. sugar
चुकना *cuknā* to have already
done (with verb stem: वह जा
चुका है *vah jā cukā hai* 'He's
already gone')
चूहा *cūhā* m. mouse, rat
चेहरा *cehrā* m. face
चौड़ा *caurā* wide, broad
चौथा *cauthā* fourth
छठा *chathā* sixth
छत *chat* f. roof
छह *chah* six
छाती *chāṭī* f. chest
छुट्टी *chutti* f. holiday; free time

छोटा *chotā* small
जँभाई *jābhāī* f. yawn
जगह *jagah* f. place
जगाना *jagānā* to awaken
जब *jab* when
ज़माना *zamānā* m. period, time
ज़रूर *zarūr* of course
ज़रूरत *zarūrat* f. need; मुझको X
की ज़रूरत है *mujhko X ki*
zarūrat hai I need X
जलना *jalnā* to burn
जलवाना *jalvānā* to cause to burn
जलाना *jalānā* to light, burn
जल्दी *jaldī* quickly, early;
f. hurry
जवान *javān* young
जवाब *javāb* m. answer, reply;
जवाब देना *javāb denā* to reply
जहाँ *jahā* where
जाँघ *jāgh* f. thigh
जान *jān* f. life, soul
जानना *jānnā* to know
जाना *jānā* to go
ज़िंदगी *zindagī* f. life
ज़िंदा *zindā* (invariable -ā
ending) alive
जी *jī* word of respect used after
names etc. and as a short form
of जी हों *jī hā* 'yes'
जी नहीं *jī nahī* no
जी हों *jī hā* yes
जीतना *jītnā* to win, conquer
जीवन *jīvan* m. life
जुकाम *zūkām* m. head cold
ज़ोर से *zor se* with force, loudly

जूता *jūtā* m. shoe
जेब *jeb* f. pocket
जैसा ... वैसा *jaisā... vaisā* as [one
thing], so [another]
जो *jo* who, which
ज़्यादा *zyādā* more, much
झूठ *jhūth* m. a lie
टॉग *tāg* f. leg
टार्च *tārc* m. torch, flashlight
टिकट *tikaṭ* f./m. ticket; stamp
टिकिया *ṭikiyā* f. cake (e.g. of
soap)
टूटना *tūṭnā* to break
टेक्सी *ṭaiksī* f. taxi
टोस्ट *ṭoṣṭ* m. toast, piece of toast
ट्रेन *ṭren* f. train
ठंड *ṭhaṇḍ* f. cold; ठंड लगना
ṭhaṇḍ lagnā to feel cold
ठंडा *ṭhaṇḍā* cold
ठीक *ṭhīk* OK, all right; exactly
ठुड्डी *ṭhuddī* f. chin
डाक *ḍāk* f. post; डाक घर *ḍāk*
ghar m. post office; डाक की
टिकट *ḍāk kī tikaṭ* f. stamp
डाक्टर *ḍākṭar* m. doctor
डालना *ḍālṇā* to put, pour
डिब्बा *ḍibbā* m. box
ड्राइवर *ḍrāivār* m. driver
ढाबा *ḍhābā* m. roadside cafe
तंग *tang* narrow, confined; तंग
करना *tang karnā* to harass
तक *tak* up to, until, as far as
तकलीफ़ *taklif* f. suffering, pain,
discomfort, inconvenience,
trouble

तनख़्वाह *tankhvāh*, तनख़ाह
tankhāh f. pay, wages
तब *tab* then
तबला *tablā* m. tabla (drum)
तबियत *tabiyat* f. health,
disposition
तमिल *f. Tamil*
तस्वीर *tasvīr* f. picture
ताकि *tāki* so that, in order that
ताज महल *tāj mahal* m. Taj
Mahal
ताज़ा *tāzā* (-ā ending sometimes
treated as invariable) fresh
ताश *tāś* m. playing cards
तीन *tīn* three
तीसरा *tīsra* third
तुम *tum* you (familiar)
तुम्हारा *tumhārā* your, yours
तू *tū* you (intimate)
तैयार *ṭaiyār* ready, prepared;
तैयार करना *ṭaiyār karnā* to
prepare; तैयार हो जाना *ṭaiyār*
ho jānā to get ready
तैयारी *ṭaiyārī* f. preparation
तो *to* so, then; as for...
तोड़ना *ṭoṛnā* to break, smash
तोता *totā* m. parrot
तोहफ़ा *tohfā* m. gift, present
थकना *ṭhagnā* to get tired
थाना *ṭhānā* m. police station
थोड़ा *ṭhorā* (a) little; थोड़ी देर
ṭhoṛī der f. a little while
दक्षिण *dakṣiṇ* south
दफ़्तर *daṭṭar* m. office
दयालु *dayālu* kind, merciful

दरवाज़ा *darvāzā* m. door
 दर्ज़ी *darzī* m. tailor
 दर्द *dard* m. pain
 दवा *davā* f. medicine
 दवाख़ाना *davākhānā* m.
 pharmacy, chemist's shop
 दस *das* ten
 दस्त *dast* m. diarrhoea; दस्त आना
dast ānā to have diarrhoea
 दाँत *dānt* m. tooth
 दादा *dādā* m. grandfather
 (father's father)
 दादी *dādi* f. grandmother
 (father's mother)
 दाल *dāl* f. daal, lentil
 दाहिना *dāhinā* right (direction)
 दिखाना *dikhānā* to show
 दिन *din* m. day
 दिया *diyā* m. lamp
 दिल *dil* m. heart
 दिल्ली *dillī* f. Delhi
 दीवार, दीवाल *divār, divāl* f. wall
 दुकान *dukān* f. shop
 दुकानदार *dukāndār* m.
 shopkeeper
 दुखी *dukhī* sad
 दुर्घटना *durghatnā* f. accident
 दूध *dūdh* m. milk
 दूधवाला *dūdhvālā* m. milkman
 दूर *dūr* far, distant
 दूसरा *dūsarā* second; other
 देखना *dekhnā* to look, to see
 देना *denā* to give; to allow to,
 let (with oblique infinitive:
 hamko जाने दो *hamko jāne do*

'Let us go')
 देर *der* f. a while, length of
 time; delay; देर से *der se* late
 देरी *derī* f. delay
 देश *deś* m. country
 दो *do* two
 दोनों *donō* both, the two
 दोस्त *dost* m., f. friend
 दौड़ना *daurnā* to run
 धन्यवाद *dhanyavād* thank you
 धीरे धीरे *dhīre dhīre* slowly
 धुलना *dhulnā* to be washed
 धुलवाना *dhulvānā* to get washed
 धोना *dhonā* to wash
 धोबी *dhobī* m. washerman
 ध्यान *dhyān* m. attention; ध्यान से
dhyān se attentively; ध्यान
 रखना *dhyān rakhnā* to pay
 attention to, look after
 न *na* don't; isn't that so?
 नक्शा *naqsā* m. map, plan
 नदी *nadī* f. river
 नमस्कार *namaskār* hello,
 goodbye
 नमस्ते *namaste* hello, goodbye
 नया *nayā* (f. नई *naī*; m. pl. नए
nae) new
 नर्स *nars* m., f. nurse
 नल *nal* m. tap, pipe
 नहाना *nahānā* to bathe
 नहीं *nahī* not, no
 नाक *nāk* f. nose
 नाम *nām* m. name
 नाराज़ *nārāz* angry, displeased

नाव *nāv* f. boat
 नाश्ता *nāstā* m. breakfast,
 snack; नाश्ता करना *nāstā
 karnā* to have breakfast
 निकलना *nikalnā* to emerge,
 come/go out नीचे *nīce* down,
 downstairs
 नींद *nīd* f. sleep; नींद आना *nīd
 ānā* (sleep to come) to get to
 sleep
 नीला *nīlā* blue
 नेता *netā* m. leader, politician
 नेपाल *nepāl* m. Nepal
 नौ *nau* nine
 नौकर *naukar* m. servant
 नौकरी *naukarī* f. job,
 employment
 पंखा *pankhā* m. fan
 पकड़ना *pakarnā* to catch
 पचास *pacās* fifty
 पड़ना *paṛnā* to fall; to have to
 (with preceding infinitive:
 मुझे जाना पड़ेगा *mujhe jānā
 paṛegā* 'I'll have to go')
 पड़ा *paṛā* lying
 पड़ोसी *paṛosī* m., पड़ोसिन
paṛosin f. neighbour
 पढ़ना *paṛhnā* to read, to study
 पढ़ाई *paṛhāī* f. studies,
 studying
 पढ़ाना *paṛhānā* to teach
 पतला *patlā* thin
 पता *patā* m. address;
 whereabouts
 पति *pati* m. husband
 पत्नी *patnī* f. wife

पत्र *patr* m. letter
 (correspondence)
 पर *par*¹ but
 पर *par*² on; at ('at home' etc.)
 परसों *parsō* two days away (the
 day after tomorrow; the day
 before yesterday)
 परिवार *parivār* m. family
 पश्चिम *paścim* west
 पसंद *pasand* pleasing (यह मुझको
 पसंद है *yah mujhko pasand hai*
 I like this); पसंद आना *pasand
 ānā* to appeal to, to be liked
 पहला *pahlā* first
 पहाड़ *pahār* m. hill
 पहुँचना *pahūcnā* to reach, arrive
 पाँच *pāc* five; पाँचवाँ *pācvā* fifth
 पाँव *pāv* m. foot, leg
 पाकिस्तान *pākistān* m. Pakistan
 पागल *pāgal* mad, crazy
 पाना *pānā* to find, obtain; to be
 able, to manage to (with
 verb stem: मैं नहीं जा पाया *mai
 nahī jā pāyā* 'I didn't manage
 to go')
 पानी *pānī* m. water
 पापा *pāpā* m. papa, father
 पार *pār* across; पार करना *pār
 karnā* to cross; उस पार *us pār*
 on the other side (of, के *ke*)
 पार्टी *pāṛṭī* f. party
 पास में *pās mē* nearby
 पिछला *pichlā* previous, last
 पिता *pitā* m. father
 पीटना *piṭnā* to beat, thrash

पीना *pinā* to drink; to smoke
 पीला *pilā* yellow
 पुकारना *pukārnā* to call out
 पुराना *purānā* old (for inanimates, not for people)
 पुल *pul* m. bridge
 पुलिस *pulis* f. police; पुलिसवाला *pulisvālā* m. policeman
 पुस्तकालय *pustakālay* m. library
 पूछना *pūchnā* to ask
 पूरा *pūrā* full, complete
 पूर्व *pūrv* east
 पेट *peṭ* m. stomach
 पेड़ *peṛ* m. tree
 पैदल *paidal* on foot
 पैर *pair* m. foot; पैर की उँगली *pair kī ūglī* f. toe
 पैसा *paisā* m. money
 प्यारा *pyārā* dear, sweet, cute
 प्यास *pyās* f. thirst; प्यास लगना *pyās lagnā* (thirst to strike) to feel thirsty
 प्रदेश *pradeś* m. state, region
 प्रधान मंत्री *pradhān mantrī* m./f. prime minister
 प्रिय *priy* dear; 'Dear...' (in informal letter writing)
 प्रेस करना *pres karnā* to iron
 प्लेट *plet* f. plate
 फल *phal* m. fruit
 फलवाला *phalvālā* m. fruitseller
 फर्श *fars* m. floor
 फिर, फिर से *phir, phir se* again
 फ़िल्म *film* f. film
 फीस *fīs* f. fee, fees

फूल *phūl* m. flower
 फ़ोन *fon* m. phone; फ़ोन करना *fon karnā* to phone
 बंद *band* closed, shut
 बकवास *bakvās* f. nonsense, idle chatter
 बगीचा *bagīcā* m. garden
 बचपन *bacpan* m. childhood
 बच्चा *baccā* m. child
 बजना *bajnā* to play, resound, chime
 बजाना *bajānā* to play (music)
 बजे *baje* o'clock
 बड़ा *barā* big
 बढ़िया *barhiyā* (invariable -ā ending) excellent, really good, fine
 बटुआ *baṭuā* m. purse, wallet
 बताना *batānā* to tell
 बत्ती *battī* f. light, lamp
 बनवाना *banvānā* to cause to be made
 बनाना *banānā* to make
 बरतन *bartan* m. dish, utensil
 बस *bas* f. bus
 बहिन *bahin* f. sister
 बहुत *bahut* very; बहुत ज़्यादा *bahut zyādā* very great, too much
 बाँह *bāh* f. arm, upper arm
 बाज़ार *bāzār* m. market, bazaar
 बात *bāt* f. thing said, idea; बात करना *bāt karnā* to talk
 बाप *bāp* m. dad; बाप रे बाप ! *bāp re bāp!* Oh God!

बायाँ *bāyā* left (direction)
 बार *bār* f. time, occasion; इस बार *is bār* this time; कितनी बार *kitnī bār* how many times?; कई बार *kāi bār* several times
 बारिश *bāris* f. rain; बारिश होना *bāris honā* to rain
 बाल *bāl* m. hair
 बाहर *bāhar* outside
 बिजली *bijlī* f. electricity
 बिल्कुल *billkul* quite, completely
 बिल्ली *billī* f. cat
 बिस्कुट *biskuṭ* m. biscuit
 बीमार *bīmār* ill, sick
 बीयर *bīyar* f. beer
 बुखार *bukhār* m. fever
 बुधवार *budhvar* m. Wednesday
 बुरा *burā* bad
 बुलवाना *bulvānā* to cause to be called
 बुलाना *bulānā* to call, invite, summon
 बुढ़ा *būṛhā* elderly
 बेचना *becnā* to sell
 बेटा *beṭā* m. son
 बेटी *beṭī* f. daughter
 बेहतर *behtar* better
 बैठना *baiṭhnā* to sit
 बैठा *baiṭhā* seated, sitting
 बोतल *botal* f. bottle
 बोलना *bolnā* to speak
 भयंकर *bhayankar* terrible
 भरना *bharnā* to be filled
 भरोसा *bharosā* m. trust, reliance

भाई *bhāi* m. brother
 भाड़ में जाए *bhār mē jāe* '(he/she) can go to hell' (भाड़ *bhār* m. grain-parching oven)
 भारत *bhārat* m. India
 भारी *bhārī* heavy
 भाषा *bhāṣā* f. language
 भिजवाना *bhijvānā* to have sent, to cause to be sent
 भी *bhī* also; even
 भूख *bhūkh* f. hunger; भूख लगना *bhūkh lagnā* (hunger to strike) to feel hungry
 भेजना *bhejnā* to send
 मंगलवार *maṅgalvār* f. Tuesday
 मंदिर *mandir* m. temple
 मकान *makān* m. house
 मज़ा *mazā* m. enjoyment, fun; मज़े करना *maze karnā* to enjoy oneself, have fun
 मत *mat* don't
 मतलब *matlab* m. meaning
 मदद *madad* f. help; किसी की मदद करना *kisī kī madad karnā* to help someone
 मराठी *marāṭhī* f. Marathi
 मरीज़ *mariz* m. patient
 महँगा *mahāṅgā* expensive
 महसूस करना *mahsūs karnā* to feel; महसूस होना *mahsūs honā* to be felt, experienced
 महिला *mahilā* f. lady
 महीना *mahinā* m. month
 माँ *mā* f. mother; माँ-बाप *mā-bāp* m. pl. parents
 माँगना *māṅgnā* to ask for,

demand
 माँजना *mājnā* to scour, clean, cleanse
 माता *mātā* f. mother
 माता-पिता *mātā-pitā* m.pl. parents
 माथा *māthā* m. forehead
 माफ़ी *māfi* f. forgiveness; माफ़ी माँगना *māfi māgnā* to apologize
 मामूली *māmūlī* ordinary
 मारना *mārnā* to hit, beat, strike
 माल *māl* m. goods, stuff
 मालूम *mālūm* (is) known; मालूम नहीं *mālūm nahī* [I] don't know
 मार्ग *mārg* m. road, street (used in street names)
 मिठाई *mīthāī* f. sweet, sweetmeat
 मिठास *mīthās* f. sweetness
 मिलना *milnā* to meet, to be available
 मीठा *mīthā* sweet
 मुंबई *mumbai* f. Mumbai, Bombay
 मुँह *mūh* m. mouth; face
 मुड़ना *murnā* to turn
 मुफ्त (का) *muft (kā)* free; मुफ्त में *muft mē* for nothing, free
 मुश्किल *muškil* difficult; मुश्किल से *muškil se* with difficulty, hardly
 मुस्कराना *muskarānā* to smile
 में *mē* in
 मेज़ *mez* f. table

मेमसाहब *memsāhab* f. memsahib
 मेरा *merā* my, mine
 मेहनत *mehnat* f. hard work; मेहनती *mehntī* hard-working
 मैं *mai* I
 मैला *mailā* dirty
 मोटा *moṭā* fat
 मौसम *mausam* m. weather
 यह *yah* he, she, it, this
 यहाँ *yahā* here
 यहीं *yahī* right here
 या *yā* or
 यात्री *yātrī* m. traveller, passenger
 याद *yād* f. memory
 यानी *yānī* in other words, that is to say
 ये *ye* they, these
 रखना *rakhnā* to put, place, keep
 रविवार *ravivār* m. Sunday
 रसोई *rasoī* f. kitchen
 रहना *rahnā* to live, to stay
 राजा *rājā* m. king, raja
 रात *rāt* f. night; रात का खाना *rāt kā khānā* m. dinner
 रास्ता *rāstā* m. road
 रिक्शा *riksā* m. rickshaw
 रिक्शेवाला *riksēvālā* m. rickshaw driver
 रिश्तेदार *riṣṭedār* m. relation, relative
 रुपया *rupayā* m. rupee
 रेडियो *reḍiyo* m. radio
 रोज़ *roz* every day

रोना *ronā* to cry, weep
 लंबा *lambā* tall
 लगना *lagnā* time to be taken; घर जाने में १० मिनट लगते हैं / एक घंटा लगता है *ghar jāne mē 10 minaṭ lagte hāi / ek ghaṇṭā lagtā hāi* It takes 10 minutes / one hour to get home; लगना *lagnā* to seem; to be felt (of hunger, thirst etc.); to have an effect; to begin (following an oblique infinitive)
 लन्दन *landan* m. London
 लड़का *larkā* m. boy
 लड़की *larkī* f. girl
 लाइट *laiṭ* f. light, electric power
 लाना *lānā* to bring
 लाल *lāl* red
 लिखना *likhnā* to write
 लेकिन *lekin* but
 लेखक *lekhak* m. writer
 लेटना *leṭnā* to lie down
 लेटा *leṭā* lying, lying down
 लेना *lenā* to take
 लोग *log* m. pl. people
 लौटना *lauṭnā* to return
 व *va* and
 वगैरह *vagairah* etc., and so on
 वज़न *vazan* m. weight
 वह *vah* he, she, it, that
 वहाँ *vahā* there
 वापस *vāpas* 'back' in वापस आना/जाना/देना *vāpas ānā/jānā/denā* to come/go/give back

वाराणसी *vārāṇasī* f. Varanasi, Banaras
 विदेश *videś* abroad
 विदेशी *videśī* m. foreigner; adj. foreign
 विद्यार्थी *vidyārthī* m. student
 वे *ve* they, those
 शक्ति *śakti* f. power
 शनिवार *śanivār* m. Saturday
 शब्द *śabd* m. word
 शब्दकोश *śabdkoś* m. dictionary
 शराब *śarāb* f. alcoholic drink, liquor
 शरीर *śarīr* m. body
 शहर *śahar* m. town, city
 शांति *śānti* f. peace
 शादी *śādī* f. wedding, marriage; शादी करना *śādī karnā* to marry
 शादी-शुदा *śādī-śudā* (-ā ending invariable) married
 शानदार *śāndār* splendid, magnificent
 शाबाश *śābāś* bravo
 शाम *śām* f. evening
 शायद *śāyad* maybe, perhaps
 शिकायत *śikāyat* f. complaint; शिकायत करना *śikāyat karnā* to complain
 शुक्रवार *śukravār* m. Friday
 शुक्रिया *śukriyā* thank you
 शुद्ध *śuddh* pure
 शुभ *śubh* good, auspicious
 शुभकामना *śubhkāmnā* f. good wish

- शोला *śolā* m. flame
 शौक *śauq* m. liking, hobby, interest
 श्री *śrī* Mr; श्रीमती *śrīmatī* Mrs
 संगीत *saṅgīt* m. music
 संगीतकार *saṅgītkār* m. musician
 संतरा *santarā* m. orange
 सकना *saknā* to be able (with verb stem: तुम जा सकते हो *tum jā sakte ho* 'You can go')
 सच *sac* m. truth; adj. true
 सड़क *ṣarak* f. road, street
 सपना *sapnā* m. dream; सपना देखना *sapnā dekhnā* to dream, to have a dream
 सब *sab* all; सब कुछ *sab kuch* everything; सबसे *sabse* of all (in superlatives, e.g. सबसे अच्छा *sabse acchā* best, best of all)
 सब्जी *sabzī* f. vegetable(s); सब्जी मंडी *sabzī maṅḍī* f. vegetable market; सब्जीवाला *sabzīvālā* m. vegetable seller
 समझना *samajhnā* to understand
 समय *samay* m. time
 समोसा *samosā* m. samosa
 सरकार *sarkār* f. government
 सलाह *salāh* f. advice
 सवारी *savārī* f. passenger, rider
 सस्ता *sastā* cheap
 सहायता *sahāyātā* f. assistance
 सहित *sahit* with (formal)
 सही *sahī* correct, true, exact
 सहेली *sahelī* f. female's female friend
- सा *-sā* '-ish' (suffix that qualifies an adjective, as in बड़ा-सा *barā-sā* 'biggish')
- साइकिल *sāikil* f. bicycle
 साड़ी *sāṛī* f. sari
 सात *sāt* seven
 सादर *sādar* respectful
 साफ़ *sāf* clean, clear; साफ़ करना *sāf karnā* to clean
 साबुन *sābun* m. soap
 सामने *sāmne* opposite
 सामान *sāmān* m. goods, furniture, luggage
 साया *sāyā* m. shade, shadow
 साल *sāl* m. year
 साहब *sāhab* m. sahib
 सिखवाना *sikhvānā* to cause to be taught
 सिखाना *sikhānā* to teach
 सिग्रेट *sigreṭ* m. cigarette
 सितार *sitār* m. sitar
 सिनेमा *sinemā* m. cinema
 सिर *sir* m. head
 सिर्फ *sirf* only
 सिलवाना *silvānā* to have sewn
 सीना *sīnā* to sew
 सुखी *sukhī* happy
 सीखना *sīkhnā* to learn
 सुंदर *sundar* beautiful, handsome
 सुनना *sunnā* to hear, to listen
 सुनसान *sunsān* desolate, empty
 सुबह *subah* f. morning
 से *se* from
 सैर *sair* f. trip

- सोचना *socnā* to think
 सोना *sonā* to sleep
 सोमवार *somvār* m. Monday
 सौ *sau* m. hundred
 स्कूल *skūl* m. school
 हँसना *hāsnā* to laugh
 हफ़्ता *haftā* m. week
 हम *ham* we, us
 हमारा *hamārā* our, ours
 हमेशा *hamesā* always
 हर *har* every, each
 हवा *havā* f. air, breeze
 हाँ *hā* yes
 हाथ *hāth* m. hand
 हाथी *hāthī* m. elephant
 हाल *hāl* m. condition, state (in क्या हाल है ? *kyā hāl hai?* 'How's things? How are you?')

- हिन्दी *hindī* f. Hindi
 हिन्दुस्तानी *hindustānī* Indian
 हिलाना *hilānā* to move, shake
 ही *hī* only (emphatic)
 हीरा *hīrā* m. diamond
 हुआ *huā* [past tense of होना *honā*] 'happened'
 हूँ *hū* am
 हैं *hai* are
 है *hai* is
 हो *ho* are (with तुम *tum*)
 होटल *hoṭal* m. hotel, restaurant, cafe
 होना *honā* to be; *ho jānā* to become
 होशियार *hośiyār* clever

KEY

- adj. adjective (only stated to resolve ambiguities)
 f. feminine
 m. masculine
 m., f. used for both sexes
 m./f. used in either gender
 N regularly uses the ने *ne* construction in perfective tenses
 n sometimes uses the ने *ne* construction in perfective tenses
 p. plural

- a एक *ek*, कोई *koī*
able, to be सकना *saknā* (after verb stem — मैं जा सकता हूँ *mai jā saktā hū* I can go)
about (approx.) करीब *qarīb*, लगभग *lagbhag*; (with number) कोई *koī* (कोई दस लोग *koī das log* some ten people); (concerning) के बारे में *ke bāre mē*
above ऊपर *ūpar*
abroad विदेश *videś*
accept, to स्वीकार करना *svikār karnā*^N; मानना *mānnā*^N
accident हादसा *hādsā* m., दुर्घटना *durghaṭnā* f.
actually वैसे *vaise*
add, to जोड़ना *joṛnā*^N
address पता *patā* m.
advice सलाह *salāh* f.
aeroplane हवाई जहाज़ *havāī jahāz* m.
affection प्यार *pyār* m.
after के बाद *ke bād*
again फिर *phir*, फिर से *phir se*
age (of person) उम्र f. *umar*, *umar*
Agra आगरा *āgrā* m.

- ahead (of)** (के) आगे *(ke) āge*
air हवा *havā* f.
airmail हवाई डाक *havāī dāk* f.
alcoholic drink शराब *śarāb* f.
all सब *sab*, सभी *sabhi*; whole सारा *sārā*
allow to, to oblique inf. + देना *denā*^N (मुझे जाने दो *mujhe jāne do* 'let me go')
alone अकेला *akelā*; (adv.) अकेले *akele*
also भी *bhī*
although हालाँकि *hālāki*
always हमेशा *hamesā*
America अमरीका *amrikā* m.; American अमरीकन *amrikan*
among के बीच *ke bic*; among themselves आपस में *āpas mē*
and और *aur*
anger गुस्सा *gussā* m.
angry नाराज़ *nārāz*
answer जवाब *javāb* m.; to answer जवाब देना *javāb denā*^N
anxiety परेशानी *pareśānī* f.; चिंता *cintā* f.
anyone (at all) कोई (भी) *koī (bhī)*
anywhere (at all) कहीं (भी) *kahī (bhī)*
apart from के सिवा/ सिवाय *ke sivā/sivāy*; को छोड़कर *ko chōṛkar*
apologize (to), to (से) माफ़ी माँगना *(se) māfi māgnā*^N
appear, to दिखना *dikhnā*, दिखाई

- देना *dikhāi denā*; to seem लगना *lagnā*
area, district इलाका *ilāqā* m.
arm बाँह *bāh* f.
around, in vicinity of के आस-पास *ke ās-pās*
arrange, to का इंतज़ाम करना *kā intazām karnā*^N
arrangement इंतज़ाम *intazām* m.
arrive, to पहुँचना *pahūcnā*
as if, as though जैसे *jaise*, मानों *mānō*
as soon as जैसे ही *jaise hī*
ask, to पूछना *pūchnā*^N; ask Ram राम से पूछो *Rām se pūcho*
at को *ko*; पर *par*
at least कम से कम *kam se kam*
attention ध्यान *dhyān* m.; to pay attention (to) (पर) ध्यान देना *(par) dhyān denā*^N
attentively ध्यान से *dhyān se*
August अगस्त *agast* m.
available, to be मिलना *milnā*
back (in sense 'return') वापस *vāpas*
back (part of body) पीठ *pīth* f.
bad खराब *khārāb*, बुरा *burā*
bag, cloth bag थैला *thailā* m.
Banaras बनारस *banāras* m., वाराणसी *vārāṇasī* f.
bathe, to नहाना *nahānā*
be, to होना *honā*; बनना *bannā*
beat, to मारना *mārnā*^N

beautiful सुन्दर *sundar*
 because क्योंकि *kyōki*
 because of की वजह से *kī vajah se*, के कारण *ke kāraṇ*
 become, to बनना *bannā*
 before (के/से) पहले (*ke/se*) *pahle*
 begin to, to oblique inf. + लगना *lagnā* (पानी पड़ने लगा *pānī paṛne lagā* it began to rain); शुरू करना *śurū karnā* ^N (हम काम शुरू करें *ham kām śurū karē* let's begin work)
 beginning शुरू *śurū* m.
 behind (के) पीछे (*ke*) *pīche*
 bell घंटी *ghaṅṭī* f.
 below, beneath (के) नीचे (*ke*) *nīche*
 between के बीच *ke bīc*;
 between themselves आपस में *āpas mē*
 bicycle साइकिल *sāikil* f.
 big बड़ा *barā*
 bird चिड़िया *ciriyā* f.
 birth जन्म *janm* m.
 birthday जन्मदिन *janmdīn* m.
 blanket कंबल *kambal* m.
 boil, to उबलना *ubalnā*; उबालना *ubālnā* ^N
 book किताब *kitāb* f.; पुस्तक *pustak* f.
 bored, to be ऊबना *ūbnā*
 born, to be पैदा होना *paidā honā* (पैदा *paidā* inv.); का जन्म होना *kā janm honā*

both दोनों *donō*
 bottle बोतल *botal* f.
 boy लड़का *laṛkā* m.
 bread रोटी *roṭī* f.; (loaf) डबल रोटी *ḍabal roṭī* f.
 break, be broken, to टूटना *tūṭnā*
 break, to तोड़ना *toṛnā* ^N
 breakfast नाश्ता *nāśtā* m.
 bridge पुल *pul* m.
 bring, to लाना *lānā*, ले आना *le ānā*
 brother भाई *bhāī* m.
 brother-in-law (husband's younger bro.) देवर *devar* m.; (wife's bro.) साला *sālā* m.
 building इमारत *imārat* f.
 bullet गोली *golī* f.
 burn, to जलना *jalnā*; जलाना *jalānā* ^N
 bus बस *bas* f.
 but लेकिन *lekin*, पर *par*, मगर *magar*
 butter मक्खन *makkhan* m.
 buy, to खरीदना *kharīdnā* ^N
 by से *se*; by means of (के) द्वारा (*ke*) *dvārā*
 call (invite), to बुलाना *bulānā* ^N
 camera कैमरा *kaimrā* m.
 can see 'able, to be'
 capital city राजधानी *rājdhānī* f.
 car गाड़ी *gārī* f., कार *kār* f.
 care (about), to (की) परवाह करना (*kī*) *parvāh karnā* ^N

cat बिल्ली *billī* f.
 catch, to पकड़ना *pakarnā* ^N; (of fire or illness) लगना *lagnā*
 cause कारण *kāraṇ* m.
 certainly जरूर *zarūr*
 chair कुर्सी *kursī* f.
 chance, opportunity मौका *mauqā* m.
 change, to बदलना *badalnā* ^N
 chapatti चपाती *capāṭī* f.
 cheap सस्ता *sastā*
 child बच्चा *baccā* m.
 childhood बचपन *bacpan* m.
 choose, to चुनना *cunnā* ^N
 cigarette सिग्रेट *sigreṭ* f.
 cinema सिनेमा *sinemā* m.
 city शहर *śahar* m.
 class क्लास *klās* m./f.
 clean साफ़ *sāf*; to clean साफ़ करना *sāf karnā* ^N
 cleaning सफ़ाई *safāī* f.
 clear साफ़ *sāf*; evident ज़ाहिर *zahir*
 clever (intelligent) होशियार *hośiyār*, (cunning) चतुर *catur*
 closed बंद *band*
 close, to बंद करना *band karnā* ^N
 cloth कपड़ा *kapṛā* m.
 clothing, garment कपड़ा *kapṛā* m.
 cloud बादल *bādal* m.
 coffee काफी *kāfī* f.
 cold ठंड *ṭhaṇḍ* f.; (adj.) ठंडा *ṭhaṇḍā*; (nose cold) जुकाम *zūkām* m.

come, to आना *ānā*
 come out, to निकलना *nikalnā*
 comfort आराम *ārām* m.;
 comfortably आराम से *ārām se*
 companion साथी *sāthī* m.
 complain, to शिकायत करना *śikāyat karnā* ^N; to complain to Sita about Ram, सीता से राम की शिकायत करना *Sitā se Rām kī śikāyat karnā* ^N
 complaint शिकायत *śikāyat* f.
 computer कम्प्यूटर *kampyūṭar* m.
 concern चिंता *cintā* f.
 condition, state हाल *hāl* m.,
 हालत *hālat* f.
 congratulation बधाई *badhāī* f.
 conversation बातचीत *bātcīt* f.
 copy (of book etc.) प्रति *prati* f.
 corner कोना *konā* m.
 correct सही *sahī*
 cough, to खाँसी आना *khāśī ānā*
 country देश *deś* m.
 cow गाय *gāy* f.
 cross (road etc.), to पार करना *pār karnā* ^N
 crowd भीड़ *bhīṛ* f.
 cup प्याला *pyālā* m.
 cupboard अलमारी *almārī* f.
 cure इलाज *ilāj* m.
 curtain परदा *pardā* m.
 cut, to be कटना *kaṭnā*
 cut, to काटना *kāṭnā* ^N
 daal, lentils दाल *dāl* f.
 daily (adverb) रोज़ *roz*

- dance** नृत्य *nṛtya* m., नाच *nāc* m.; to dance नाचना *nācnā*
- dark** अँधेरा *ādhērā*; (of colour) गहरा *gahrā*; darkness अँधेरा *ādhērā* m.
- date** तारीख *tārīkh* f.
- daughter** बेटी *betī* f.
- daughter-in-law** बहू *bahū* f.
- day** दिन *din* m.; all day दिन भर *din bhar*; day before yesterday / after tomorrow परसों *parsō*
- dear** प्रिय *priy*
- death** मौत *maut* f., मृत्यु *mṛtyu* f.
- degree** (academic) डिग्री *ḍigrī* f.
- delay** देर f.
- Delhi** दिल्ली *dillī* f.
- deliberately** जान-बूझकर *jān-būjhkar*
- description** वर्णन *varṇan* m.; to describe का वर्णन करना *kā varṇan karnā* N
- despair** निराशा *nirāśā* f.
- Devanagari** (the Hindi script) देवनागरी *devnāgarī* f.
- dhobi**, washerman धोबी *dhobī* m.
- dialect** बोली *bolī* f.
- dictionary** शब्दकोश *śabdkoś* m.
- die, to** मरना *marnā*
- difference** फर्क *farq* m. it makes no difference कोई फर्क नहीं पड़ता *koī farq nahī partā*
- different** भिन्न *bhinn*; (separate) अलग *alag*
- difficult** मुश्किल *muškil*
- difficulty** मुश्किल *muškil* f.
- direction** तरफ *taraf* f., ओर *or* f.
- dirty** गंदा *gandā*, मैला *mailā*
- disappointment** निराशा *nirāśā* f.; disappointed निराश *nirāś*
- distant** दूर *dūr*
- do, to** करना *karnā* N
- doctor** डाक्टर *ḍāktar* m.
- dog** कुत्ता *kuttā* m.
- don't** (in commands) न *na*, मत *mat*
- door** दरवाज़ा *darvāzā* m.
- doubt** शंका *śankā* f.
- down, downstairs** नीचे *nīce*
- draw, to** खींचना *khīcnā* N
- drawer** दराज़ *darāz* f.
- dream** सपना *sapnā* m.; to dream सपना देखना *sapnā dekhnā* N
- drink, to** पीना *pīnā* N
- drive, to** चलाना *calānā* N
- driver** ड्राइवर *drāivar* m.
- each** हर *har*, हरेक *harek*
- ear** कान *kān* m.
- early** जल्दी *jaldī*
- earn, to** कमाना *kamānā* N
- easily** आसानी से *āsānī se*, आराम से *ārām se*
- easy** आसान *āsān*; simple सरल *saral*
- eat, to** खाना *khānā* N
- edge** किनारा *kinārā* m.
- either... or** या तो... या *yā to... yā*

- electricity** बिजली *bijlī* f.
- e-mail** ई-मेल *i-mel* f.
- emerge, to** निकलना *nikalnā*
- employment** नौकरी *naukrī* f.
- end** अंत *ant* m.; in the end, after all आखिर (में) *ākhir (mē)*
- English person** अँग्रेज़ *āgrez* m., f.
- enough! that's all!** बस *bas*
- envelope** लिफाफा *lifāfā* m.
- escape, to** बचना *bacnā* etc. वागैरह *vagairah*, इत्यादि *ityādi*
- evening** शाम *śām* f.
- everything** सब *sab*, सब कुछ *sab kuch*
- exactly, precisely** ठीक *ṭhik*
- examination** परीक्षा *parikṣā* f.; to take (sit) an exam परीक्षा देना *parikṣā denā* N; to examine की परीक्षा लेना *kī parikṣā lenā* N
- except for** (को) छोड़कर *ko chorakar*, के सिवाय *ke sivāy*
- expensive** महँगा *mahāgā*
- experience** अनुभव *anubhav* m.
- explain, to** समझाना *samjhānā* N
- extremely** बहुत ही *bahut hī*
- face** मुँह *mūh* m.; चेहरा *cehrā* m.
- facing, opposite** (के) सामने *(ke) sāmne*
- fall, to** गिरना *girnā*
- family** परिवार *parivār* m.
- famous** मशहूर *mashūr*, प्रसिद्ध *prasiddh*
- fan** पंखा *pankhā* m.
- far away** दूर *dūr*
- fare** (taxi etc.) किराया *kirāyā* m.
- fat** मोटा *moṭā*
- father** पिता *pitā* m. (inv.), बाप *bāp* m.
- fault, guilt** कसूर *kasūr* m.
- fear** डर *ḍar* m.; to fear (से) डरना *(se) ḍarnā*
- feel, to** महसूस करना *mahsūs karnā* N; to be felt महसूस होना *mahsūs honā*
- fetch, to** लाना *lānā*, ले आना *le ānā*
- fever** बुखार *bukhār* m.
- fight, to** (से) लड़ना *(se) laṛnā* N
- film** फ़िल्म *film* f.
- find, to** पाना *pānā* N
- finger** उँगली *ūgli* f.
- finish, to** खत्म करना *khاتم karnā* N
- finished** खत्म *khاتم*
- fire** आग *āg* f.
- first** पहला *pahlā*; (adverb) पहले *pahle*
- fix, to** ठीक करना *ṭhik karnā* N
- floor** फर्श *farś* m./f.
- flower** फूल *phūl* m.
- fly** (insect) मक्खी *makkhī* f.
- fly, to** उड़ना *uṛnā*
- follow, to** का पीछा करना *kā pīchā karnā* N
- food** खाना *khānā* m.
- for** के लिए *ke lie*

forbidden मना *manā* (inv.)
force, strength ज़ोर *zor* m.
foreign country विदेश *videś* m.
foreigner विदेशी *videśī* m.
forget, to भूलना *bhūlnā*, भूल जाना *bhūl jānā*
forgive, to माफ़ करना *māf karnā*
forgiveness माफ़ी *māfi* f.
fork (utensil) काँटा *kāṭā* m.
free (vacant) ख़ाली *khālī*;
 (of cost) मुफ़्त *muftī*;
 free time फ़ुरसत *fursat* f.
fresh ताज़ा *tāzā*
friend दोस्त *dost* m., f., मित्र *mitr* m., f.; girl's girlfriend सहेली *sahelī* f.
from से *se*
fruit फल *phal* m.
full पूरा *pūrā*, भरा *bharā*
fun मज़ा *mazā* m.
furniture सामान *sāmān* m.
future भविष्य *bhaviṣya* m.
Ganges गंगा *gangā* f.
garden बगीचा *bagīcā* m.
get up, to उठना *uṭhnā*
ghost भूत *bhūt* m.
gift तोहफ़ा *tohfā* m., भेंट *bhēt* f.
girl लड़की *laṛkī* f.
give, to देना *denā* ^N; to give up छोड़ना *choṛnā* ^N
glasses, specs चश्मा *caśmā* m.
go, to जाना *jānā*

gold सोना *sonā* m.
good अच्छा *acchā*; decent भला *bhalā*
goodbye नमस्ते *namaste*, नमस्कार *namaskār*
government सरकार *sarkār* f.; governmental सरकारी *sarkārī*
grandfather (father's father) दादा *dādā* m. (invariable -ā ending.); (mother's father) नाना *nānā* m. (invariable -ā ending)
grandmother (father's mother) दादी *dādī* f.; (mother's mother) नानी *nānī* m.
grass घास *ghās* f.
guest मेहमान *mehmān* m.
guru गुरु *guru* m.
half आधा *ādhā* adj. & m.
hand हाथ *hāth* m.
happiness खुशी *khūśī* f.
happy खुश *khūś*
harass, to तंग करना *tang karnā* ^N
hard, difficult मुश्किल *muškil*
hard-working मेहनती *mehntī*
harm नुक़सान *nuqsān* m.
hate नफ़रत *nafrat* f.; to hate (से) नफ़रत करना *(se) nafrat karnā* ^N
he वह *vah*
head सिर *sir* m.
health तबियत *tabiyat* f.
hear, to सुनना *sunnā* ^N

heart दिल *dil* m.
heat गरमी *garmī* f.
heaven स्वर्ग *svarg* m.
heavy भारी *bhāri*
height लंबाई *lambāi* f.
hello नमस्ते *namaste*, नमस्कार *namaskār*, (on phone) हलो *halo*
help मदद *madad* f.; to help him उसकी मदद करना *uski madad karnā* ^N
here यहाँ *yahā*, इधर *idhar*
high ऊँचा *ūcā*
hill पहाड़ *pahār* m.
Hindi हिन्दी *hindī* f.
Hindu हिन्दू *hindū*
history इतिहास *itihās* m.
hit, to मारना *mārnā* ^N
holiday छुट्टी *chuttī* f.
home घर *ghar* m.; at home घर पर *ghar par*
hope आशा *āśā* f., उम्मीद *ummīd* f.
hospital अस्पताल *aspatāl* m.
hot गरम *garam*
hotel होटल *hoṭal* m.
hour घंटा *ghaṇṭā* m.
house मकान *makān* m.
how much/many कितना *kitnā*;
 how much does that come to? कितना हुआ? *kitnā huā?*
hunger भूख *bhūkh* f.; to feel hungry भूख लगना *bhūkh lagnā*

hungry भूखा *bhūkhā*
husband पति *pati* m.
 I मैं *mai*
ice बर्फ़ *barff*.
idea विचार *vicār* m., ख़याल *khyaal* m.
if अगर *agar*
ill बीमार *bimār*
immediately तुरंत *turant*
important ज़रूरी *zarūrī*
impossible असंभव *asambhav*, नामुमकिन *nāmumkin*
in में *mē*
in front (of) (के) आगे *(ke) āge*
increase, to बढ़ना *barhnā*, बढ़ाना *barhānā* ^N
India हिन्दुस्तान *hindustān* m., भारत *bhārat* m.; Indian हिन्दुस्तानी *hindustānī*, भारतीय *bhāratīy*
individual, person व्यक्ति *vyakti* m.
inside (के) अंदर *(ke) andar*
instead of के बजाय *ke bajāy*
intelligent होशियार *hośiyār*, तेज़ *tez*
intention इरादा *irādā* m.
interesting दिलचस्प *dilcasp*
invite, to बुलाना *bulānā* ^N
 -ish -सा -sā
it वह *vah*
job, employment नौकरी *naukrī* f.
joke मज़ाक़ *mazāk* m.; joking, fun हँसी-मज़ाक़ *hāsi-mazāk* m.

journey यात्रा *yātrā* f., सफ़र *safar* m.
jungle जंगल *jangal* m.
keep, to रखना *rakhnā* N
key चाबी *cābī* f.
kill, to मारना *mārnā* N, मार डालना *mār dālā* N
kind, type तरह *tarah* f., प्रकार *prakār* m.
king राजा *rājā* m. (inv.)
kitchen रसोईघर *rasoiḡhar* m.
knife छुरी *churī* f.
know, to जानना *jānnā* N; मालूम होना *mālūm honā*
kurta कुरता *kurtā* m.
lack, want कमी *kamī* f.
lady महिला *mahilā* f.
lamp, light बत्ती *battī* f.
land ज़मीन *zamin* f.
lane गली *galī* f.
language भाषा *bhāṣā* f., ज़बान *zabān* f.
last, previous पिछला *pichlā*
late, delayed देर से *der se*
later बाद (में) *bād (mē)*, आगे चलकर *āge calkar*
laugh, to हँसना *hāsnā* N; to make laugh हँसाना *hāsanā* N
lazy आलसी *ālsī*; (workshy) कामचोर *kāmcōr*
leader, politician नेता *netā* m.
learn, to सीखना *sikhnā* N; to study पढ़ना *parhnā*

leave, to छोड़ना *chornā* N
left (opp. of right) बायें *bāyā*; to the left (hand) बायें/ उलटे (हाथ) *bāyē/ulṭe (hāth)*
left (remaining) बाकी *bāqī*
length लंबाई *lambāī* f.
lentil(s) दाल *dāl* f.
less कम *kam*
letter खत *khat* m., पत्र *patr* m., चिट्ठी *ciṭṭhī* f.
lie झूठ *jhūṭh* m.; to lie झूठ बोलना *jhūṭh bolna* N
lie, recline, to लेटना *leṭnā*
life ज़िंदगी *zindagī* f., जीवन *jīvan* m.
lift, to उठाना *uṭhānā* N
light (brightness) रोशनी *rośnī* f.; (lamp, electric light) बत्ती *battī* f.
light (in weight) हल्का *halkā*
like की तरह *kī tarah*; (equal to) (के) समान *ke samān*; (such as) जैसा *jaisā*
like, to पसंद करना *pasand karṇā* N, पसंद होना *pasand honā*
listen, to सुनना *sunnā* N
little, a थोड़ा-सा *thoṛā-sā*
live, to (reside) रहना *rahnā*; (be alive) जीना *jīnā* N
lock ताला *tālā* m.
London लंदन *landan* m.
loneliness अकेलापन *akelāpan* m.
look for, to ढूँढ़ना *dhūṛhnā* N, की तलाश करना *kī talāś karṇā* N

look, to देखना *dekhnā* N
lose, to खोना *khonā* N
love प्रेम *prem* m., प्यार *pyār* m.; to love us हमसे प्रेम/प्यार करना *hamse prem/pyār karṇā* N
luggage सामान *sāmān* m.
lunch दोपहर का खाना *dopahar kā khānā* m.
luxury ऐश *aīs* m.
lying (for inanimate things) पड़ा *paṛā*; (for people, 'lying down') लेटा *leṭā*
Ma माँ *mā* f.
mad पागल *pāgal*
mail, post डाक f.
make, to बनाना *banānā* N
man, person आदमी *ādmī* m.
mango आम *ām* m.
market बाज़ार *bāzār* m.
married शादी-शुदा *śādī-śudā* (invariable -ā ending.)
marry, to शादी करना *śādī karṇā* N; to marry Ram, राम से शादी करना *Rām se śādī karṇā* N; to marry Ram to Sita, राम की शादी सीता से करना *Rām kī śādī Sītā se karṇā* N
matter बात *bāt* f.; it doesn't matter कोई बात नहीं *koī bāt nahī*
mean, miserly कंजूस *kanjūs*
meaning मतलब *matlab* m., अर्थ *arth* m.
meat गोश्त *gośt* m., माँस *māś* m.

medicine दवा *davā* f.
meet, to (से) मिलना *(se) milnā*
meeting मुलाकात *mulāqāt* f., भेंट *bhēṭ* f.
memory याद *yād* f.
midnight आधीरात *ādhīrāt* f.
milk दूध *dūdh* m.
mine मेरा *merā*
minute मिनट *minat* m.
mistake ग़लती *galtī* f., भूल *bhūl* f.; to make a mistake ग़लती/भूल करना *galtī/bhūl karṇā* N
Monday सोमवार *somvār* m.
money पैसा *paisā* m.
monkey बंदर *bandar* m.
month महीना *mahinā* m.
moon चाँद *cāḍ* m.
more और *aur*, ज़्यादा *zyādā*, अधिक *adhik*
morning सुबह *subah* f.
mosquito मच्छर *macchar* m.
most ज़्यादा *zyādā*, अधिक *adhik*; at the most अधिक से अधिक *adhik se adhik*, ज़्यादा से ज़्यादा *zyādā se zyādā*
mostly ज़्यादातर *zyādātar*
mother माता *mātā* f., माँ *mā* f.
mountain पहाड़ *pahār* m.
mouth मुँह *mūh* m.
move, to चलना *calnā*; हिलना *hilnā*; to move house शिफ्ट करना *śift karṇā* N, घर बदलना *ghar badalnā* N

much ज्यादा *zyādā*, अधिक *adhik*
Muslim मुसलमान *musalmān*
 adj. and m.
my मेरा *merā*
narrow तंग *tang*
near (के) नज़दीक *(ke) nazdik*,
 (के) पास *(ke) pās*
necessary ज़रूरी *zarūrī*
neck गर्दन *gardan f.*
need ज़रूरत *zarūrat f.*
needed चाहिए *cāhie*
neighbour पड़ोसी *paṛosī m.*
neither... nor न ... न *na... na*
new नया (नए, नई) *nayā (nae, nai)*
news ख़बर *khābar f.*, समाचार
samācār m.
newspaper अख़बार *akhbār m.*
next अगला *aglā*
next to, close by की बग़ल में *kī bagal mē*
night रात *rāt f.*
no नहीं *nahī*; जी नहीं *jī nahī*
no one कोई नहीं *koī nahī*
nobody कोई नहीं *koī nahī*
noise, tumult शोर *śor m.*
noon, afternoon दोपहर *dopahar f.*
nose नाक *nāk f.*
not नहीं *nahī*, न *na*
nothing कुछ नहीं *kuch nahī*
now अब *ab*
nowadays आजकल *ājkal*
nowhere कहीं नहीं *kahī nahī*

o' clock बजे *baje*
of का *kā*
of course ज़रूर *zarūr*, अवश्य
avaśya
office दफ़्तर *daftār m.*
often अक्सर *aksar*
old (of people) बूढ़ा *būrhā*; (of
 things) पुराना *purānā*
old man बूढ़ा *būrhā m.*
old woman बुढ़िया *buṛhiyā f.*
on पर *par*
on top (of) के ऊपर *ke ūpar*
one एक *ek*; one and a half डेढ़
ḍerh; one and a quarter सवा
savā
oneself खुद *khud*, स्वयं *svayam*
only सिर्फ *sirf*, केवल *keval*; ही *hī*
open खुला *khulā*; to open खुलना
khulnā; खोलना *kholnā*^N
opinion राय *rāy f.*; ख़याल *khayāl*
m.; in my opinion मेरे ख़याल
 में/से *mere khayāl mē/se*
opportunity मौका *mauqā m.*
or या *yā*
order (send for), to मँगवाना
māgvānā^N
ordinary आम *ām*, साधारण
sādhāraṇ
other, second दूसरा *dūsarā*
otherwise नहीं तो *nahī to*
our, ours हमारा *hamārā*
out बाहर *bāhar*
out of, from among में से *mē se*

outside (के) बाहर *(ke) bāhar*
own, one's own अपना *apnā*
pain दर्द *dard m.*; (mental) दुःख
duḥkh m.
paper कागज़ *kāgaz m.*
park (car), to खड़ा करना *khara*
karnā^N
particular ख़ास *khās*, विशेष
viśeṣ
party (political) दल *dal m.*
party (social event) पार्टी *pāṛṭī f.*
passenger यात्री *yātrī m.*,
 मुसाफ़िर *musāfir m.*, सवारी
savārī f.
pearl मोती *motī m.*
pen कलम *qalam m./f.*
pencil पेंसिल *pensil f.*
people लोग *log m. pl.*; the
 people, public जनता *jantā f.*
 (used in singular)
perhaps शायद *śāyad*
period, age ज़माना *zamānā m.*
person, individual व्यक्ति *vyakti m.*
phone, to फ़ोन करना *fon karnā*^N
photograph फ़ोटो *foto m.*; to
 take photo फोटो खींचना *foto*
khīcnā^N
pick up, to उठाना *uṭhānā*^N
picture तस्वीर *tasvīr f.*, चित्र *citr m.*
piece, bit टुकड़ा *tukṛā m.*
pill गोली *golī f.*
place जगह *jagah f.*
play (game), to खेलना *khelnā*^N

play (music), to बजाना *bajānā*^N
please कृपया *kṛpayā*, मेहरबानी
 करके *meharbānī karke*
pocket जेब *jeb f.*
poem; poetry कविता *kavitā f.*
police पुलिस *pulis f.* (used in
 singular)
politician नेता *netā m.*
poor गरीब *garīb*
possible मुमकिन *mumkin*, संभव
sambhav
post, mail डाक *ḍāk f.*
post office डाकघर *dākghar m.*
pour, to डालना *ḍālnā*^N
power शक्ति *śakti f.*
practice अभ्यास *abhyās m.*
praise तारीफ़ *tārif f.*; to praise
 की तारीफ़ करना *kī tārif karnā*^N
prepare, to तैयार करना *taiyār*
karnā^N
present, gift तोहफ़ा *tohfā m.*,
 उपहार *uphār m.*,
 (presentation) भेंट *bhēt f.*
previous पिछला *pichlā*;
 previously पहले *pahle*
price दाम *dām m.*, कीमत *qimat f.*
pride गर्व *garv m.*
problem समस्या *samasyā f.*
profession पेशा *peśā m.*
properly ठीक से *ṭhik se*
public, the people जनता *jantā f.*
 (used in singular)
pure, unmixed शुद्ध *śuddh*

put on, to पहनना *pahannā* ^N
 put, to रखना *rakhnā* ^N
 quarrel झगड़ा *jhagrā* m.
 question सवाल *savāl* m., प्रश्न *praśn* m.
 quick तेज़ *tez*
 quickly जल्दी *jaldī*
 quite (fairly) काफी *kāfī*;
 (completely) बिल्कुल *bilkul*
 radio रेडियो *rediyō* m.
 rain बारिश *bāris* f.; to rain
 बारिश होना *bāris honā*, पानी
 पड़ना *pānī pārnā*
 reach, to पहुँचना *pahūcnā*
 read, to पढ़ना *parhnā* ^N
 ready तैयार *taiyār*
 real असली *asli*
 reason कारण *kāraṇ* m., वजह
vajah f.
 recognize, to पहचानना
pahcānnā ^N
 red लाल *lāl*
 refuse (to), to (से) इनकार करना
(se) inkār karnā ^N
 relative रिश्तेदार *riśtedār* m., f.
 remain, to रहना *rahnā*
 remaining बाकी *bāqī*
 remember, to याद करना *yād*
karnā ^N; याद होना *yād honā*
 remind, to याद दिलाना *yād*
dilānā ^N
 rent किराया *kirāyā* m.; to rent
 किराये पर लेना/देना *kirāye par*
lenā/denā ^N

reply जवाब *javāb* m.; to reply
 जवाब देना *javāb denā* ^N
 rest, ease आराम *ārām* m.; to
 rest आराम करना *ārām karnā* ^N
 return, to लौटना *lauṭnā*
 rice चावल *cāval* m.
 rich, wealthy अमीर *amīr*
 rickshaw रिक्शा *riksā* m.
 right (correct) ठीक *ṭhīk*, सही
sahī
 right (opp. of left) दाहिना
dāhinā; to the right (hand)
 दाहिने (हाथ) *dāhine (hāth)*
 river नदी *nadī* f.
 robbery चोरी *corī* f.
 room कमरा *kamrā* m.
 run, to दौड़ना *dauṛnā*; to run
 away भागना *bhāgnā*
 rupee रुपया *rupayā* m.
 salt नमक *namak* m.
 samosa समोसा *samosā* m.
 sandal चप्पल *cappal* f.
 Sanskrit संस्कृत *sanskṛt* f.
 sari साड़ी *sāṛī* f.
 Saturday शनिवार *śanivār* m.
 save, to बचाना *bacānā* ^N
 say, to (से) कहना *(se) kahnā* ^N
 scold, to डाँटना *ḍāṭnā* ^N
 script (alphabet) लिपि *lipi* f.
 sea समुद्र *samudra* m.
 search तलाश *talāś* f.; to search
 for की तलाश करना *kī talāś*
karnā ^N

seated, sitting बैठा *baiṭhā*
 see, to देखना *dekhnā* ^N
 seem, to लगना *lagnā*; मालूम होना
mālūm honā
 sell, to बेचना *becnā* ^N
 send, to भेजना *bhejnā* ^N
 sentence वाक्य *vākya* m.
 separate, separately अलग *alag*
 servant नौकर *naukar* m.
 several कई *kai*
 she वह *vah*
 shoe; pair of shoes जूता *jūtā* m.
 shop दुकान *dukān* f.; shop-
 keeper दुकानदार *dukāndār* m.
 should चाहिए *cāhie* (after
 infinitive: 'I should go' मुझको
 जाना चाहिए *mujhko jānā*
cāhie)
 shout, to चिल्लाना *cillānā* ^N
 shut बंद *band*; to shut बंद करना
band karnā ^N
 side, direction तरफ *taraf* f., ओर
 or f.
 silent चुप *cup*, खामोश *khāmoś*
 simple, easy सरल *saral*
 since the time when... since then
 जब से ... तब से *jab se... tab se*
 sing, to गाना *gānā* ^N
 sister बहिन *bahin* f.
 sit, to बैठना *baiṭhnā*
 sitar सितार *sitār* m.
 sky आकाश *ākāś* m., आसमान
āsmān m.

sleep नींद *nīd* f.
 sleep, to सोना *sonā*
 small छोटा *choṭā*
 smile, to मुस्कराना *muskarānā* ^N
 smoke, to (सिग्रेट) पीना *(sigret)*
pīnā ^N
 so (then) तो *to*, सो *so*; so much
 इतना *itnā*
 soap साबुन *sābun* m.
 sold, to be बिकना *biknā*
 some (with single countable
 noun) कोई *koī*; (with
 uncountable) कुछ *kuch*;
 something else कुछ और *kuch*
aur; something or other कुछ न
 कुछ *kuch na kuch*
 somehow कहीं *kahī*
 someone कोई *koī*; someone
 else और कोई *aur koī*, कोई
 और *koī aur*; someone or other
 कोई न कोई *koī na koī*
 sometime कभी *kabhī*;
 sometimes कभी कभी *kabhī*
kabhī
 somewhere कहीं *kahī*; some-
 where else कहीं और *kahī aur*;
 somewhere or other कहीं न
 कहीं *kahī na kahī*
 son बेटा *betā* m.
 song गाना *gānā* m., गीत *gīt* m.
 soon जल्दी *jaldī*
 sound आवाज़ *āvāz* f.
 south दक्षिण *dakṣiṇ* m.

speak, to बोलना *bolnā* ⁿ
spoon चम्मच *cammac* m.
stair, staircase सीढ़ी *sīrhī* f.
stamp टिकट *ṭikaṭ* m./ f.
standing खड़ा *kharā*
state, province प्रदेश *pradeś* m.
station स्टेशन *ṣeśan* m.
stay, to रहना *rahnā*
steal, to चोरी करना *corī karnā* ⁿ
still (up to now) अभी *abhi*
stomach पेट *peṭ* m.
stone पत्थर *patthar* m.
stop, to रुकना *ruknā*; रोकना *roknā* ⁿ
story कहानी *kahānī* f.
straight, straightforward सीधा *sīdhā*
strange अजीब *ajīb*
stranger अजनबी *ajnabī* m.
street सड़क *sarak* f.
string रस्सी *rassī* f.
stroll, to टहलना *ṭahalnā*
strong मज़बूत *mazbūt*, तेज़ *tez*
student विद्यार्थी *vidyārthī* m., f.
studies, studying पढ़ाई *paṛhāī* f.
study, to पढ़ना *paṛhnā*
stupid बेवकूफ *bevaqūf*; stupid person उल्लू *ullū* m. (lit. 'owl')
subject, topic विषय *viṣay* m.
success सफलता *saphaltā* f.; successful सफल *saphal*, कामयाब *kāmāyāb*
suddenly, unexpectedly अचानक *acānak*, एकाएक *ekāek*

suggestion सुझाव *sujhāv* m.; to suggest सुझाव देना *sujhāv denā* ⁿ
summer गरमियाँ *garmiyā* f. pl; summer holidays गरमी की छुट्टियाँ *garmī kī chuṭṭiyā* f. pl
sun सूरज *sūraj* m.; sunlight, sunshine धूप *dhūp* f.
Sunday रविवार *ravivār* m.
surprise आश्चर्य *āścarya* m.; I'm surprised मुझे आश्चर्य है *mujhe āścarya hai*
sweet मीठा *mīṭhā*; sweet dish मिठाई *mīṭhāī* f.
swim, to तैरना *tairnā* ⁿ
tabla तबला *tablā* m.
table मेज़ *mez* f.
tablet, pill गोली *golī* f.
tailor दर्जी *darzī* m.
take, to (receive) लेना *lenā* ⁿ; (deliver) ले जाना *le jānā*
take away, to ले जाना *le jānā*
take care of, to का ख़याल/ध्यान रखना *kā khyāl/dhyān rakhnā* ⁿ
talk, converse, to (से) बात/बातें करना *(se) bāt/bātē karnā* ⁿ
tall लंबा *lambā*; (high) ऊँचा *ūcā*
tap (faucet) नल *nal* m.
taxi टैक्सी *ṭaiksī* f.
tea चाय *cāy* f.
teach, to (a subject) पढ़ाना *paṛhānā* ⁿ, (a skill) सिखाना *sikhānā* ⁿ
teacher अध्यापक *adhyāpak* m.

tell, to बताना *batānā* ⁿ
temple मंदिर *mandir* m.
thank you शुक्रिया *śukriyā*, धन्यवाद *dhanyavād*
that (conjunction) कि *ki*
that (pronoun) वह *vah*
that is to say यानी *yānī*
theft चोरी *corī* f.
then फिर *phir*, तब *tab*
there वहाँ *vahā*; right there वहीं *vahī*; over there उधर *udhar*
these ये *ye*
they ये *ye*, वे *ve*
thick, coarse मोटा *moṭā*
thief चोर *cor* m.
thin पतला *patlā*; (lean) दुबला-पतला *dublā-patlā*
thing चीज़ *ciz* f.; (abstract, 'matter') बात *bāt* f.
think, to सोचना *socnā* ⁿ
thirst प्यास *pyās* f.; to feel thirsty, thirst to strike प्यास लगना *pyās lagnā*
this यह *yah*
those वे *ve*
thought विचार *vicār* m., ख़याल *khyāl* m.
throat गला *galā* m.
throw, to डालना *dālnā* ⁿ, फेंकना *phēknā* ⁿ
ticket टिकट *ṭikaṭ* m./ f.
time समय *samay* m., वक़्त *vaqt* m.; occasion बार *bār* f., दफ़ा *dafā* f.

tired थका *thakā*; to be tired थकना *thaknā*
to को *ko*
today आज *āj*
together (in company with) एक साथ *ek sāth*, के साथ *ke sāth*
tomorrow कल *kal*
too (also) भी *bhī*; (excessive) बहुत ज़्यादा *bahut zyādā*
touch, to छूना *chūnā* ⁿ
towards की तरफ़/ ओर *kī taraf/ or*
town शहर *śahar* m.
toy खिलौना *khilāunā* m.
train ट्रेन *tren* f., गाड़ी *gāṛī* f., रेलगाड़ी *relgāṛī* f.
translation अनुवाद *anuvād* m.; to translate (का) अनुवाद करना *(ka) anuvād karnā* ⁿ
travel यात्रा *yātrā* f., सफ़र *safar* m.; to travel यात्रा/सफ़र करना *yātrā/safar karnā* ⁿ
traveller यात्री *yātrī* m., मुसाफ़िर *musāfir* m.
tree पेड़ *peṛ* m.
true सच *sac*
trust भरोसा *bharosā* m., विश्वास *viśvās* m.
truth सच्चाई *sacāī* f.
try, to की कोशिश करना *kī kośiś karnā* ⁿ
turn, bend मोड़ *moṛ* m.
turn, to मुड़ना *muṛnā*, मोड़ना *moṛnā* ⁿ

- two दो *do*; two and a half ढाई *dhāi*
uncle (father's younger brother) चाचा *cācā* m. (inv.)
understand, to समझना *samajhnā* ^N
understanding समझ *samajh* f.
until तक *tak*
up, upstairs ऊपर *ūpar*
up to तक *tak*
upset परेशान *pareśān*
Urdu उर्दू *urdū* f.
urgent ज़रूरी *zarūri*
us हम *ham*
useless बेकार *bekār*
usually आम तौर पर *ām taur par*
vacant खाली *khālī*
vacate, to खाली करना *khālī karnā* ^N
valuable कीमती *qīmtī*
Varanasi वाराणसी *vārāṇasī* f.
vegetable(s) सब्ज़ी *sabzī* f.
very बहुत *bahut*
via से होकर *se hokar*
village गाँव *gāv* m.
visible, to be दिखाई देना *dikhāi denā*
voice आवाज़ *āvāz* f.
wait, waiting इंतज़ार *itnazār* m.;
 to wait (for) (का) इंतज़ार करना
 (*kā*) *intazār karnā* ^N
walk, to पैदल चलना/जाना *paidal calnā/jana*
- wall** दीवार *divār* f.
want, to चाहना *cāhnā* ^N (in
 past, use imperfective – मैं
 चाहता था *mai cāhtā thā* –
 rather than perfective)
warm गरम *garam*
wash, to धोना *dhonā* ^N; (bathe)
 नहाना *nahānā*; to wash dishes
 बरतन *mājnā* ^N
washed, to be धुलना *dhulnā*
watch, wristwatch घड़ी *gharī* f.
water पानी *pānī* m.
way, manner ढंग *dhang* m.,
 तरह *tarah* f., प्रकार *prakār* m.
we हम *ham*
weak कमज़ोर *kamzor*
wear, to पहनना *pahannā* ^N
weather मौसम *mausam* m.
wedding शादी *śādī* f.
week हफ़्ता *haftā* m., सप्ताह
saptāh m.
weep, to रोना *ronā* ^N
well, anyway ख़ैर *khair*
well, in a good way अच्छा
acchā, अच्छी तरह (से) *acchī*
tarah (se)
wet (soaked) भीगा *bhīgā*;
 (damp) गीला *gīlā*
what like, what kind of? कैसा
kaisā
what? क्या *kyā*
when... then जब... तब *jab... tab*
when? कब *kab*

- where... there** जहाँ ... वहाँ
jahā...vahā
where? कहाँ *kahā*, किधर *kidhar*
which, the one which जो *jo*;
 which/what ever जो भी *jo bhi*
which? कौनसा *kaunsā*
while (on the other hand) जब
 कि *jab ki*
white सफ़ेद *safed*; white person
 गीरा *gorā* m., f.
who, the one who जो *jo*;
 whoever जो भी *jo bhi*
who? कौन *kaun*
why? क्यों *kyō*
wife पत्नी *patnī* f.
wind हवा *havā* f.
window खिड़की *khirkī* f.
with से *se*; (in company of) के
 साथ *ke sāth*
without के बिना *ke binā*;
 without doing/saying/thinking
 बिना किए/बोले/सोचे *binā*
kie/bole/soce
- woman** औरत *aurat* f.
wood लकड़ी *lakṛī* f.
word शब्द *śabd* m.
work काम *kām* m.; (occu-
 pation) धंधा *dhandhā* m.;
 (employment) नौकरी *naukrī* f.
world दुनिया *duniyā* f.
write, to लिखन *likhnā* ^N
writer लेखक *lekhak* m.
wrong, incorrect ग़लत *galat*
year साल *sāl* m., वर्ष *varṣ* m.;
 (of calendar, era) सन् *san* m.
yes हाँ *hā*, जी हाँ *jī hā*
yesterday कल *kal*
you (intimate) तू *tū*; (familiar)
 तुम *tum*; (formal) आप *āp*
young छोटा *choṭā*, जवान *javān*
your, yours (intimate) तेरा *terā*;
 (familiar) तुम्हारा *tumhārā*;
 (formal) आपका *āpkā*

adjective A word that describes: 'green, small, nice'.

adverb A word or phrase that describes the way in which something happens: 'quickly, carefully, immediately, next week'.

agreement Having the same number, gender and case: in 'we go', the verb 'go' agrees with 'we'; in 'he goes', 'goes' agrees with 'he'.

case A way of showing the relationship of a word to other words in a sentence: 'she hit her' distinguishes aggressor and victim by having 'she' and 'her' in different cases. In Hindi, the main distinction is between 'direct case' and 'oblique case'.

conjunction A link-word between parts of a sentence, such as 'that' and 'but' in 'I heard that my brother was ill but I did nothing'.

continuous The tense that describes things going on at a particular time, conveyed in English by an '-ing' verb and in Hindi by a रहा *rahā* construction: वह बोल रहा है *vah bol rahā hai* 'he is speaking'.

direct The case used by default for nouns (and pronouns and adjectives); it is replaced by the 'oblique' when a noun (etc.) is followed by a postposition, and in some adverbial phrases.

gender The status of a noun as being either masculine or feminine. For animates, grammatical gender follows sexual gender (आदमी *ādmi* 'man' is masculine, औरत *aurat* 'woman' is feminine), but for inanimates the allocation of gender is not easily predictable (कान *kān* 'ear' is masculine, नाक *nāk* 'nose' is feminine).

imperfective A verb tense whose action is not a completed, one-off event: मैं हिन्दी बोलता हूँ *mai hindī boltā hū* 'I speak Hindi'; see **perfective**.

intransitive verb One that cannot take a direct object. Verbs of motion are typical examples: आना *ānā* to come, जाना *jānā* to go.

noun A word that names something: 'mouse, love, brother, Ram'.

number The status of a word as being either singular or plural.

Infinitive The form of the verb listed in dictionaries: in Hindi it ends -ना *-nā*, as in करना *karnā*; in English it features the word 'to', as in 'to do'. An infinitive is used in many constructions such as मुझको जाना चाहिए *mujhko jānā cāhie* 'I ought to go'.

object The part of the sentence that is affected by the verb, or to which the action is done. In वह राम को पैसा देगा *vah Rām ko paisā degā* 'He'll give money to Ram', वह *vah* 'he' is the subject, पैसा *paisā* 'money' is the direct object, राम *Rām* 'Ram' the indirect object.

oblique The case that is used before a postposition. In मेरे कमरे में *mere kamre mē* 'in my room', मेरे कमरे *mere kamre* is made oblique by में *mē*. An oblique also appears (without postposition) in some adverbs such as इन दिनों *in dinō* 'these days'.

participle A form of the verb used as the basis for various tenses: जाता *jātā* is the imperfective participle from जाना *jānā* 'to go' and is used to form वह जाता है/था *vah jātā hai/thā* 'he goes/ used to go'.

passive A verb whose focus is on the action being done rather than the person doing it: 'the food is being cooked' is passive, 'I am cooking the food' is active.

perfective A verb tense that describes a completed, one-off action, as in हमने गाड़ी खरीदी *hamne gārī kharīdī* 'we bought a car'.

possessive Having a meaning that indicates ownership: 'my' and 'our' are possessive pronouns.

postposition Words like में *mē* 'in', पर *par* 'on' and के लिए *ke lie* 'for', which express a relationship to the word or phrase preceding it, as in मेज़ पर *mez par* 'on the table', आप के लिए *āp ke lie* 'for you'; postpositions are the Hindi equivalents of English prepositions.

pronoun A word that stands for a noun: 'Manoj read a book' uses nouns, 'he read it' uses pronouns.

relative A relative pronoun such as 'who, which' gives further information about something already mentioned, as in 'Find the boy who took my jacket': such a word introduces a relative clause.

stem The base form of a verb, to which endings are added: कर *kar* in करना *karnā* 'to do'.

subject That person or thing who acts or is: हम *ham* 'we' in हम खाना तैयार करेंगे *ham khānā taiyār karēge* 'we will prepare food'.

subjunctive A form of the verb that typically expresses possibility or suggestion rather than definitive actions.

transitive A transitive verb is one that can take a direct object: 'to eat, to write, to ask' ('to eat *food*, to write *letters*, to ask *questions*').

verb A word or phrase that denotes an action or a state of being: 'ate' in 'I ate the banana', 'am' in 'I am unwell'. It usually has a subject ('I') and may also take an object ('the banana').

References are to Unit and section number.

- able, to be 6.3
 absolute 10.4
 adjectives 2.1, 3.1, 3.3
 adverbs 4.2, 8.4
 age ('how old...?') 6.2
 allow, to 6.4
apnā 8.3
 be, to (present) 1.1, (past) 7.1
 begin, to 11.1
bhī 3.3, 7.4
cāhie ('to need') 5.2, ('should') 11.4
cāhnā 6.4
 can 6.3
 case 3.3, 5.1, 6.1, 10.2
 causatives 12.2
 commands 4.1, 9.2
 comparisons 8.1
 compound verbs 12.5
 compulsion ('should, must') 11.4, 11.5
 conditionals ('if') 9.2
 crossword puzzle 12.1
cuknā 12.4
 dates 12.6
 days of the week 9.1
 destinations 8.4
 directions (finding the way) 11.2
 echo words 12.2
 emphasis 7.4
 English words 6.6, 12.5
 formality 2.3, 2.4, 4.1
 gender 2.1, 2.2, 2.3
 genitives (see possession)
 get, to 5.3
 greetings 1.1
 habitual actions 4.3, 7.1
 have, to 6.1
 have to, to 11.5
 health 12.2, 12.3
hī 7.4
 honorifics 2.3, 2.4, 4.1
 'if' clauses 9.2
 imperatives 4.1
 intransitive verbs 10.1
jab, jahā, jo etc. 12.1
jākar construction 10.4
jī 2.4
kā 6.1
 know, to 5.2
ko 5.2, 7.2, 7.3, 10.2, 11.4, 11.5
koī 6.1
kuch 6.2
kyā (question marker) 2.2; ('what?') 2.4
lagnā 9.4, 11.1

- let (allow), to 6.4
mālūm 5.2
 meet, to 4.2
milnā ('to meet') 4.2; ('to be available; to get') 5.3
 months 12.7
 must 11.4, 11.5
ne 10.2
 negatives 1.2, 4.3
 nouns 2.2, 3.3
 numbers 2.2, 12.6
 object with *ko* 7.2
 obligation expressions 11.4, 11.5
 oblique (see case)
 parts of the body 12.3
pasand 5.2
 passive 11.3
 possession 1.2, 2.4, 3.2 6.1, 8.3
 postpositions 3.2, 3.3, 5.2, 8.4
 pronouns 1.2, 1.3, 2.3, 2.4, 5.1, 7.3
 quantities 5.4
 questions 1.2, 1.4, 2.3, 3.1, 3.2, 4.3
 relative clauses 12.1
 reported speech 9.1
saknā 6.3
 shades of meaning 12.4
 should 11.4
 style in Hindi 12.5
 subjunctive 9.2
 superlatives 8.1
 tenses: continuous 8.2, future 9.1, present imperfective 4.3, past imperfective 7.1, perfective 10.1–10.3
 time of day 12.7
 time taken to do something 9.4
 to 7.4
 transitive verbs 10.2, 12.2
 want, to 5.2, 6.4
 word order 3.2, 3.3
 would 8.1



also available in a book/CD pack

teach
yourself

beginner's hindi

rupert snell

- Are you new to language learning?
- Do you want lots of practice and examples?
- Do you want to improve your confidence to speak?

Beginner's Hindi is written for the complete beginner who wants to move at a steady pace and have lots of opportunity to practise. The grammar is explained clearly and does not assume that you have studied a language before. You will learn everything you need to get the most out of a holiday or to go on to further study.

Rupert Snell is former Reader in Hindi at the School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London.

Why not try ● Hindi Conversation ● Hindi

● Beginner's Hindi Script ● or visit www.teachyourself.co.uk?

Cover ● © Hugh Sitton/Getty Images ● Man with umbrella, Agra, India

the leader in self-learning with more than 500 titles, covering all subjects
be where you want to be with **teach yourself**



UK £9.99

ISBN 978-0-340-85652-9



9 780340 856529



00999

